

RESTITUTION

of

DECAYED INTELLIGENCE

IN ANTIQUITIES.

Concerning the most noble and renowned
English nation.

By the Senate and University of L. P.

Delivered unto the Kings most excellent Majesty.



Printed by J. B. Smith.

Printed by J. B. Smith, in London.

And sold by J. B. Smith, in London.
by J. B. Smith and J. B. Smith.

Br 1250.17.2*

RECEIVED IN INTELLIGENCE

HARVARD COLLEGE
JUL 22 1919
LIBRARY

*Gift of
William Brewster Jr.*

To the study and records of R. N.

Versteegen; Richard

Printed at Antwerp by Robert Bruneau.

And to be sold in London in Parler-Churchyard
by John Norton and John Bill.

TO THE KINGS
MOST EXCELLENT
MAIESTIE,

James by the grace of God

KING OF GREAT BRITAIN,
France, and Ireland: defender
of the faith.



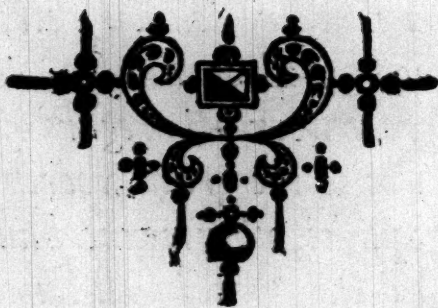
HAVING now ended this my tra-
uaile in antiquities, chiefly concer-
ning the noble English nation: and
considering that your Maiestie is
descended of the chiefeft blood royall of our an-
cient English-Saxon kings, I trust I may with
the more reason make dedication thereof vnto
your same your most excellent Maiestie. And albeit
it bee not of so great woorth (in regard of the well
doing thereof) as to the great woorthynesse of
your view is requisite, yett it meanes haue I none
remedy such defect; then in all humillitie to
make intercession; that it may notwithstanding
be fauourably accepted, and not seem displeasing
to your Maiesties learned and iuditiall sight.

And thus not presuming to bee further tedious, In all humble dutie I take my leaue, desyring Almightye God (as in my daylie prayers I hold my self obliged) to bee your maiesties euer protector.

Your maiesties.

Most humble and dutifull orator.

Richard Verstegan.



TO

TO THE MOST

NOBLE AND RENOVVMD

ENGLISH NATION: AND ESPE-

tially to the studious and lovers of anti-
quities, that concerne the same.



Albeit it may seeme vnto some a rash
and vnadvis'd attempt, that after so
many the great and woorthy labors
of our learned antiquaries, a new
woork vnder the name of *A restitu-*
tion of decayed intelligence, in antiquities concerning
our nation, should now bee presented vnto publyke
view, yet when it shal haue pleased the courteous
reader to haue considered of the contents of the
chapters, I trust hee will see that the ensuying matter
wilbe answerable to the foregoing tittle: much of it
being so extraordinarie and vnwonted, that perhaps
not any (espetsially of our nation) hath thereof writ-
ten before.

I know I haue heerin made my self subiect vnto
a world of Iudges, and am lykest to receaue most
controlement of such as are least able to sentence
mee. Wel I wote that the woorks of no wryters
haue appeered to the world in a more curious age
then this, & that therefore the more circumspection
and warynesse is requyred in the publishing of any
thing that must endure so many sharpe sights and
censures. The consideration whereof, as it hath made
mee the more heedy not to displease any, so hath it
giuen mee the lesse hope of pleasing all.

The thing that first moued mee to take some

THE EPISTLE TO OUR NATION.

Men are naturally desyrous to know their descents.

paynes in this study, was, the very naturall affection which generally is in all men to heare of the woorthynesse of their anceters, which they should in deed bee as desyrous to imitate, as delighted to vnderstand.

Secondarily was I heervnto moued; by seeing how diuers of diuers nations did labor to reuyue the old honour and glorie of their own beginings and anceters, and how in so dooing they shewed themselues the moste kynd louers of their naturall friends and countrimen: obseruing there-withall how diuers of our English wryters haue bin as laborious and serious in their discourses of the antiquities of the Britans as yf they properly appertayned vnto Englishmen, which in no wise they do or can do, for that their offsprings and descents are wholly different.

Yet would I heer bee very loth that any man should so farre mistake mee; as to ween that I impugned the praise of the praise-woorthy Britans, seeing antiquities schoole hath taught vs many lessons of the greatnes of their verie ancient and honorable fame: and that their glorious king *Lucius* must haue the precedence of all the christned kings of *Europe*, for beeing the first whose diademe was brightned with the heauenly gleames of sacred Christianitie.

This then is it I say, that sundry our English wryters are found to stand somuch vpon the descent of the Britans as yf it were a thing that in deed meerly concerned the originall and honor of our English nation. Whereby and through the lack of due distinction

tion

THE EPISTLE TO OUR NATION.

tion between the two nations (an oversight which the Britans in their accompt of vs wil neuer comit) our true originall and honorable antiquitie lieth inuolued and obscured, and wee remayning ignorant of our own true anceters, vnderstand our descent otherwise then it is, deeming it enough for vs to heare that *Eneas* and his Troyans the supposed anceters of king *Brute* and his Britans are largely discoursed of.

Diuers forreyn writers do I also fynd fowly to erre in not knowing rightly to attribute things vnto the ancient Britans that properly concerne them, and things vnto the English that rightly vnto them do appertaine, and heerin *Iohn Bodin* among others is blame woorthy, who wryteth that *Cesar* in his comentaries saith, that the Englishmen of his tyme had but one woman to serue for ten or twelue men, whereas in deed *Cesar* neuer said so, or could so say, for that hee neuer knew or hard of the name of Englishmen, leeing their coming into *Britaine* was almost 500. yeares after his death. And therefore yf any such thing weare, hee must needs meane it of the Britans; who yf they before the tyme of Christianitie had any such brutish custome among them, as other heathen nations might then also haue, it cannot bee presumed that it was a custome generall among them, but rather only among some of the ruder sorte of people.

These mistakings among forraine authors are lyke enough oftentimes to grow through the want of such distinctions as some of our own English wryters in relating things properly concerning either the
ancient

Bodin in
the fift book
of his re-
pub. in the
French edi-
tion.

Acts and
monuments.

THE EPISTLE TO OVR NATION.

ancient Britans or the English, ought alwayes to obserue: for what is it other then an absurditie for an English author to begin his epistle (to a huge volume) with *Constantine the great and mightie Emperor the sonne of Helen an English woman*, &c. Whereas in truth *S. Helen*, the mother of *Constantine* was no English woman, but a British woman, and in all lykelyhood neuer knew what English ment, for that shee dyed more then an hundreth yeares before the English-Saxons came into Britaine.

Another author intituleth his dictionarie which is in Latin and English. *Thesaurus lingue Romane & Britannica*, &c. Which tittle had bin more truer yf the Dictionarie had bin in Latin and Welsh, for that the language now of vs called Welsh is properly the ancient British-toung, and English not so, nor neuer was.

Now albeit that these and many the lyke mistakings may vnto some seem to bee no matters of any moment, yet are they surely of moment, for that such defect of due obseruing things anciēty appertaining to nation and nation, and language and language, do breed much confusion, and are the occasion of inuoluing things in such sorte that oftentimes that which is attributed to one nation belongeth vnto another, And by this meanes cometh it to passe, that wee not only fynde Englishmen (and those no idiots neither) that cannot directly tel from whence Englishmen are descended, and chanceing to speak of the Saxons; do rather seem to vnderstand them for a kynd of forreyn people, then as their own true and meer anceters, but even among English wryters themselves

THE EPISTLE TO OUR NATION.

themselves, words diuers tymes vttered that sauer
of reproche vnto their own anceters the Saxons: for
Englishmen cannot but from Saxon originall deryue
their descent and offspring, and can lack no honor to
be descended of to honorable a race, and therefore
are the more in honor obliged to know and ac-
knowledge such their own honorable and true descēt.

This then considered, as also how ridiculous it
must seem vnto the posteritie of the Britans, for En-
glishmen to borrow honor from them, not needing
to borrow it of any in the world, I perswade my self
that such distinctions as I wish were in this nationall
case of antiquitie obserued; cannot bee thought friuo-
ous, but both agreable vnto truthe & very requisite.
And as for the true originall of Englishmen how
honorable in deed it is, I trust the reader wil not bee
least vnsatisfied, when he shall haue perused some of
the ensuing chapters.

The greatnes of my loue vnto my most noble na-
tion; moſte deer vnto mee of any natiō in the world,
and which with all my best endeouours I desyre to
gratify, hath enduced mee to the performance and
publishing of this woork. For albeit my grandfather
Theodore Rowland Verstegan was borne in the duchie
of *Geldres* (and there descended of an ancient and
woorshipful familie) whence by reason of the war-
res and losse of his freindes hee (beeing a yong man)
came into *England* about the end of the raign of
King Henry the seventh, and there married, & soone
after dyed; leauing my father at his death but nyne
monethes old, which gaue cause of making his for-
tune meaner then els it might haue bin: yet can I ac-

Especially
touched in
the second
chapter.

It is often
seen in Ger-
manie that
either God-
father at
christning,
giueth his
name to his
Godsonne.
And thereof
it cometh
that many
haue two
proper
names be-
sydes their
surname.

THE EPISTLE TO OUR NATION.

compt my self of no other but of the English nation; aswel for that *England* hath bin my sweeter birthplace, as also for that I needs must pas in the self descent and offspring of that thryce noble nation; vnto the which with all dutifull respect and kynd affection I present this my labor, and espectrally vnto you the reuerend antiquaries together with the louers of the antiquities of our said noble nation and countrie. Some of you by the euident testimonies of your woorthynes I do wel know, all of you I humbly reuerence, and am mooste redy to serue.

My desyre and endeuour hath heerin concurred (as neer as I could) to please all, and not in any sorte vnto any to bee offensyue. If in some things I may seem to varrie from some other wryters, I trust the reasons that thereunto haue enduced mee wil suffyse both for my excuse and their satisfaction.

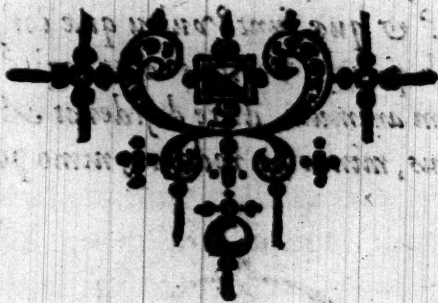
If in some of the etymologies of our ancient names or woords I may appeer to differ frō some of the Germans that haue written of the lyke, it is where I haue manifestly found the to haue mistaken, for such as thereof haue written in *Germanie*, haue looked but litle further then vnto the language vsed among themselues, and such as in the *Netherlands* haue written; haue in lyke sorte had regard vnto their only vsed speech, whereas in deed, the vnderstanding of the Teutonic vsed of our Saxon anceters, as also that of the anciēt Francks, is most requisite, & thereunto the present; High, Low, and Eastlandish Teutonic, together with respect vnto the dependant Danish and Swedish, besydes our modern vulgar English: in all which I haue bestowed some tyme of trauaile, for
that

THE EPISTLE TO OVR NATION.

that heerby and not otherwise; the true reason and concurrence of things properly appertayning to the true originall Teutonic-toung; is best to bee found out and made manifest.

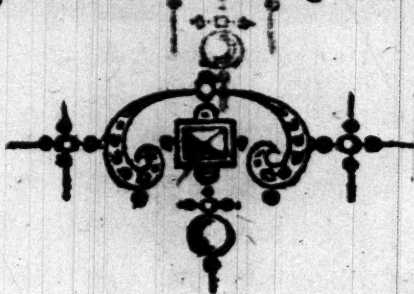
And yf I may happen to fynd this my labor so wel pleasing and accepted of, as I wish it may bee, I shall then bee much encowraged (God lending myf) to continew my study in thesame kynd, and in the meane tyme I take my leaue. From Antwerp, this 7. of Februarie, *stilo nono*, 1605.

Richard Verstegan



RICARDI VITI BA-
SINSTOCHII, IVRIS VTRI-
VSQVE DOCTORIS, ET REGII
ordinarij Professoris Pandectarum in
Academia Duacena, Carmen, subito
scriptum ad Lectorem, de restitu-
tione antiquitatum Gentis An-
glorum in Britannia Insula,
per D. Ricardum Verste-
ganum nouè facta.

P Risca Britannorum veterum si gesta requiris,
Ex alijs, dignè qui retulère, petes.
Theseus iste labor, solos ab origine prima,
Insula, quos Anglos, Magna Britannia tulit,
Exprimit, ut viuos, natiuoque ore loquentes,
Bellantesque, oculos exhibet ante tuos.
Quanta? Quot? & quæ sunt vultu quæ conspicis vno.
Qualia? sub paucis verbis apte agis?
Nil, nisi gratum animum, de te desiderat Author,
Plus meritis, minus se reddere nemo potest.



A- RICARDI STAN-
I- HURSTI CARMEN, IN LI-
BRVM ANTIQVITA-
tis Anglicæ, amicissimi sui D.
Ricardi Verstegani Angli.

E Xtera perlustrans, Anglus terraque, marique,
Polsit, vt ignotis, notus inesse locis:
Cum foris est clarus, patriâ peregrinus habetur,
Ignorans linguæ prima elementa suæ.
Discutit hanc nubem tenebrosam sedulus Anglus:
Luce vetustatis, singula queque micant.
Auctor enim libri referans ab origine primâ,
Quæ fuerit priscis Angla loquela viris:
Geminat summum, summâ cum laude, laborem,
Restituens patriæ patria verba suæ.
Et tibi propterea (Lector) gratissimus auctor:
Sitque in honore labor, sitque in amore liber.



A D
D. RICARDVM VERSTEGANVM, V. C.

Antiquitatis

ANGLICAE NATIONIS ET LINGVAE

vindicem,

IOANNIS ROMBOVTII

EPIGRAMMA.

DUlcisonis Philomela suis ut cantibus omnes
Lata replet siluas, diffugiente gelu;
Dumque nouo viridi vestitur gramine campus
Vere, simul gratis floribus arua vigent:
Anglica non aliter per te Gens inclyta surgit,
Ac redit auspicijs Lingua diserta tuis.
Et quid diffitear? cum te superasse labore
Plura tui fetus praeferat ingenij?
Namque Veritatem reuocas ab origine Gentis.
VERSTEGANE tuo segniter haud studio.
Non secus & Linguae; quae te tutore beata,
Est tandem priscis reddita luminibus.
Agnoscat lustretque tuos quicumque labores,
Laurea debetur, non peritura, tibi.
Te sine nam cecis implexum Idioma tenebris
Erraret, medijs ipse Britannus agris.
Ergo age quae veteri dudum spoliata nitore
Lingua iaces, maestum pone supercilium.
Prisca salus, lux prisca redit; redit alma Vetusta
Gentis, & optatum, quod fuit ante, decus.

3 4 2 5 2 67
Mora non vi obstes.

3 2 1

6 5 4 3 7

D. RICARDO VERSTEGANO

VIRO CL. NATIONIS ET

Linguae veteris Anglicanae
restauratori.

V ERSTEGANE tuo quòd Anglicanam
Illustras studio ac labore Gentem,

et Linguam veteri decore formas,

quin & Teutonicas subinde voces,

et quæ Saxonibus fuere in usu;

Anglis vnde loquendi origo priscis;

admisces, operam bonam, fidelem,

Anglis Teutonibusque præstitisti:

dicendi ratio ut queat vetusta,

etque orthographiæ modus resummi:

quorum perfacile interisset usus,

si crassius nisi quæ latent tenebris,

collers ingenio tuo eruisses.

ergo macte animo stude, atque perge.

ac tandem reuocentur exoletæ,

neglectæ, & minus usitata vulgo,

quæ passim tamen approbant periti.

Cornelius Kilianus Duffhaus.

IN COMENDATION OF THE
AVTHORS TRAVAILE IM-
ployed in this woork.

MAnnes eye is pleased in the beauteous light,
Bred foorth of *Phebus* bright arising rayes,
But more the mynd by taking inward sight,
Of that chief consolation of his dayes,
Sweet soule-enriching-knowlege reasōs guest;
Which doth distinguish mā from brutish beast.

Endeuour then to know what may bee known,
To ignorance permit not any place,
Let neuer tyme transporte what is our own,
Let wit and learning hold him stil in chase;
Let trauail searce, let searching lastly fynde,
Let fynding please the kynd accepting mynde.

Industrious then *Verstiegan*, forwards stygh,
Raife vp thy nations ancient woorthy fame,
Beare on thy wyngs their glorie vp on high,
And raife thy reputation by thesame.
If *Enuy* byte what thou haste heer fet foorth,
Shee makes herself a witnesse tiz of woorth.

R. B.

TO HIS DEER FRENDE

M. RICHARD VERSTEGAN.

Thy curious nation hether to did range
Throughout the world to searche Antiquities,
And in known notes all that was rare or strange
In forrain lands, at home did modellize
Yet vvhyles on extern things they fixt their eyes.
Their sence to them they did apply somuche,
As their ovvn vvorthe they did but slightly touche.

But thou VERSTEGAN carefully didst note
The ancient records of thy native Ile,
Where fame such actes and monuments did cote
As few their lyke are found in forrain soile,
These thou hast gathered vvvith exceeding toyle.
And since affection made thee take such paine
As kynd acceptance rightly is thy gain.

Thy labors shew thy vvvill to dignify,
The first dilaters of thy famous nation,
And vvhylst thy lines their glories signify
They likewise do encrease thy reputation,
And England fill vvvith dooble admiration,
To see so ritche a treasure was her ovvn,
And that it lurkt so long from her vvnknown.

The enuious abortiue impes of skill,
Perhaps vvill these thy yngenious labors bite,
And carpe the trauailes of thy learned quill
But since such fondlings in their harmes delight,
Rather deplore then heed their ouersight:
For yf they did not their vvvillitie hate
Vvhere they do enuy they vvould imitate.

A FRIEND HIS COMENDATION
of this ensuing vvoork.

NO large discourse of ancient *Britaines* fame
And gloryes greatnes, heers to be expected,
Their honours graced with victorious name
And actes of valour which they haue effected,
These worths are left to their descending race,
For them to yeeld their ancetors due grace.

But to another taske the authors pen
Hath bin imployd, in this desertfull book,
T'explayne the noble race of *Englistmen*
In things that want of knowlege hath mistook
Decay'd Intelligence he doth restore,
To their renowme; obscurely hid before.

Not only this, but sundry other things
The author from tymes ruins hath composed,
Led by affection, whence endeuour springs,
And this his loue his labors haue disclosed,
To gratifie that nation is his ground
To whome he thinks his best endeuours bound.

S. V



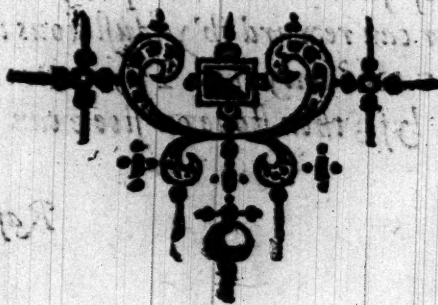
SONNET CONCERNING
this vvoork.

Behold heer *England*; learne thy name, thy race,
thy offspring.

Erish, or forgotten, by tyme and ignorance,
BERSTEGAN will tell thee, what by discontinuance
how haste left or lost, in wryting, speaking, dooing,
Heere shalt thou fynd thy ancient Nobilitie,
thy eldest offspring, honor and woorthynes,
thy lawes, thy manners, thy armes, thy manlynesse,
searcht out of registers of most antiquitie.

Enimies of truth thou heer shalt see confuted,
their errors disclosed, their vntruthes disprooued;
coniectures wel aymed, truths moste truly prooued:
faults and wants excused, by strangers imputed.
Vnheedfull negligence hath long concealed it,
Praise-woorthy diligence hath now reuealed it.

Fr: Tregian.



AD AVTHOREM.

B Right Phœbus Prince of heate; dayes bewteous king;
 Extracting from the frutefull yvooombe of earthe
 Her quintessence, to deck her in the spring:
 And make her glorious by a kyndly birthe:
 Thy brovv VERSTEGAN vvith his rayes hath crown'd
 By them thovv forcest from obscuritie,
 The pretious gemme that therein long lay drovvnd:
 Thy famous nations ritche Antiquitie.
 Free as *Apollo* that thow shovvrest dovvne
 Into thy countries lapp, from vvhen it came.
 No English forehead vvrinckled with a frowne
 Behold old Englands manners, woords armes name,
 But as glad earth salutes the mounting Sunne;
 With loue and praise applaud thy labors donne.

A. Greneway.

AD AVTHOREM.

IF for sterne deedes of armes: or rayfing heapes
 Of Earth and stone, to grace our native soyle:
 The Author of such actions due praise reapes
 VVhat honour can reward th'industrious toyle.
 VERSTEGAN? *only this. Thy name shall lyue.*
A longer lyfe; then stone or Steele can giue.

Rafe Radclyffe

VERSES OF THE AVTHORS
concerning this his vvoork.

Tyme ouerweares what earst his lycée wrought,
And also seekes remembrance to deface,
Of what himself hath to destruction brought,
In that long tract of his all-altring space;
That none might of his ruins view the place:
And as hee all beginings seeks to end,
So all his endings to obliuion tend.

But that Great-Euer-Goodnesse from aboue,
To make himself discerned, did bestow
On our desyre of knowlege such a loue,
That all men seek all what they may to know;
That Tyme in his own cours to vndergo;
And to obserue what hee would ouerpasse,
Do make a mirroure of his hower-glasse.

This deep desyre hath lastly moued mee,
On Pilgrimage *Tymes* traces to ensue,
The relykes of his ruines for to see,
And for the loue to my deer nation due,
The things concerning them which I did view,
Tending to English honor earst conceaied,
Heer in my trauails map I have reuealed.

Accept therefore deer nation in good woorth,
Thy praise not with dispraise to others wrought;
Thy elder glorie heer againe set foorth,
Which *Tyme* could shadow but not bring to nought,
And though not graced rightly as it ought.

Yet

Yet wil thy kynd acceptance salue the fore,
And make mee studious how to please the more.

Liue and encrease in honor and renown,
Vnder *Iacobus Magnus* now thy king,
Whose greatnesse to thy glorie doth redown,
As doth the Sunnes reflection brightnes bring;
In his protection buyld thy prospering:
Victorious king, long may his ioyes encrease,
That hath thy warre subdued by his peace.

Fowre nations now are subiect to his might,
Though each to other strange accompted bee,
Strange vnto them none can him deem of right,
Of royall blood of each of these is hee,
Their own liege Lord either and all him see:
Rare fortune vnto each, but more to all,
In that it could not but by him befall.

R. V.



more, THE CONTENTS OF THE
chapters of this book.

OF the originall of Nations, and consequently
of that nation from the which Englishmen
are vndoubtedly descended. 1.

How the ancient noble Saxons the true anceters of
Englishmen, were originally a people of *Germanie*,
and how honorable it is for Englishmen to bee
descended from the Germans. 2.

Of the ancient manner of lyving of our Saxon an-
ceters. Of the Idolles they adored whyle they
were pagans: and how they grew to bee of greatest
name and habitation of any other people of *Ger-
manie*. 3.

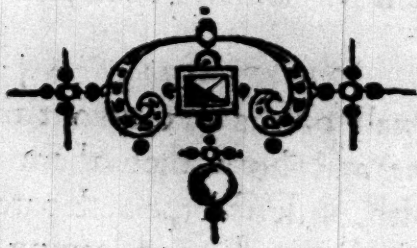
V. Of the Ile of *Albion* otherwise called *Britaine*,
conteyning *England*, *Scotland*, and *Wales*: and how
it is shewed to haue bin continent or firm-land
with *Gallia* now named *France*, since the flud of
Noe. 4.

Of the arryuall of the Saxons out of *Germanie*,
into *Britaine*, and how they there receaued the
Christian faith, possessed the best parte of the coun-
trie, called it *England*, and leauing the name of
Saxons came generally to bee called Englishmen. 5.

Of the Danes and the Normannes, and their coming
into *England*: and how the English people haue
notwith- 6.

notwithstanding stil remayned the corps and body
of the Realme.

7. Of the great Antiquitie of our ancient English tongue,
and of the proprietie woorthynesse and amplytude
thereof, with an explanation of sundrie our moste
ancient English woords.
8. The etymologies of the ancient Saxon proper names
of men and women.
9. How by the surnames of the families of *England*, it
may bee discerned from whence they take there ori-
ginalles; to wit, whether from the ancient English-
Saxons, or from the Danes or Normannes.
10. Of our ancient English tytles of honor, dignities &
offices, and what they signify. Also the signification
of our English names of disgrace or contempt.



OF THE ORIGINAL OF NATIONS, AND
CONSEQUENTLY OF THAT

nation, from the vvhich Englishmen
are vndoubtedly descended.

The first chapter.



Englishmen are descended of German
race, & were heertofore generally cal-
led Saxons, and euen vnto this day the
Britains which yet retain their anci-
ent habitation in *Cambria* or *VValles*

also in *Cornwall*, & of vs are called welshmé & cor-
nmé, do not in their own tounge call vs Englishmé,
Saisons, & our language Saisonæg, which accor-
deth to the first and generall name, that our anceters
brought with them out of *Germanie* into *Britaine*.

lyke manner are wee stil termed by the name of
Sons, of the Scottishmen that yet retain their anci-
ent Irish tounge, as also of the Irishmen in their own

language, who in their ortography wryte vs Saxso-
n, but pronounce vs Sasonagh: for the Irish lan-
guage, as also the welsh, is euen vnto this day vtterly
acquainted with the names of England and of
Englishmen.

The welsh
and Irish
call English-
men Saxons
to this day.

But before I begin to speak particularly of this
noble English nation, it is requisite that I first
show the begining of nations, and consequently of
that natiō which is as it were the tree, from the which
Englishmé as a moſte ſtately and flowriſhing brāche;

are issued and sproong foorth: intending afterward in the next ensuing chapter, sufficiently to answer were such objections as by some are alleaged, to prove our Saxon anceters not first and originally to have bin Germans, but from els where to have come and inhabited in *Germanie*, and afterward in processe of tyme, from *Germanie* to have come into *Britaine*.

First then it is to bee vnderstood, that after the great and general Deluge, there was (as the sacred scripture doth testify) but one language, and consequently but one nation in the whole world; vntil the tyme of the frustrate attempt of the towre of *Babel*. The which attempt as some wryters affirme, was begun at the persuation of *Nemroth*, the sonne of *Cham* who was the sonne of *Cham*: and so was *Nemroth* great grand-chyld vnto *Noe*, from the which patriarche as *Phylo* wryteth, there were issued before himself died, 24000 men, besydes womē & children: so as *Noe* might wel haue bin the grandfather or great grandfather to all or almoste all, the buylders of this vnfortunate edifice, who were at that tyme all the men of the world, except *Heber* and his familie whereof I shal take occasion to speak afterward.

This so great an encreas of posteritie in so shor seeming space need not vnto vs to apper so very strange, yf wee cōsider the yeares that both *Noe* himself & his sōnes liued, as also that the by the law of nature one man was not bound vnto one woman, whereb it seemeth to haue bin the wil of God soon to haue the world replenished again with new people, after so great a deluge and destruction of humaine race.

And the lesse strange may it seem that there were already

Iosephus de
Antiquitate.

Phylo.

One man
not bound
vnto one
woman in
the law of
nature.

ready thease 24000 woorkmen; (yf not a far greater number) to bee employed in this first & greatest woork of the world, yf wee do but obserue the issue and encrease of sundry kindreds & families in succeeding tymes of after-following ages, espetially in the posteritie of the ancient patriarches, besydes sundry others, which would make too long a degression to be aleaged. Yet seeing there cometh to my mynd a late example of the issue of one person, in this age of ours, I wil heer by the way for the strage-esse thereof, aleage it.

There dyed in the citie of *Paris* in the yeare of our lord 1514, a woman named *Yoland Baillie*, at the age of 88 yeares, and in the eight year of her widowhead; who there lieth buried in the Churchyard of *S. Innocents*, by whose epitaph it appeereth, that there were two hundreth fourscore and fifteen children issued from her self, while her self yet liued.

Three hundred children lacking five, issued from one woman, and all aliue in her lyf tyme.

Iosephus wryteth in his antiquities, that the children and offspring of *Noe* remayned dwelling euers yeares after the flud vpon hilles & mountaines, until such tyme as *Sem*, *Cham* and *Iaphet*, aduentered to descend and make their habitations in the lower and more euen ground, which before through the conceaued feare of drowning they durst not attempt to do, and the plaine or field, where first they began to make their dwelling, was called *Sennaar*.

People after the flud inhabited first vpon mountaines.

He saith further that God at two seuerall tymes admonished them to dispers themselues, the more to overspred and inhabyt the earth, the which they would not do, but seemed rather to suspect that God had this as a deuyce or plot, the more easely once a-

De Ant. lib. 1. cap. 4.

gain to destroy them, not regarding the goodnes of almightie God in afoording and offering them the whole world for their habitation. From this their disobedience & contempt of Gods comaundement the aforenamed *Nemroth* (who was a man of great stature strength and high mynd) taking his oportunitie, began vpon promise of defence and protection, the first domination ouer others, & so took vpon him to bee a captain and comaunder ouer the rest, and to prouyde a remedy for their saefty, yf God should once againe drown the world, and this to bee by the buylding of so high a towre, as no flud of water might ouertop it.

His counsel the multitude did easely approoue and follow, & there-vpon they began of brick which was their stone, & bitumen a kynd of mortar or seament, to buyld so monstrous huge and high a woork, as neuer in the world before or since hath bin taken in hand.

Iosephus doth affirme that they made the foundation so deep and spacious that albeit the towre was of so great a height (as by some wryters is declared) yet semed it to bee farr more large and broad then high. It conteyned in height as *Isidore* saith, fyue thousand one hundreth sixty and fowre paces, (which may be vnderstood of the paces the vsed) & hauing heerunto so great largenes, it rather seemed a maruelous huge mountaine then a high towre.

The passage to mount vp, was very wyd & great, and went wynding about on the outsyd : the middle and inward parte for the more strength beeing all massie and by carte, camels, dromedaries, horses, asses

Nemroth began the first domination ouer other men.

Nemroth in uetor of the towre of Babel.

Bitumen.

Height of the towre of Babel.

es & mules, the cariages were borne and drawn
and by the way were many logings and hosteries
for man & beast. And some authors reporte the
ce for going vp to haue bin soo exceeding wyd;
t there were feildes made all alōg besydes the co-
on passage or high-way, for the nuriture of cattel
bringing foorth of grain, but how-euer it were,
almost incredible great woork, may it wel be
ought to haue bin.

But God beholding this fond attēpt of his disobe-
ent creatures, resolued to chastise their presump-
tion, and though not according to deserued paine,
surely with such a kynd of punishmēt as not only
among themselues at that tyme, but for euer after vn-
their posterities, should bee a cause of much cum-
& diuersitie. And this was in the bereauing them
their own natural and general speech, and giuing
in steed thereof, as eftsoones hee did, seauētie &
too different touns or languages (as by some an-
ent authors is recorded) immediatly where-vpon Cōfusion of
ere arose a most woonderful and confused kynd of touns.
attering, and consequently an anger and vexation
out the not vnderstanding the one the other,
hereby this so great a woork now ceased and took
end, before it could bee ended.

And heer leauing this towre, by these new langua-
d masons thus left vnfinished, I must among them
gin to lay the foundatiō of another buylding, vpon
which the noble & honorable English name and
ation must afterward bee erected.

It is now to bee considered that with this confu-
on of touns the ceasing of this woork was not

only caused, but another trooble some new woork did
foorthwith ensue it, & that of no small turmoyle and
trooble, for that they were now forced to run vp &
down one among another lyke mad men, euery one
labouring (in that great & confused multitude) to
seek out such as himself could vnderstand, which we
may wel imagin he must bee right glad to fynd and
fasten vpon, and in no wise to forsake: and this endu-
red vntil such tyme as all had so long hunted vp &
down, that they were grown to somany seuerall
troops of men, as there were different languages
confusedly cast among them, which as before is said,
were seauenty and two.

Originall of
Nations.

And thus by reason of this difference of speeches
thus-many new distinct and different nations were
begun, euen of such as à litle before, were all one na-
tion, and vsed all one language, and each troop (as in
reaso it followeth) hauing a naturall desyre to remain
by it self, seperated from the others whose language it
vnderstood not, caused that they all resolued to de-
parte diuers wayes to seek themselues new and seue-
rall habitations, whereby such as but a litle before v-
sed all one language and were all one nation, were
now become meer strangers the one vnto the other,
& thence-forward dayly grew vnto more & more a-
liention: notwithstanding the prudent accompt of
some men that wil yet allow but two nations to bee
in the world, which they say, are good men and
bad men.

But two na-
tions in the
world.

Some question might heer bee moued about the
first language of the world, before this confusion
happned, whereof diuers haue bin diuersly concey-
ted,

ed, and of late yeares *Ioannes Goropius Becanus*, of whose opinion I shal haue further occasion to speak in the seauenth chapter. But *S. Augustine* mouing this argument doth also determyne it, and saith, that the first language of the world was the *Hebrew*, the which though at first it had not that name, yet the same remaining in the great cōfution (by diuine priuilege) in *Heber* and his family vnchanged, for that neither he nor any of his had medled in the buylding of the asoresaid presumptuous towre, it came after his name to bee afterward called *Hebrew*, which is as much to say; as the language of *Heber*: and so remained it in his posteritie, who there-vpon were called *Hebrewes*. And this beeing the same which was spoken before the flud, was after it spoken by the patriarches, *Abraham*, *Isaac* & *Iacob*, beeing *Hebrewes*. And in the same did *Moyse* wryte his fyue books.

August. de
ciuitat. Del.

Hebrew cometh of
Heber.

But now to return vnto that matter from whence this degression led mee. The children and posteritie of *Sem* the eldest sonne of *Noe* beeing deuyded into seuerall troops or rather different nations, to the number according to some authors of twenty and seauen did chuse their habitation in sundry partes of *Asia*, euen vnto the *Indian sea*. And the *Hebrew* nation or posteritie of *Heber* beforenamed, who was the grandchylde of *Arphaxad* the sonne of *Sem*, chose to inhabit in the west parte of *Asia*: and albeit there residence were somtyme changed, yet continued it longest in *Palestine*.

The posteritie of *Sem*.

M. varnoui-
cus.

The posteritie of *Cham* the second sonne of *Noe*, beeing deuyded in lyke manner into seuerall troops & nations, to the number of thirtie, did plant them-

The posteritie of *Cham*.

Nemroth
first author
of Idolatrie.

selues in diuers places of *Africa*, except his grand
chylde *Nemroth*, who stragled with his seduced follo
wers into *Persia*, and there making himself the first
author of Idolatrie (before euer the arte of sculptur
or making of carued or painted Imagerie was known)
hee taught them to adore the fyre.

Hugo de S.
Victore.

As now the of-spring of *Sem* had chosen the east
parte of the world for their dwelling place, and those
of *Cham* the south : the posteritie of *Iaphet* the third
sonne, beeing deuyled into fyfteen seuerall troope
or nations, did in lyke manner go seek for them
selues new habitations, and took their cours towards
the north and west, so as the inhabitants, of *Europe*
may accompt him and his children for their first fa
thers & progenitors, and in the mighty encrease of
their ensuing posteritie behold the prophesy in sacred
scripture fulfilled, where it is sayd. *Dilatabit Deus Ia
phet. Genes. 9.* that is, God wil enlarge *Iaphet*.

The posterie
tie of Iaphet

The people
not mixed
by the con
fusion of
tongues.

And heer is the prouidence of God greatly to be
noted, in ordayning that not-withstanding this great
confusion of tounge, the people thereby should not
confusedly bee mixed together, but the posterities of
the three sonnes of *Noe* be stil distinguished, & re
main known the one from the other.

As touching the inhabitants of the *west Indies* &
other remote places (which doubtlesse haue come
from the inhabitats of some of the fore-named partes
of the world) whosoever wil seek to be further
satisfyed may haue recours vnto the learned discours
thereof made in the Spanish tounge, by *Augustyn Ca
rre*, in his excellent historie of those partes: as also of
others handling thesame matter.

To return then againe vnto *Japhet*, he had many
other children a sonne called *Gomer*, this *Gomer* was
her childer a sonne called *Gomer*, this *Gomer* was
her vnto *Assenez* or *Ascena*; and thus *Assena* ac-
cording to the opinion of sundry very learned and
iudiciall authors, was the father of *Tuisto* or *Tuiscen*
the father and conductor of the *Germanes*, who af-
ter his name euen vnto this day do in their own
young call themselues *Tuysth*, and there countrie of
Germanie *Tuystland*: and the *Netherlanders* vsing
euer in the D for the T. do make it *Duysth* and
Duystland both which appellations of the people
and countrie, I do heer wryte right according as wee
our English ortography would wryte them, after
their pronountiation.

They wryte
Teurisch,
and Teutsch
lant, and
Duystsch, and
Duystichlant

Some authors as namely *Sebastian Munster*, do *Munsterus.*
porte that *Tuisto* was the sonne of *Noe*, by his *Tuisco.*

wher *Araza* or *Arexia* (of others called *Tyrhea*) born
after the flud, and that coming with his people out of
Asia into *Europe*, he extended his dominion from
the riuer *Tanais* euen vnto the *Rhene*. Other German
authors are of opinion, that he lastly made his moeste
residence & abode on the syde of the riuer of *Rhene*,
in a place which vnto this day retayneth the name of
Tuysth, situated right ouer against the citie of *Cul*

Henricus A-
guilius &
sundry
others.

. But now whether *Tuisto* were the sonne of *Noe*;
or the sonne of *Assenez* or *Ascena* who was grand-
child vnto *Japhet*; although some do moue question,
yet surely wyth more lykelyhood of truth wee may
follow the opinion of such as affirme him to haue
been the great grandchylde of *Japhet*, and the rather in
regard of the mightie & populous of-spring foretold
in the holy wryt, to procede fro *Japhet*: which is very a-
greeable

greeable vnto the moſte populous German nation, accompting all the members thereof; and conſidering how far it hath extended and enlarged it ſelf. Now that **Tuiſco** was the chief, and ruler of this people, and that of him they haue taken and held in old fore-going ages their owne proper & generall appellatiō, may wel argue him to haue bin the man that had the conduction of them out of *Asia* into *Europe*, yea hee in all likelyhood, that at the firſt had the charge and leading of this troop from the vnfiniſhed towre of *Babel*, as others in lyke ſorte had the conduct of other troopes to other places. And the more is this likely ſo to bee conſidering that hee of all other is the very firſt and chief man of that nation, that any fore-going remembrance can reach vnto.

And it is alſo reſpectable that the moſt ancient Germans beeing pagans, and hauing appropriated their firſt day of the week to the peculier adoration of the *Sun*, whereof that day doth yet in our english tounge retaine the name of **Sunday**; and appropriated the next day vnto it, vnto the eſpecial adoration of the *Moon*, whereof it yet retayneth with vs the name of **Monday**; they ordayned the next day to theaſe two moſt imminent heauenly planets, to the particular adoration of their great reputed God **Tuiſco**, whereof wee do yet retayn in our language the name of **Tuiſday**. All which may enduce ſufficient reaſons to think him their firſt chief and only prince and ruler: and ſeeing no man of their nation is remembred before him, hee then in reaſon is to bee thought their conductor as is aforeſaid, from the towre of *Babel*: for from no place els could he bring them, but frō thēce.

And

Tuiſday.

And that they came from thence, and from thence brought their language, there shal some further light appeer, when I shal come to speak of the *Cyrtsh* or the otherwise called Teutonic-toung, in the seauenth chapter. *Berosus* yf hee of some so called bee the same, & so be capable of credit, and *Cornelius Tacitus* an excellent author, do affirme, that *Tuisco* (called by *Tacitus Tuisfo*) was the first father and ruler of the Germans, as he is also said to haue bin of the *Sarmates* & *Scithiās*: but more certainly of the Germans or *Cyrtsh*-people. For *Tacitus* a man curious in the in-
 searching aswel for the originall of the Germans as the nature & propertie of the people and coun-
 trey, doth reporte vpon such insearch and enquiry as hee moſte diligently made amongst them (to the end he might approche neereſt vnto the truthe) that the Germans did hold the God *Tuisfo* for their chief or first farher. And it was an ordinary cu-
 ſtome among gentils (for ſuch the Germans alſo were) to deiſy and eſteem for Goddes ſuch excellent
 perſonages as either had wel ruled or gouerned them, or don any notable thing among them to their eſpe-
 cial benefit or good lyking, and ſuch remained were they men or women, with the name reputation and reuerēce of Goddes or Goddeſſes after their deathes.

Berosus.
Tacitus.

Tacitus in
deſcript.
Ger.

Tuisco the
God of the
old Germās.

VVhy the
 pagans eſte-
 med men
 Gods.

And in lyke ſorte might *Tuisco* deſerue the name of a God beeing not only their conductor, but their lord and lawmaker. And this people beeing through the want of knowlege of letters, and through length of tyme grown into a forgetfullnes of their true originall; hauing no way to record & preſerue the memorie of things paſt, the by the ſongs of their poets,

Germans
the first &
only posses-
sors of their
countrie,

were in proces of tyme brought fabulously to be-
lieue, that this their God *Tuisco* was the sonne of the
earth, and this opinion they might the easier bee
brought vnto, because no reporte by tradition, or any
songs of their antiquities could euer tell them of any
people that euer dwelt in their countrie of *Germanie*,
before themselves possessed it. And that they were
the first & only possessors of their country is the opi-
nion of *Tacitus*, and an opinion truly founded, for he
saith that he belieueth the Germans to haue cōtinued
their true and pure nation (as also their residencē) lyke
vnto none but themselves, but heerof shal more be
said in the next chapter.

Germans &
Almans.

Vnto their first king & reputed God *Tuisco*, suc-
ceded in rule & gouernment his sonne *Manus*, after
him *Ingeuon*, and successiuely sundry others. But the
people stil retayning to themselves, as yet in their
owne tounge they do and as before I haue noted, the
name of *Tuytsh*, it resteth now to say somewhat of the
later names, whereby they are otherwise called, as
Germans and *Almans*, howbeit of the *Italians* not so,
for a German of them is euen at this present called a
Tudesco, which hath relation to their right and an-
cient name, which they deriue from *Tuisco*.

As touching there names, of *Germans* and *Almans*
sundry supposals haue bin made; & of some peradue-
ture that wel vnderstood not how both these names
are but one, & haue but one signification: for as in
the later silable *man*, they agree both in sound and
sence, so do they also agree in the former silables *Ger*
and *Al*, to wit in lyke sence, though not in sound, for
the woord *Ger* or *Gar* (for both are indifferētly vsed)

as much in the *Tuitch* or *Tenonic-tounge* as *all*; and wee englishmē haue a phrase to say drink a *Car aus*; and some not knowing what they say, in steed of *Car aus*; which is to say *All out*; do say *Car aus*; and thus *Car* and *All*; beeing shewed to bee equiualent, both German and Alman is then as much to say as *All* or *wholy* a man. And this name the Germans may wel at some tyme and vpon some occasion haue attributed or assumed to themselues, in regard of their great mā-lynesse and valor, and other nations that had proof thereof, rightly afoord thē. And yet it plainly seemeth that all the Germans did not generally take this name, but kept their ancient name of *Tuitch*; for that in tyme the said name hath among them so preuailed, that it hath worn the later name of Germans both out of vse & memorie, and so continueth it vnto this day: the vulgar people of *Germanie* as before is sayd beeing wholy ignorant thereof, and calling themselues *Tuitch*; and their countrie *Tuitchland*.

The Germans after they were mightely encreased in their ample and spacious countrey of *Germanie* replenishing euery quarter and parte thereof, it could not bee otherwise, seeing to all nations and countries the lyke is and hath bin comon, but that the inhabitants in one parte of the countrie by some name or other must bee distinguished from those of another parte or prouince, and that vpon sundry different occasions and reasons, as vpon diuisions of gouernimēts among themselues, vpon the nature & condition of the soile wherein they liued, vpon some custome or fassion which some affected more then others, or of the names of such great men or comaunders as some

The vulgar people of *Germanie* not acquainted with the name of *Germanie*.

People of *Germanie* diuersly named.

might leane vnto and follow, whereof diuers lyke examples in other nations are also to be found.

Strabo, Cornelius Tacitus, Ptolomey, and others, do set down the names of sundry sorts of people among them, but both they and other forreyn authors may easely therein haue erred: I mean in the true ortography, for wee ordinarily see that almost no strangers do name other people or places iust as the self people do, that are strangers vnto them, and therefore the ancient German names beeing by latin or other authors strayned and drawn vnto their ortography, according to their fancies, from there very own nature, hath made them afterward to bee the more hard to be discouered, neuerthelesse it should seeme by some neernesse that the latinised appellations do carry vnto some Teutonic appellatiōs that the name of *Isteuones* is drawn frō their name of *outereftwoners*, that is, such as dwel most outward. And *Ingeuones* seemeth to bee *Inner-woners*, that is to say, *inward dwellers*. *Burgundiones* seem rightly to haue bin named *Bourgh-woners*, that is, such as dwelled in Bourghs or fensed places. *Hermiones* seem to haue rightly bin *Hershtoners*, that is the dwellers in certaine woods. And the *Sicambri* (which are now the people of *Geldria*) rightly in the own German language to haue bin *Sighcampers*, that is, combatters or fighters for victorie, for that *Sigh* in the ancient *Teutonic*; is victorie, and a *camper* a combatter.

Isteuones.

Ingeuones.
Burgundiones.

Hermiones.

Sicambri.

Leyland.

And whereas *Leyland* saith, that both the *Cimbri* and *Sicambri* haue gotten that name of *Cambria* the daughter of *Belynus* king of *Britaine*, who as he saith was maryed to a Prince in *Germanie* called *Antenor*,

it is

it is nothing regardable, no remembrance remaining of any such thing among the German authors, who would neuer haue missed to fynd out so notable a thing, as that two sortes of people, should take their seuerall appellations from one woman. Parte of these Sicambers saith *Sebastian Munster*, leauing their habitation where the *Rhene* entreth into the sea, went vp higher & inhabited about the Ryuer of *Main* & called themselues *franks*. And from these *franks* the *franch* or *frenchmen* are descended, who seem to haue bin so called; for hauing chosen in some sorte to liue in more freedome and libertie then some other of the Germans did.

Leyland mistaken.

Sebastian Munster.

The lyke is also said of the *frieslanders*; and that their former name (though others tel fabulous tales of an other far fetched cause) was *frectlanders*; in respect of the freedome they liued in. Others again and with some reason, suppose their name to bee *frieslanders*, of their countrey aptly called *friesland*; by reason that through the northern wyndes which are directly vpon it, the waters are there more sooner & harder frozē, then more further vpward within the inlands.

Frieslanders.

The *Sweuiās*, to wit, those that inhabite in *Sweuia*, do take their name as moste authors agree, of *Sweuus* the seauenth King of *Germanie*.

Sweuians.

The *Gothes*, beeing members of the German nation, were so called of the countrey they dwelled in, which lying on the south parte of the kingdome of *Swedia*, and beeing more better & fertil then all the other counties that ly north from it, was therefore called *Gotland*; which is to say, *Goodland*.

Gothes.

The *Danes*, are said to take their name after *Dan*;

Danes.

their

Look for
more of this
in the sixt
chapter.

Marck.

their first king, of whome the country of *Denmarck* (a very ancient kingdome) did also take appellation, for *marck* signifieth in the old *Teutonic* a limitted place, or a place that is marked out for the possession of some people, or iurisdiction of some prince, officer, or republyke.

Normānes.

The Normannes were so named, in regard of their habitation, because it was in the north, for *Norman* is rightly *Northman*.

Vandalles.

The *Vandales*, which should rather bee written *wandales* (but that the latin lacking the dooble v, vseth the single v in steed thereof) haue gotten that name by their much wandring from place to place, & not after *Vandalus* the 8. king of *Germanie* nor of a Queē called *wandala: wandel* in the *Teutonic* is the same that *wander* is in *English*, & a fit name for a people easely to purchase to themselves that wanded or wandred about the world, as this people did: & in lykelyhood accustomed to fleet from place to place in *Germanie* it self, before they wandred from thence to other foreyn partes of the world.

Longobar-
des.

The longobardes, took their name of the wearing of long-beardes (though some with litle reason do ween it otherwise) and albeit it weare the custome of the prouince from whence they came, & might be vsed also of some other Germans, yet was it not the fassion in *Italy* where they seated themselves, and where therefore they had this name more peculiarly giuen them, and where the country doth yet retain the name of her long-bearded inhabitants, though wrong pronounciation haue had some stroke in the matter, and from *Longobardia*,
hath

hath vulgarly turned it to *Lombardi*.

Thus then the people of *Germanie* inhabiting different prouinces, where vpon sundry causes called by different names, whereof many more examples might bee aleaged then heer are set down. Moreouer it hath diuers tymes also hapned, that the appellation of some of these people hath come to bee varied and changed, whereof sundry examples might be shewed, but because I desyre to speak moſte of the *Saxons* I wil omit to speak more of others, and proceed to declare the cause and reason why our noble anceters were called by this name of *Saxons*, because so many haue aleaged so many vnright and vnlykely causes thereof.

Of the
name of
Saxons.

Some affirme that they had this name of one *Saxo* the sonne of *Negnon*, and brother vnto *Vandale*, but this *Occa Scarlensis* contradicteth in saying, that there came three princes beeing bretheren, with troops of men out of *India*, to the seruice of *Alexander* the great, who after his death came with their said troops into *Germanie*, and that of *Friso* the eldest brother, the people of *Friesland*, had their appellatiō, and heer it is to be noted that *Occa* himself was a frieslander, & therefore had reason to chuse the descent from the elder brother for himself & his countreymē. Of *Saxo* saith hee, the Saxons took their name, but *Bruno* as he makes vs belieue, left his name rather vnto a place then vnto a people, to wit, vnto his *Brunoswyc*, since called *Brunswyc*.

Occa Scar-
lensis.

Others there bee that smelling these denominations to be fabulous, to mend the matter wil needes fynd out as they suppose, a better reason, and remem-

C

bering

bering that *Saxum* in Latin is a stone, and that *Saxon* & *Saxum* are not very much different, wil therefore conclude that the Saxons were so called, by reason of their hard and stony nature: but these wittie coniecuturers seem to forget that the Saxons when first they had this name, were vnacquainted with the Latin tounge, and therefore could not borrow a name from a language that was vnto them wholly vnknown, & yf it were giuen them by others, it is moſte lyke in all reason that it muſt bee by ſome of their neighbours the other Germans, but theſe were as litle acquainted with the Latin tounge as they, and therefore could not borrow a name to beſtow vpon them, out of a language which they alſo vnderſtood not.

P. Albinus
in Progym.

Some again (and thoſe learned authors) do think the Saxons to be deſcended from the *Saca* a people of *Aſia*, and that afterward they came in proceſſe of tyme to be called *Saxons*. And becauſe the x. doth alſo carry with it the ſound of s. they vnderſtand it to bee meane as yf it were written *Sax-ſonnes*, and conſequently to bee as much to ſay, as, *the ſonnes of the Saca*.

Seaxen.

But now to examin the lykelyhood of this, wee are to note that the Saxons did neuer wryte or call themſelues *Saxons*, neither did any of the other *Germans* euer call them ſo, but they called themſelues anciēty *Seaxen*, and *Seaxena*, and by abreuiation *Seaxna*, the a at the end being in deed ſuperfluous, and only added for ſome litle augmentation of ſound, as wee ſee that ſome do yet very needleſſy ad the letter e at the end of a greater number of Engliſh woords then is neceſſary. Of the higher *Germans*, they are written *Sachſen*, but pronounced iuſt as yf they wrote them

Saxen,

Saxen, and in all the *Netherlandes* they are & haue of old tyme bin called *Safsé*, & their country *Saffenlād*.

The turning then of the *e* into *o* whereby they came of other natiōs to bee called Saxons, hath surely bin by Latin authors, for that they deemed it to bee of a better sound: and that it is moſte vſuall for the ſo to alter & alſo to ad for betternes of ſound, both in the names of people of places, & in mennes proper names, can eaſely appeer to any that wil obſerue it.

It is further to bee conſidered, that the letter *n* at the end of nouns in the *Teutonic-toung* (wherein the ancient Saxon muſt needs be comprised) doth ſerue in ſteed of *s*. to ſignify the plural number, as ſome of them in our english yet remaynig in uſe, alſo do, as *children*, *Oxen* / *howſen* / &c. and ſo of *Seaxen*, by vnderſtanding the *n* to bee of lyke value to the *s* it is as much as yf it were written *Seaxes* : and this then beeing ſo, the *Saca* of *Aſia* are lyke to loſe there ſonnes in Europe.

And as for *Lucan* his calling them *Axiones*, it is not woorthie of any accompt at all, for whether it be lykely that *Lucan* the latin poet beeing a ſtranger vnto the *Germāns*, and dwelling farr from the, ſhould better know the true name of the Saxons then they theſelues, I leaue the reader to iudge: as alſo whether the mother toung of euery nation, is not the greateſt and beſt cōſeruer of ſuch originall names, as properly appertain to theſaid toung and nation.

Let vs then approche to the purpoſe, & ſeek by moſte probable apparence of truth, from whence this name of Saxons is rightly deryued. *Tacitus* in deed who liued in the tyme of *Traian* the Emperor, about

Some hundred yeares after *Christe*, in his describing *Germanie*, and naming the sundrie sortes of German people, doth make no mention of the Saxons: & yet *Ptolomey* who liued but about fortie yeares after him doth make mention, of the & their habitation, which hee noteth then to haue bin in *Cimbrica Chersonesus*.

Romans
neuer passed
the riuer
Albis.

Sebastian
Munst. lib. 3

Munsterus.

Out of the
old Saxon
Chronicle.

The reason then why *Tacitus* omitteth to speak of them, is lyke either to haue bin for lack of perfitt relation of them, for that the Romans neuer pearfed so farr into *Germanie* as to passe ouer the riuer *Albis*, or els hee comprehendeth them vnder some other name, & peradventure vnder the name of *Cimbriās*, which is more lyke then that they should formerly haue bin called *Catteans*, as *Crantzius* seemeth to ween, for that *Ptolomey*, as is aforesaid, placeth them in *Cimbrica Chersonesus*, and there (and not in *VVestphalia* as *Sebastian Munster* would haue it) do I hold there dwelling first to haue bin. And whereas *Cimbrica Chersonesus* hath since become (as yet it remayneth) a parte of *Denmarck*, yet was it anciently not so, for the Saxons who had there their ancient habitation, had about the possession thereof long warres with the danes, before the tyme of *Christe*.

Some of these Saxons coming more southerly on the riuer *Albis*, had warres there with the *Thuringers*, and logging themselves in a wood, gat by that meanes the name of *Holt-Saxons*; which is asmuch to say, as wood-Saxons, and left accordingly vnto the place where they so remayned, the name of *Holfasia*, wherein they buylded *Staden*, & heerby grew some difference in appellation between these & the other Saxons from whome they came, who hauing before

before bin only called Saxons now (as it seemeth) were for distinctiō called English-Saxōs a name perhaps abreuatiated of Englishish-Saxons by reason of that parte or prouince of *Cimbrica Chersonesus* called *Englād* wherein they inhabited: whereby wee may perceauē the name of English-Saxōs to haue bī giuē to the first & most āciēt Saxōs. But because I shal haue occasiō in the fyft chapter to speak more particularly of the names of Englād, & of English, I wil heer only speak of the name of Saxons, & declare the cause and reason why our anceters came first so to be called. Old Englād.

They beeing originally Germans as in the next ensuiuing chapter shalbe further shewed, did consequently not from els where bring the name of Saxōs with them, but had thesame appropriated vnto them in *Germanie*, euē as the other sortes of Germā people gat amōg thēselues for one cause or other, there seuerall denominations, which in some of them againe in tyme, was vpō some cause or other altered & chāged. VVhy^{our} ancetē^s were called Saxons.

This name then of Saxons they vndoubtedly had (though some hold it vnlykely) of their vse and wearing of a certaine kyn d of swoord or weapon inuented and made bowing crooked, much after the fassion of a sythe, in imitatiō whereof it should seem to haue first bin made. And when of late I conferred with the excellent learned mā. *M. Iustus Lipsius* about the Saxons true appellation (who I also found to concur with mee in opinion) hee could presently put mee in mynd that a sythe is yet at this present in the Netherlands called a *saisen*. Now the swoords of our anceters beeing made somewhat after that manner (the edge beeing on the contrarie syde) they might

*Iustus
Lipsius.*

wel carrie a lyke name vnto such an edge-tool, as they were made after: & albeit wee fynd these kynd of swoords anciently written seaxen, or seaxes, yet is it lyke enough that our anceters founded the x as f, for the welshmen wrote them Saison as they yet wryte vs, which it is lyke they wrote, according as they hard them pronounce there own appellation.

Of this kynd of weapon they had two sortes, the one whereof beeing long were worne for swoords, & the other beeing short, as hāgers or woodknyues, and these they called handseaxes, and such they were which after there coming into Britaine, they had stil in vse, and did weare priuately hanging vnder there long skirted cotes; wherewith at a banket on *Salisbury plaine* where *Hengist* had enuyted king *Vortiger*, about three hundreth of his nobles the watch-woord *Dem tow seaxes*, that is, *Take your seaxes*, beeing giue, were all of them suddenly slaine. And as there long seaxes or swoords, were as is said before, made after the forme of a fythe, so might there hand-seaxes as wel in falsion & bignes as somewhat in name, agree vnto there then vsed manner of ficles. Of this kynd of hand-seax, *Erkenwyne* king of the East-Saxōs did beare for his armes, three argent, in a feild gules. And the learned *Engelhusius*, of this kynd of seax & of the name of the Saxons, hath this ensuing Latin rythme.

Quippe brevis gladius apud illos Saxa vocatur.

Vnde sibi Saxo nomen traxisse putatur.

which may bee englished thus.

Because a Saxa termed is,

The short syvoord vvhich they vveare,

There-of the name of Saxons they

May vvel be thought to beare.

Armes of
king Erken-
winc.

Now

Now then it beeing manifest that our anceters did affect & vsually beare this kynd of weapon called a Seax, & that we fynd it not to haue bī vſed amōg the other Germās, vnleſſe of ſuch as afterward may haue followed thē in that faſſiō, why may not the peculiar bearers of that kynd of weapon, haue gottē after the ſame there appellatiō? for ſeeing the name of the weapō & the name of the bearers thereof, is all one, either the weapon was ſo called of the men, or the men of the weapō: but that men are vsually called according to the weapons which they beare, dayly experience doth ſhew vs, eſpecially in warre, where by the names of Lances, Carabines, pykes, muſkets, &c. the bearers of ſuch weapons rather than the weapons are vnderſtood. And albeit ſuch names do comonly remaine vnto the bearers only during the warre, yet yf they ſhould ſtil vſe thoſe weapons, then doubtleſſe would the names ſtil remain vnto them euē from one poſteritie vnto another. For the *Scytheans* as diuers learned authors & of good iudgement do reporte, gat and remayned with that name becauſe of there great vſe of ſhooting, for ſhootig in the *Ten tonic* is called *ſchieten* / & anciētly cometh of the verb *ſeytan* / which ſignifieth to ſhoot. Moreouer the Picards or people of *Picardie*, are ſaid firſt to haue gottē that name of there great & moſte accuſtomed vſe of pykes. And as ſome affirme, the Galliglaſſes in *Irelād* do retaine that name, of the kynd of polax which they are accuſtomed to vſe.

Men are
often called
after their
weapons.

Scytheans
ſo called of
ſhooting.

Galliglaſſes.

And not only of the weapons or armes which they haue borne, haue ſundry people gotten their denominations, but others euen of the faſſiō of apparel which they haue bī accuſtomed to weare, as the people iħaby

Togatz.

Bracatz.

ting in *Cisalpina*: were soryme called *Togata* because they went in gownes. And the old inhabitants of the south partes of *Frāce* were called *Bracata*, of a short kynd of cote where-with they were vsually clad.

And hee that wil but consider the alterations of the names of many other people of *Germanie* (which alwayes hath proceeded of one cause or other) wil fynd it nothing strange, that our anceters hauing before had some other name, should afterward come to leaue thesame, & to bee called by the name of *Saxōs*: for where for example sake (among others) are the names now vulgarly known in *Germanie*, of the *Catti*, the *Vbi*, the *Quadi*, the *Marcomanni*, the *Bructeri*, & the *Sicambri*, are they not all changed into other appellations? And the later, to wit, the famous *Sicambri* long since euen in *Germanie* it self grown into two fenerall names & people, which are now the *Geldres* that yet remain in their ancient residence, & the *frācs* that haue made their habitation more higher into the lād, as before hath bin noted, whose cōtrie now beareth the name of *Franconia*: parte of them vnder Prince *Faramūd* entring afterward into *Gallia*, left in fine vnto that cōtrie the yet retayned name of *Frāce*,

VVestfrāce.

East-france.

of some called *Francia occidentalis*, because *Franconia* in *Germanie* hath the name of *Francia Orientalis*.

These manifest and many examples then weyed; with the cause and reason as hath bin shewed, why our anceters had the name of *Saxons* (which proceeding of the bearing of armes can no way see dishonorable, but in deed very honorable, carying also in it self moſte reaſō & probabilitie of truthe) I trust ſufficiēt hath heer bin laid to ſatisfy the courteous reader.

25

HOWV THE AN- CIENT NOBLE SAXONS, THE TRVE ANCETERS OF

Englishmen, were originally a people of Germanie: and how honorable it is for Englishmen to be descended from the Germans.

The second Chapter.

THAT our Saxon anceters came out of *Germanie*, and made their habitation in *Britaine*, is no question; for that therein all agree, but some not contented to haue the a people of German race, will needs bring them from els where to haue come into *Germanie*, & from *Germanie* afterward to haue come into *Britaine*: and this seemeth to proceed of a certain kynd of delight that some people take, in deryuing & fetching things very far of, though moſte commonly vpon very litle ground or ſhew of certaintie.

But now to bee the better able to iudge of the probabilitie or lykelyhood of the truthe heerof, let vs ſee from what place it was that they came, yf from els where they came into *Germanie*, as alſo the tyme of their arriuall there. For the firſt, about the place from whence they came, I ſee great contradiction among the conductors, for that ſome wil bring them from *Asia*, ſome from *Africa*, ſome from *Macedonia*, ſome from *Denmarck*, & ſome from *Britaine* it ſelf, ſo as wee may bee moued to compaſſion, to ſee our poor anceters thus led vp and down the world, by a ſorte of blynd guydes.

They that wil bring them from *Asia*, wil ſeem to

D

haue

All our
wryters
agre, that
Englishmen
came from
Germanie.

have the moſte reaſon, aſwel for that in *Aſia* were ſomtyme an ancient people called the Saxe, which name of theirs draweth in ſound toward the name of Saxons, as alſo for that in *Aſia* mankynd had his firſt beginning. And conſidering ſay they further, that the Germans came out of *Persia* (which is in *Aſia*) why may not aſwel the Saxons bee alſo come out of *Aſia*, and that the Germans came out of *Persia* they ſeem to think a thing very certain, by reaſon of the affinitie of the German tounge with that of the Perſian. Firſt then as touching the Saxe of *Aſia*, I have alreedy ſpoke in the fore-going chapter, & ſo ſhal not need to repeat it heer: and to ſay that the Saxons have come out of *Aſia* for that mankynd had firſt beginning there, is not a reaſon to deduce the only from thece, but aſwel all the people els of the world: and I do ſhew in theſaid firſt chapter that the Germans (among whome the Saxons muſt bee comprised) did firſt from *Aſia* come into *Europe*, for in *Aſia* was that towre of confuſion where the diuerſitie of nations firſt was cauſed.

And whereas ſome to make an ancient difference between the Saxons and the Germans, as yf they were ſeuerall nations, and came ſeuerally into *Germanie*, wil confirm an opinion that the Germans came from *Persia* becauſe (as is afore-ſaid) of the affinitie of their language with the Perſian; ſurely it is an opinion of a very ſlender confirmation, for that in deed there is no affinitie at all betwee thoſe two languages, and albeit there may ſome half a dozen or half a ſcore woords be found in the Perſian, that are broken German woords, as *Choda*, *Phedar*, *Madar*, *Beradar*, *Dochtar*,

All people
had their be-
ginning in
Aſia.

Dochter, Star, Band, for God, Father, Mother, Brother, Daughter, Star, Band/what affinitie makes this, when all the rest is altogether different? yea as far different as two languages can bee the one from the other, and because I was desyring to bee surely informed in this point, I wrote vnto a gentleman of my acquaintance in Italy. in the yeare 1601. at such tyme as Sir *Antho- nie Sherley*, and *Cuchin Ollibeag*, were ambassadors there from the king of *Persia*, desyring him to con- ferre with the best interpreters in their train to know, what affinitie there might bee betwee the Duytsh & the Persian speeches, for there were that spake them both exceeding wel, but after they had vsed their me- mories as wel as they might, they could fynd but about these half dozen woords heer set down, that could seem to haue dependance, on the Duytsh, but more woords by oddes then thease, may be found in thesaid tounge, that seem to haue dependance on the Latin: and yet for all that, they are as far to few to make an affinitie between the Latin and the Persian languages, as are the broken Latin woords that are found in the welsh tounge, able to bring a neernesse between the Latin and the welsh. And I haue heard that a man may fynd in the Irish, some woords that sound of the Hebrew, but they help litle to make Irishmen thereby to be the better Hebricians: and hee that wil obserue it, shal fynd diuers woords in diuers other moste differēt lāguages that also agree together.

And yf some should yet moue further question why any German woords at all should bee found in the Persian tounge, seeing the countries ly so far one from another? to this I answere, out of *Trogus Pompeius*, *Trogus Pompeius*, that

that after the death of *Brennus*, when with 150000. men he went to sack the Tēple of *Apollo* in *Delphos*, the number neuertheless that remayned, and of those that dayly came vnto them, was so great, that lyke swarmes of bees they filled all *Asia*: insomuch that the Oriental kings made no warres one against another, but with whole camps of *Gaules*: and *Carion* maketh no doubt, but that these were *Gaules* and *German*s ioyned together, both which nations were of the *Grecians* called by the name of *Celta*, and why might not then the German soldiers bee employed in seruice in *Persia*, and leaue some few woords of their language their behynd them.

10: Carion.

Called Celta
of their
much ryding

And now to giue the curious reader some further proof of the strangenes of the *Persian* tounge, & so to make an end of this matter; I haue thought good in that language heer to set down some few lynes, of the beginning of the first chapter of *Genesis*: which together with the same in *Latin*, are these.

Dar aual afriid Choda mar an
asman, vemar anzenim.

Veanzenim bud thohi vbeuan;
vetarici abar rui tehom vbadi
chodaij vezida scheua abar rui
anab.

Vegust Choda, Baschad roschni:
vebud roschnaij.

Vebedid Choda mar an roschnaij
ceh neco, veguida card
choda meian an roschnaij v-
meian an tarici.

Vhecand Choda beroschnaij
roz, vebetarici cand schab. ve-
bud eivar, vebud bamdad roz
iakch.

In principio creauit Deus
cælum & terram.

Terra autem erat inanis &
vacua, & tenebre erant su-
per faciem abyssi, & spiritus
Dñi ferebatur super aquas.
Dixitq; Deus: Fiat Lux. Et
facta est lux.

Et vidit Deus lucem quod
esset bona, & diuisit lucem
a tenebris.

Appellauitq; lucem diem,
& tenebras noctem. Factuq;
est vespere & mane dies
vnu.

By

By this it may be seen especially to such as haue any knowlege in the Duytsh toung, that betwée that and this, heer is no neernesse of affinitie at all, but as much farnesse as needeth to be.

Hauiug before spoken of the supposed particular coming of the Saxons foorth of *Asia*, & whereof I meā to speak more anō, it followeth to shew what is said of their coming from *Africa*, and for this I must bring foorth *Occa Scarlenfis*, of whome I haue made mētion in the foregoing chapter, where I speak of the appellatiō or name of the Saxōs. This author forsooth saith, that because of the exceeding abundance of people in *India*, many were cōstrayned by lot to departe thence to seek themselues a new habitation, for that otherwyse their countrey would not haue bin sufficient to affoord them food.ouer thease were three brethren apointed to be princes & captaines, whose names were *Friso*, *Saxo*, and *Bruno*.

Occa Scar-
lenfis.

A fabulous
narration of
Occa Scar-
lenfis.

Thease he saith were entretayned in the seruice of *Alexander* king of *Macedonia*, who vsed them in *Asia* for the defence of that which hee had there conquered. But after the death of *Alexander* they sayled towards *Africa*, wherein *India* there own patria was. Yet willing to ful-doo their too-faln lot, In the yeare after the creation of the world 3670, they came into the *German sea*, and landed in the countrey where before their coming, the Gyants that by king *Brute* were driuen ont of *Albion*, had sought to haue habitation, but were by wyld people that inhabited there, chased from thence; and there *Friso* the elder brother with his followers seated themselves, and gaue vnto it the name of *Frieland*. *Saxo*

Sufridus
Petri.

The fable of
Friso Saxo
and Bruno
confuted.

the second brother, took vp his dwelling place by the riuer *Albis*, and *Bruno* where he buylt his burgh of *Brunof-wyc*, as is afore-said in the first chapter, Lo thus hath *Occa* told his tale, which in deed hath as plain a sent as a man need to wish, to fynd out a fable by; and yet I feare *Sufridus Petri* hath bin somuch misguyded by him, as to make warr with so woorthy an author as *Cornelius Tacitus*, & sundry others of farr better credit then euer was *Occa*: but now to the fable. *Friso* and his company hauing bin by lot constrained to seek themselues new habitations, because their countrey could not afoord the victualles, came vnto the seruice of king *Alexander*, but after his death they sayled towards *Africa*, wherein *India* their own patria was: belyke they did this because they had forgotten when first they came thence, to bid their freinds farewell; & so thought good to return again to discharge that office of curtesey, before they would take a farther iorney: but now hath *Occa* posed mee about their country of *India*, which he expressly saith was in *Africa*, & where in good faith I can fynd no such countrey, nor yet vnderstand that euer any parte of *Africa* was so called, I haue heard of *India* in *Asia*, which taketh name of the riuer *Indus*, a very far way from *Africa*, it beeing also called *India Orientalis* because some haue corruptly giuen *America* the name of *India Occidentalis*. But the afore said *Friso* neuertheles departing with his brethren & followers frō a place which neuer was, came into the German sea, & landed in a countrey frō whence the Gyants that king *Brute* had chased out of *Albiō*, had in seeking habitation bin also chased by the sa-

uage

WERE ORIGINALLY GERMANS, ETC. 31

usage people that dwelt there, and thus could *Friso*, &c his company do more then could the great Gyants, in taking the country from the wyld men, which had driven thence those same Gyants. And as for the name of the cite of *Brunswyc* the old Saxon Chronicles tel vs that it took the same of *Bruno* the sonne of *Ludolph* duke of *Saxonia* who in the yeare of our Lord 861. first began to buyld it. We haue now seen the coming of our Saxons, together with their frinds the Friseans, both from *Africa* and *Macedonia*: and whereas some affirm that they came from *Denmarck*, this may in some sorte bee true, their name of Saxons beeing thought as is said before, first to haue bin begun in *Cimbrica Chersonesus*, which of some is accompted a parte of *Denmarck*; but the learned and iudiciall German authors, do accompt the Danes to haue had at the first one original with the Germās, and consequently to haue bin a German people, and therefore I shal not need to stand much vpon this point, considering that I do heer only go about to prooue, that our anceters the Saxons were also originally a people of the German race.

And as for those that wil bring them from the Britains, I hold them for as good archers as hee who *Diogenes* did somtyme behold to shoot (among others) at a butte with the crosbow, for stil when his turn came to shoot, *Diogenes* would run and set his back against the mark: and beeing asked why hee did so, made answere, that hee did it for his safteie: and the reason was, for that the fellow was sure from hitting the mark seeing hee did neuer hit the butte.

If the Saxons came first out of *Britaine* into Ger-

Brunsvuyt,
whence it
taketh name

Franciscus
Irenicus and
others.

Diogenes
his place of
safetie.

manie, the Britaines and they were grown to a very great strangenes, when at such tyme as by the invitation of king *Vortiger* they returned out of *Germanie* into Britaine again, for that they neither could vnderstand any one woord of each others language, nor yet remember the old acquaintance & countreyship that had bin between them.

A quarrel
between a
hollander &
a frenchmā.

I haue heard a tale of a hollander and a frenchman that by chance met together on the way as they were traauailing, and falling out, went to buffets; the hollander was too hard for the frenchman, & threw him down, whereat the frenchman cryed out, *Nostre-Dame*. The hollander hearing this, was much moued, and bad beshrew his harte for his folly, in not telling him sooner that he was of *Rotterdam*, for quoth hee, I am of *Rotterdam* my self, and thow arte my countreyman, and haddest thow but told mee so much before, I had neuer beaten thee. Now yf any of these, either the Saxons or the Britaines, could haue remembred but thusmuch of their countreyship, as heer by a chance the frenchman vttered, which was straight wayes wel & wysely noted by the hollāder, it might also perhaps haue bred some freindship between them, but somuch could there not then bee thought vpon, nor neuer since, vntil as it seemeth it came to sombodyes mynd in a dream, that the Saxons were descended from the Britaines, and so for a dream I wil let it pas.

Thusmuch may suffice about our ancetērs coming from somany sundry places into *Germanie*, and now as touching the tyme of their coming, there is as great vncertainty, as there is of the places frō whence they

they
year
he n
of
seth
min
it w
othe
both
tyme
It fo
their
euer
come
by la
from
iorne
two t
in a m
bee m
sider
dayes
wilde
ges of
proui
uer ad
their c
them
parte
new
this, t
themse

they came: for albeit *Occa* aforesaid, can mention the
 yeare 3670. after the creation of the world, which
 he might easely coniecture by the tyme of the raighn
 of *Alexander* the great, in whose seruice hee suppo-
 seth them to haue bin, yet others do make their co-
 ming to haue bin about 700. yeares after, others say
 it was in the tyme of *Tiberius* the Emperor, and
 others can set down no tyme at all. So as beeing left
 both of the place from whence they came, and of the
 tyme whē they came, in all vncertaintie that may bee,
 It followeth now to consider of the lykelyhood of
 their coming, to wit, whether it bee lykely that
 euer any such people frō any place whatsoever haue
 come into *Germanie*. Wel then, they came by Sea or
 by land, yf by land and from out of *Asia*, which was
 from the east to the west, they could make no lesse
 iorney of it & come the neereft way they could, then
 two thowland myles. If from *Macedonia*, which was
 in a māner from the south to the north, it must needs
 bee more then one thowland myles, but now to con-
 sider the difficultie of so great a passage in those
 dayes, as the vnknown wayes, the great woods &
 wildernesses, the many riuers, the prouision & caria-
 ges of necessaries: and last of all the people of somany
 prouinces as they must pas thorow, who would ne-
 uer admit strāgers without warres, to march through
 their countries, seeing they could not but apeer vnto
 them as a people that came resoluēd to take some
 parte of the countrey from them, to make it their
 new dwelling place, and yet notwithstanding all
 this, to pas through somany countries, and to seat
 themselues on the sea coste, on the other syd beyond

About the
 Saxons sup-
 posed co-
 ming by
 land, into
Germanie.

E

them

them all, what man of sence can admit it?

About their
supposed
coming into
Germanie
by sea.

Tacitus in
descr. Germ.

* He should
haue said,
that in sum-
mer it so
dothe.

But now yf they came by sea (as *Occa* and such other as wil needs bring them from els where into *Germanie*, wil rather haue it) the must there sea voyage be also considered of. Beeing then presupposed to haue bin out of *Asia*; it must needs haue bin about by the *North sea*, or els by the *Mediterraneum sea*, first then yf it were by the *North sea*, to wit, from beyond all *Biarmia* and *Scripsinia*, this sea, how vnlykely it is to haue bin known & frequented such long tyme past, wee may iudge by that which *Tacitus* wryteth thereof, saying. It is so slow that it is almost immouea- ble, and thought of many to bee the bounds which compas in the whole world, & the reason of this opi- nion he saith, was, because the Sun continueth soo cleer and bright from the setting vnto the ryfing, that it darckneth the starres, *and some are perswa- ded that the sound of the Sun is their hard, as he ryfeth out of the sea: and that the beames of his head are there seen, as also many shapcs of Gods, and that there was the end of nature and of the world, by which fabulous conceyt, (which *Ta- citus* reporteth as the opinion of other men) it ea- sely appeereth how vtterly vnknown this sea and passage in those tymes was. But our countrymen that in this age of ours haue discouered it, do make another description thereof, & tel vs of heapes of yce lyke mountaines, floting vp and down that moste dangerous sea, & how somtymes the ships are hemmed in and compassed about, with these ycie moueable hilles, whereof *Tacitus* can tel vs nothing, which is also an argument of such ages ignorance of this

this
co
of
ship
of,
Lon
zina
our
tune
then
betw
Germ
Be
throu
whic
also t
Med
of Gr
about
fine t
said)
some
cours
lykly)
lyklye
so ext
descou
No
by sea
one w
they ar
vnly ke

this *Ocean*: but how perillous in deed it is, our own countrey men can best testify, by the lamentable losse of Sir *Hughe Willoughbie* & all the men in his two ships, who in the first attemp of the discoverie thereof, were in the moneth of *October* in the year of our Lord 1553. frozen to death, in the haven called *Arxina* in *Lapland*. And now for all this, yf any wil haue our anceters to haue had such wonderful strange fortune, as to haue escaped these & other sea-dangers, then might they lastly haue passed southerly, down between *Norway* and *Scotland*, and so come into the *German Ocean*.

R. Hakluyt
in the en-
glish nau-
gations.

But yf by the way of *Mare Magiore*, and so down through *Helespont*, into the *Mediterraneum* sea, by which sea the supposed comers frō *Macedonia* might also take their cours, then passing all the length of the *Mediterraneū* sea, they must haue come to the straight of *Gibraltar*, and haue passed it, & then haue coasted about the western & northern sydes of *Spain*, and in fine through our narrow seas haue come (as is afore-said) into the *German Ocean*, and so haue arryued in some maritime parte of *Germanie*. Of both these courses, the later (yf any of both might bee held lykly) must needs in all mennes iudgement seem the lyklyer, because the other is so far about by the north, so extream cold, and hath longest remayned vndiscovered.

Now what great difficulties their so farr coming by sea must needs carry with it, bee it by the one way, bee it by the other, wil wel appeer when they are rightly considered, to make the iorney more vnlykely to haue bin by water, then it hath bin she-

Seacompass
when first
invented.

Ab: Ortelius.

Sea compass
by some of
Bruges
brought to
32. wyndes.

Voyage of
the ships of
k. Hiram.

India some-
tyme called
Ophir.

wed to haue bin by lād: for where in such long fore-
going seasons was there such knowlege in the arte of
Nauigatiō, seeing the vse of the *Sea-compass*, and right
skil of sayling was not then known? the first vse of
the cōpas beeing as *Francisco Lopes de Gomara* saith,
found out by an Italian (whose name as some say was
Flauio) now three hundreth yeares past, the which
Italian was of *Malphi* not far from *Naples*. And as
Ortelius saith, albeit this Italian found out the vse of
the compass, yet was it vsed but for eight wyndes,
vntil by some of *Bruges* in *Flanders*, it was afterward
brought vnto thirty & two. Such then as in old fore-
going seasons vsed to make sea-voyages, were faine to
pas in smalle vessels, all-along by the shore sydes, and
within the sight of land, beeing often forced to ly
attending at the sea portes and creeks, for conuenient
wyndes and tydes: and this manner of seafaring was
the cause, that the ships which *Hiram* king of *Tyrus*
sent with his sea-men and the seruants of king *Salomon*,
for gold of *Ophir*, were three yeares on their
voyage. They passed down the *Red sea*, and so vp
eastward all-along the land coste vnto *India*, which
was heertofore as saith *Iosephus* (in the secōd chapter
of his eight book of the antiquities of the Iewes) cal-
led *Ophir*.

He that shal then consider of this voyage, down
Mare Rubrum vnto *India*, or the gold-lād of *Ophir*,
and of the voyage of our anceters down *Mare Ma-
giore*, through *Helespont* into the *Midland sea*, or for
more neernes to take it from *Macedonia*, as some wil
haue it, vnto that maritime parte of *Germanie* where
they are said to haue seated themselues, shal fynd no
great

grea
seein
to ha
lyke
mer
long
quain
num
ny pe
them
neces
that
It
forem
one in
reof t
nia, a
were
and h
weste
himse
sea, ex
cause
other,
custon
Gades
their v
the Te
moste
True
of the
ly with

great difference in the greatnes of the distancēs. And seeing the ships of *Hiram*, which may bee accompted to haue gon their voyage in a yeare and a half, and in lyke space to haue returned; may bee thought by former trade to haue bin thereunto accustomed; much longer tyme for such an extraordinarie and vnacquainted voyage of our anceters, with a far greater number of smalle vessels, for the transporte of somany people, both men and women (as were to go seek themselves a new habitation) & much more store of necessarie prouision, must needs be requyred, then for that of the others.

It is further to bee noted, that at the streight aforenamed there are two mighty mountaines; the one in *Andaluxia*, which is called *Gibraltar*, whereof the straight taketh name: the other in *Mauritania*, and called *Abyla*, the which two mountaines were heretofore called the two pillers of *Hercules*; and heer all antiquitie was wont to recon the last western limit of the world. And neither *Hercules* himself who nauigated through the *Mediterraneum* sea, euen vnto that place, (and of whome for that cause the two hilles had that appellation) nor any other, durst euer pas further, and therefore it was a custome among failers arryuing safely at the Ile of *Gades*, which is at the point of the said straight; to pay their vowes by offering sacrifice of thank-giuing in the Temple of *Hercules*, for their safe arryual to that moste remote place of the earth.

Pillers of
Hercules.

Temple of
Hercules.

True it is, that before the tyme of *Ptolemey*, the Iles of the *Canaries* called the *Fortunate Ilādes*, which ly without the streights but downward to the south,

Fortunate
Ilands.

were discovered : but seeing no mā durst go without the streight either about discoveries or ought els; wee may rather think, yea & that with good reason and probabilitie, that they were discovered by some fishermen that might easely from the coste of *Africa* ouer against them, fynd them out, seeing they ly so neer vnto thesaid coste.

And yf notwithstanding what hath heer bin said, our supposed anceters that in those dayes could neither bee good Cosmographers, nor skilful Nauigators, must yet bee thought first to haue passed the whole length of the *Mediterraneum sea*, from the east to the west, and quyte to haue put down *Hercules*, by aduēturing to pas foorth at the streight aforenamed: and much more by passing all the west coste of *Spain* and *Portugal*, from the south to the north; as also the cape of *finis terræ*: and then to bend their cours to the northeast, & so through our chanel, as hath bin said, to come into thease maritime partes of *Germanie* and yet to receaue such iniury that all Antiquitie should sylēce so braue & aduenturous a iorney, as so-māy difficulties (as haue bin relyted) must needs make it to bee: their hap hath surely bin exceeding hard.

But admitting for all this that they came by sea, by what way soeuer, & misling in their iorney of many other places to make their habitatiō in, arryued lastly in some maritime place of *Germanie*, or *Cimbrica Chersonesus*, how is it lyke that so populus and euer-warlyke a people as the Germans, such as alwayes were apt to enlarge their own limits, and to inuade many other potent countries, would admit strangers to inuade theirs, and to dispose the of a good parte thereof.

thereof. And yf any man should think that those partes of *Germanie* were not then peopled, hee is deceived, for the learned *Genebrard* saith, that in long tyme past, people did more couet to inhabit towards the sea costes then far within the land: and this in reason is moſte lykely ſo to haue bin, becauſe they thereby might come to enioy the comodities of the ſea, aſwel as thoſe of the land: & therefore they came not vnto an vnpeopled place, & ſo could not attain to any ſuch eſpecial habitation, without fighting for it; but muſt be ſure to bee a long tyme in warre before they could bee left vnto quiet poſſeſſion; and ſuch warres, and vpon ſuch an occaſion (as is an inuaſion made by ſtrangers) could neuer be clean rooted out of the memorie of poſteritie.

Genebrard.

Sea coſtes
more of old
tyme inha-
byted then
the inlands.

Moreouer vulgar tradition would haue reconed them ſtrangers, their language alſo would haue bin altogether different, and lightly ſome of the places which they came to poſſeſſe, they would haue nominated according to places in the countrie where they had had their old habitatiō; as ſuch as come frō far to haue new reſidences els where, are comonly wont to do. Yea, and that which is more, their Idoles and pagan rytes and religion would haue bin different from the other Germans, whereof it is lyke one or other would haue kept memorie, but their Idols are known to haue bin *Tuiſco*, *Thor*, *Voden*, *Friga*, *Seater*, & ſuch others as had the others Germans, Danes & Swedens (all anciently one nation) whereof more ſhalbe ſpoken in the next Chapter.

Thuſmuch may ſuffiſe to ſhew the vnlykelyhood or rather impoſſibilitie of the ſuppoſed coming of

Tacitus in
his descript.
of German.

our Saxō anceters frō els where into *Germanie*. And now wil I return vnto *Cornelius Tacitus* a moſte credit-woorthy wryter, to ſe what his iudgement is of their beeing or not beeing originally *Germās*, ſeeing it is in this caſe very allowable, hee hauing ſo lōg ago, ſo diligētly labored to bee wel acquainted both with the countrey and people of *Germanie*.

» His iudgement then (as may apeer by his own
» woords heer ſet down) is, that the Germans are
» home-bred & the natural people of their countrey, &
» not mixed with others, coming from other places;
» for that ſuch as in former tymes did ſeek new habita-
» tions, did come by ſea and not by land, and their huge
» & ſpacious Ocean beeing as (ſaith hee) I may term it,
» different from ours, is ſildome navigated by our men,
» for beſydes the peril of ſuch a rough and vnknown
» ſea, who vnleſſe *Germanie* were his natie ſoile, would
» leaue *Asia* *Africa* or *Italie* to go plant himſelf there:
» the countrey of it ſelf beeing rude, and the aire vn-
» pleaſant, &c. Theſame author, within ſome few lynes
» after, declareth his iudgement again, ſaying thus. I am
of opinion with them that think the people of *Ger-
manie* not altered and changed by ioyning with other
nations, but haue continued their own true and pure
nation lyke vnto none but themſelues.

And this ſurely of this woorthy author was verie iudicialy ſpoken, after that himſelf (not beeing cōtent to take reportes by retail) had made moſte diligent & curious enquiry, to be beſt thereof informed. And in deed after all examinations of diuers opinions of the Saxons name & originall, I fynd that diuers learned Germans of our tyme do plainly ſay, that there is no

other

Ioannes Po-
marus and
others.

other accompt to be made of the Saxons then of the other people of the German nation, and with them in this opinion (as is noted before) the great antiquarie & excellently learned *Iustus Lipsius* doth fully concurre.

Neither is it of moment to think our anceters came out of *Asia*, because *Ptolemey* giueth the name of *Safones* to a people inhabiting in *Scythia*, not far from the moūtaines of *Imaus*; for yf neernes of name were a sufficient argument, then might the *Suebi* a moſte ancient people alſo of *Germanie*, be ſaid to bee deſcēded from the *Suebi* of this aforeſaid very parte of *Asia*, ſeeing they & thoſe of *Germanie* are noted by *Ptolemey* without the difference of any one letter, and yet is his ortographie different (by ſomuch as it is) between the *Saxones* he noteth for a people of *Germanie*, and his *Safones* of *Asia*. And ſo might in lyke māner the *Samnita* which he placeth in *Gallia*, bee of the *Sānita* or *Sāmita* in *Scythia*. And it may ſo bee ſaid of fundry the lyke; yea ſome peraduenture might imagin all the *Germans* (becauſe of ſome neernes of name) to bee deſcended from the *Garamantes* of the inferior *Libia* in *Africa*.

It is ſildome or neuer ſeen (as before I haue nored) that ſtrangers do call either other people or other places as the people inhabyting ſuch different places, do call themſelues: and daily experience doth witnes this, euen in ſuch as are the neereſt neighbours one to another, as for example, the *Germans* albeit they border vpon the *Italians*; do not vulgarly ſo call them, nor yet their cōūtrei *Italy*; but do term thē *Weifhers* and their cōūtrei *Weifhland*. He that wee call a frēch-

No nation
doth call
one another
as each cal-
leth it ſelf.

man, calleth himself Fráçois. He that wee call a Spā-
yard calleth himself Español. He that wee call a
welshman calleth himself Cymbro, and contrariwise
none of all theāse do call vs as wee call our selues, nor
none of them lyke other. For a Frenchman calleth an
Englishman Anglois, the Spanyard calleth him In-
gles, and the welshman calleth him Saison: and there-
fore there is no doubt to bee made, but *Prolemey* and
other wryters haue much varied from the very right
appellation both of people and places, and the more,
by how much more they liued in distāce from them,
all which may surely argue the ground to bee moſte
vnſure, of deryuing people of one parte of the world
through ſhew of neernes of name, from the inhabi-
tants of another parte thereof, and thoſe alſo very far
each from other.

Hauiſg now as I truſt giuen the reader ſufficient
ſatiſfaction in this matter, and leſt him to belieue that
our Saxon anceters were meerly and originally a
people of *Germanie*, it followeth then to ſhew what
a highly renowmed and moſte honorable nation the
Germans haue alwayes bin, that thereby it may
conſequently appeer how honorable it is for Engliſh-
men to bee from them deſcended. For manifeſtation
whereof I wil firſt ſet down, what things proper
vnto them, do eſpecially make them a moſte noble
nation in the ſight of all the world, and then wil I
ſhew the reportes and testimonies which ancient au-
thors of other nations, do giue them.

Why the
Germāns are
a moſte no-
ble nation.

1.

The firſt therefore & moſte memorable, & woorthy
of moſte renowme and glorie, is, that they haue bin
the only and euer poſſeſſors of their countrey, to
wit,

wit, the first people that euer inhabited it, no antiquitie beeing able to tel vs that euer any people haue dwelt in *Germanie* saue only the *Germás* themselues, who yet vnto this day do there hold their habitation.

Germás the
continually
possessors of
Germanie.

Secondly they were neuer subdued by any, for albeit that the Romans with exceeding great cost, losse & long trooble, might come to bee the commaunders of some parte thereof; yet of the whole neuer, as of *Gallia*, *Spain*, & many other countries els, they were.

2.

Germás
neuer sub-
dued by any

Thirdly they haue euer kept themselues vn timer with forrain people, and their language without mixing it with any forrain tounge.

3.

Germás nor
their lang-
uage mixed.

In all which three pointes of greatest, national honor, I doubt whether any people els in the world can challenge to haue equalitie with them.

And for their further honor it is to bee considered, that they haue not only bin the euer keepers of their own countrey, mean whyle so many other nations of the world haue bin transposed & forced to fly from one region to another, and subiected to the irrecoverable losse of their national names; languages and habitations, but many moste warlyke troops haue gon out of *Germanie*, and taken possession in all the best countries of *Europe*, where their offspring euen to this day remaineth. As first for example sake to begin with the Saxons the anceters of our noble English natiõ, who came & took possession of *Lhoegria* the best parte of *Britain*, and left vnto it the name of *England*, which vnto this day, with daily encrease of honor, it stil enioyeth.

Englishmen
issued from
the *Germás*.

The francks in lyke manner a people of *Germanie*, (much about the tyme that our Saxon anceters came

Frenchmen
first issued
from the
Germans.

The people
of *Löbardie*
issued from
the Germãs.
Crantzius
lib. 2.

Nobillitie
of *Spaine*
issued from
the Gothes.

into *Britain*) entred into *Gallia*, vnder their duke or king called *Faramond*, and of these francks, it came afterward to bee called France, & the people frenchmen now of vs frenchmē, (as els where hath bin touched) and to these the ancient Gaules were forced to giue place, and glad in the end to ioyn in amitie with them, whereby of two nations, they became one, and do now remain known to the world vnder the name of frenchmen.

The Longobardes in lyke sorte, beeing a people of the northern parte of *Germanie*, by occasion of an extraordinarie famin in the tyme of *Snio* king of *Denmarck*, as *Crantzius* testifieth, (through the counsel and aduice that was giuen by a woman) were by lot sent foorth of the countrey, about the yeare of our Lord 384. and at the last attayned vnto the possession of the best parte of all *Italy*, which after them doth yet retain the name of *Lombardy*.

The Gothes & the Vandalles, beeing also a people of the septentrional partes of *Germanie*, did not only display their banners and made themselues to bee dreaded in *Italy*, but in *Africa* also, and coming into *Spain*, did there establish the successiue seates of many kings: & from the blood and descent of the said Gothes, both the king himself, & māy of the greatest nobillitie at this present in all *Spain*, are descended, & the surnames of *Guzman*, *Manryc*, *Mandoza*, *Albukerck*, & *Enriques*, with sundry other of German sound & signification do accordingly argue the original of such families. Yea the names of *Catalonia*, which rightly should bee *Gotholonia*, & *Andaluzia*, which is otherwise *Vādaluzia*, prouinces taking appellation

pellan
also y
Th
thern
the po
terwa
of the
this b
more
the le
Germa
bit in,
this da
great a
ceters.
thors, a
honor
of the v
Arist
their ne
as wel
entire t
witness
Nasce
of the R
mistake
children
born fro
nations
adultrie
only was
to endure

pellation of the *Goths* and *Vandales*, do heere vnto also yeild proof.

The Normannes lykwise, coming from the northern partes anciētly of *Germanie*, obtained in *Frāce* the possession of *Newstria*, which of them took afterward the name of *Normandie*, from whence some of them not long after came into *England*, but of this because it more concerneth vs then the others, more shalbe spoken in the sixt chapter, & therefore the lesse in this place. Thus haue wee heer seen the Germans leaue places vnto their posteritie to inhabit in, in *Italy*, *Spain*, *France*, and *Britain*, where vnto this day they remain, as the true witnesses of the great actions of their most victorious and noble ancestors. Let vs now see by the reporte of ancient authors, and such as were strangers vnto them, of what honor esteem and woorthynes they were in the sight of the world, in those their elder ages.

Aristotle saith, that the Germans vsed to take their new born children and to dyue them in riuers, as wel to make triall of their strength, as to begin to enure them vnto hardnes, which thing *Gallen* also witnesseth, and therefore *Claudian*, saith:

Nascentes explorat gurgite Rhenus. that is, The streā of the *Rhene* doth try the new born babes, & they are mistaken that reporte this custome of putting litle children in water, to haue bin to descerne the base born from the ligitimate, for the Germās of all other nations had least cause to seek any such way of trial, adultrie beeing very rarely found among them, but it only was, as is aforesaid, to enure them to hardnes, & to endure the water betymes, for that (as a thing very

Normannes
issued from
the Germās.

Testimonies
of ancient
authors of
the woorthynesse
of the Germās.

Polit. lib. 8.

Gallen.
Claudian.

Dion.
Herodote.
Cæsar.
Seneca.

necessarie for soldiers) they were in their tender yeares taught to swim, whereby in tyme they were able as both *Dion* and *Herodote* do reporte, euen armed, to swim ouer riuers: and *Cæsar* saith that this nation did endure hardnes, euen from their tender yeares. *Seneca* also saith that they taught their litle boyes to menage the pyke, hauing smalle iauelings made for them of purpose: and they did vse to lay their children among their armour in the camp, it beeing a sporte vnto the infants to see the glittering of the armour, &c. Moreouer the said author censureth them to take their only delight in bearing armes, as beeing thereto born & thereto brought vp.

Tacitus in
descript. Ger.

Iulian.

Dionysius.
Arrianus.

By the report of *Seneca*, In lib. de ira: no nation more courageous then the German.

Cæsar byting at them, calleth them a periured & dissembling people, but who can expect better the a bad reporte at his enemyes hand, his ambition was more daunted in the medling with them, then with any other nation whatsoeuer, and that his calumniating them may the more apeer to bee of malice, one of his own nation who liued among them & knew their conditions better then hee, doth reporte of them the clean contrary, saying, that they were without fraud & subtiltie, yea one of *Cæsars* own successors in the Roman Empyre, saith plainly, that hee had learned by experience, that this people could not flatter, but conuersed simply and plainly with all other nations.

Dionysius and *Arrianus* do call them a martial and a warlyke people. And *Seneca* doth exceedingly laud them, not letting to say, that there is no nation more cowragious then the German, none more redy to giue the onset on the enemy then they, they beeing

beeing a people naturally giuen to warre.

Iosephus saith, that when the Emperor *Caius Caligula* was murdered by *Chereas* & others, the first that gat knowlege thereof were the Germans, a troop of men chosen out of the Duytsh nation to be the Emperors gard, whereby is to be noted what great trust and confidence was reposed in that nation, when princes so long ago (as both in Italy Fráce & other places they haue since continued) did chose them for the men to whome they comitted the safety and conseruation of there own persons. And *Chereas* aforesaid hauing killed his prince, was by thesaid princes gard of Germans, presently killed himself. *Iosephus* also wryteth that at the burial of *Herode Ascalonite* first followed his own seruants, then the Tharſes, then the Germans, and after the Germás the Gaules, &c. And in comendation of the woorthynes of the Germás, in another place he saith thus. They are big and strong of body, and vsed to stand in the fore-front of the battail, and to receaue the first encounter of the enemy, for their presence where they weare, brought good speed and furtherance. And of such resolution they shewed themselves, that *Appian* reporteth them to bee the contempters of death, which he saith to proceed, of a concealed hope of returning to lyf again. Yet seemeth not their resolutions in affaires of waight to be done without aduiselement, for *Tacitus* saith of them that they deliberate when they cannot dissemble, and resolve when they cannot err, and because this author is better acquainted with their ancient cariage then any other, I must therefore make him a more ample

In lib. 29. de
antiq. Iude.

Princes an-
ciently gar-
ded by Ger-
mans.

Libro 17. de
Ant. Iudeor.

Appianus.

witnesse of their woorthynesse, albeit it were euen in such an age as they could bee reputed no other then barbarous, seeing they then wanted the knowledge of letters, and consequently of right ciuillitie: and yet taking them as they were, thus of them hee speaketh.

Tacitus in
descr. Germ.
Germās vsed
to go sing-
ing to the
warres.

The old Ger-
mans obli-
ged them-
selues by oath
to defend
their prince.

They go singing to the warres, and haue certain verses by singing of which they encowrage themselves. The women do carry such necessary things, as serue for the preparation of their husbands & childrens nowrishment. When they come to ioyn battail, it is a dishonor to their Prince to bee ouercome in valour, and to his followers not to go so farr in prowesse as their prince. To return aliue from that battail in which his Prince is slain is a perpetual reproche and infamie, it beeing the most principal point of their oath to defend and maintain him, and to ascribe their own exploits to his glorie & honor. Princes do fight for victorie, and their followers for the Prince. They go whē they are hurt to their mothers & wyues, who ouer-view suck and dresse their wounds, carry them meat, and incowrage them to stand to it: yea it is reported that some battailles beeig euen ready to bee lost, haue bin by the womens earnest prayers, exposing their bodies to the danger, and by shewing how near at hand their captiuitie was, recouered again.

If any in battail do lose his sheild it is reputed the greatest offence and disgrace, and many which in battail haue saued themselves by flight, haue afterward for the very shame thereof hanged themselves. And heer hence may haue proceeded that which S.

Clement

WERE ORIGINALLY GERMANS, ETC. 49

Clement and *Eusebius* wryte, that many of the Germans did subdue gluttonie with an halter. But to return again to *Tacitus* & for an vphor in praise of the noble Germans admirable courage, let vs heare him say. That the Romans were two hundredth and ten yeares about the conquering of *Germanie* * in which tyme there were many losses on both partes, but neither the Samnites, nor the Carthagineans, nor the Spaniards nor the Gaules nor the Parthians so often troobled the. And therefore was it truly reported of the Germans, that there was neuer any that medled with them, that repented it not. Yea so great was the deserued glorie & renown of their valour, that other nations, to wit, the Treueri & the Neruij, did ambitiously seem to haue their begining from the Germans, as though (saith *Tacitus*) by this glorie of blood, they should bee vnlyke and differ in cowardlynes from the Gaules.

* And yet conquered it not neither.

And now touching their honestlie of lyf, a rare thing among pagan people (for such they then were) *Cæsar* himself reporteth, that the youth of *Germanie* were not giuen to the lusts of the flesh: the Germans accompting it a thing moste beastly to haue the company of any woman before she came to the age of twenty yeares. And *Tacitus* shewing their great continencie saith, that Matrimonie is seuerely obserued among them, and that of all barbarous people, they only did content themselves one man with one woman, except some very few which not for vnuly lust, but for their nobillitie sake were sued vnto, for fundry mariages. Adulterie is sildome comitted in so populous a nation, and the punishment for it incon-

The old Germans of all other people contented themselves one mā with one womā.

G tinently

„tinently inflicted at the best lyking of the husband,
 „&c. It is very comendable among them that only
 „virgins do marry, and that only once, and the man
 „the lyke, contracting thus with the hope & desyre of
 one wyf, &c. No man laugheth at vices. Good man-
 ners are of greater authoritie and force among them,
 then els where good lawes. A rare comendation
 surely of such a people as the Germans then were: I
 omit sundry other things very praise-woorthy amōg
 them, and espetially their moſte free and bountifull
 hospitallitie, the lyke whereof, was no where els to
 be found.

Good man-
 ners of what
 force amōg
 the Germāns.

Hospitalli-
 tie no where
 lyke to that
 of the Ger-
 mans.

Germanie
 descrybed as
 it was of old
 tyme.

Lo heer the testimony of sundry anciēt & approued
 authors, of this moſte ancient honorable and wyde-
 renowned people, the true and moſte woorthy an-
 ceters of Englishmen, who in those former ages not
 beeing to bee other wise accompted of, but as vnciuil
 and barbarous, when euen at the handes of meer strā-
 gers they acqyred so great praise, there inciuiltie
 appeereth to haue bin such that it might haue giuen
 great example of ciuiltie, to all the rest of the barba-
 rous nations of the world besyde. And whereas *Ta-
 citus* in some things, descrybing the rudenes of the
 people (which is not to bee marueled at considering
 their want of learning) doth also shew the countrey
 to ly in a manner vaste, vnpleasant, vnmanured, wyld
 woodie & sterill, and not replenished with fair and
 beautiful buyldings, as the greatest parte of the world
 was not in those dayes, the change of all this in the
 since-succeeding ages hath grown to bee maruelous
 great: for long before theſe our later ages the coun-
 trey hath bin brought to bee very fertil, the ground
 for

for
 be
 go
 do
 ma
 fur
 retu
 I
 repl
 citie
 do d
 yea
 syde
 wha
 ceed
 that
 the i
 suck
 dece
 tain v
 the t
 wife
 custo
 learn
 was
 Gree
 barbar
 & gre
 foorth
 and S.
 frica
 flowri

WERE ORIGINALLY GERMAN'S, ETC. 31

for tillage in some places of the east partes thereof beeing so spacious & so great, that the husbandman going forward with his plowgh in the morning, doth neuer turn it back again til it bee mid-day: so making in his whole dayes woork, but two plowed furrowes; one in his going forward, the other in his returning back.

Two plowed furrowes a whole dayes woork in *Germanie*.

It yeildeth also great store of good wyne, and is replenished with nūbers of most faire & flowrishing cities. The mynes (whereof *Tacitus* seemed doubtful) do deliuer *Gold*, *Siluer*, *Copper*, and all other metalles: yea the riuers do yeild gold, in the sand on their shore sydes. And as touching the knowlege of the people, what learning or skil is there amōg men that they exceed not in? It is a meer imaginarie supposal, to think that the tēperature of the ayr of any regiō, doth make the inhabitants more or lesse learned or ingenious, & suck as so persuaue theselues are therein vndoubtedly deceaued. I do confesse that certain nations haue certain vertues & vices more apparently proper to them the to others, but this is not to bee vnderstood otherwise to proceed, then of some successiue or heritable custome remaning among them, the case concerning learning and scyence beeing far different: for where was there euer more learning and scyence then in *Greece*, and where is there now in the world more barbarisme? What moste excellently learned men, & great doctors of the Church, hath *Africa* brought forth, as *Tertulian*, *Optatus*, *Lactantius*, *S. Cyprian*, and *S. Augustyn*? and with what learned men is *Africa* in our tyme acquainted? Contrariwise in the flowrishing dayes of the Romans, how vtterly without

People not ingenious according to their countrey aire.

hout the knowlege of letters, scyences and artes, were the Germans; and how do the Germans now a dayes flourish in all learning and cunning. As in the well-speaking science of *Rhetorike*. The truth-trying *Logyk*. The perfect *Arithmetik*. The righteous *Geometrie*. The high-reaching *Astronomie*. And the helth-restoring *Phisik*, with all other most profound learning & excellent sciences. And in the knowlege of the Imperial lawes, the Germans may rightly challenge the first place.

A heauen
of Siluer.

Sundry moste rare inuentions haue had their original and birth among them. Whereof the noble arte of printing, & the vse of Artillerie, are of moste note. In handy-woorks they haue don most admirable things, such for example as was the heauen of siluer, which by *Ferdinand* the Emperor, was sent vnto *Soliman* the great Turck, wherein all the planets had their seuerall courses, where the one *Sphere* moued swiftly and the other slowly, where the Sun held his ordinarie cours through the *Zodiac*, where the moon at her due seasons appeered in her newnes, fulnes, encreasing and decreasing, according to her iust cours. This pece of woork was born by twelue men; set in frame and vnframed again in the presence of the Emperor, by him that had made it: who also made a book conteyning the manner how to keep thesame in due order: and of this moste rare and wonderful pece of woork, *Iouius*, *Sabellicus*, and the french poet *Bartas*, do make mention.

An eagle of
wood made
to fly.

Moreouer by a German named *Ioannes de Monte-regio*, vulgarly *Coningsberg*, was an eagle made of wood, with such wonderful arte, that flying out of the

the h
pero
Nora
were
chang
but m
place
a Ge
temp
that
great
by bi
myle
toun

Tr
ction
and il
to no
drink
lesse
kenne
it is th
that v
suppo
of the
vice
but in
whol
their
men,
shoul

Th

the hand of the maker thereof; it flew after the Emperor a long way, even vnto the gate of the citie of *Norinberg*. What would *Tacitus* now say, yf hee were abye, and did behold so great an alteration and change in this people? both in learning & ouining; but moſte of all to ſee the ſeat of the Roman Emperor placed in *Germanie*, and the Emperor himſelf to bee a German, yea the Imperial dignitie (the greateſt temporall ſtate of the world) to haue continued in that nation & race, theſe 800. yeares, *Charles* the great that firſt therevnto brought it, beeing a German by birth & deſcent: born at *Engelheym* two Duytſh myles from *Magunce*, and ſpeaking the German tounge, as his own proper language.

Seat of the
emperor in
Germanie.

True it is, that as all nations haue their imperfections ſo haue the Germans theirs; and that of an old and il continued cuſtome, for *Tacitus* forgetteth not to note vnto vs, that they thought it no diſhonor to drink day and night: and yet was it in thoſe dayes the leſſe maruel, ſeeing *Plinie* complayneth that drunkenneſſe raigned throwghout the world. And ſtrange it is that *Athenæus* reconing vp the nations giuen to that vice, omitteth the Germans; whereby it may bee ſuppoſed that hee accompted them ſober in reſpect of the Grecians and others. This ancient & habited vice is among them of late yeares much decreaſed, but in troth they haue had good leaſure long ſince wholly to haue left it, though in great lykelyhood, their bordering neighbours the Italians and frenchmen, haue not in their hartes greatly wiſhed they ſhould.

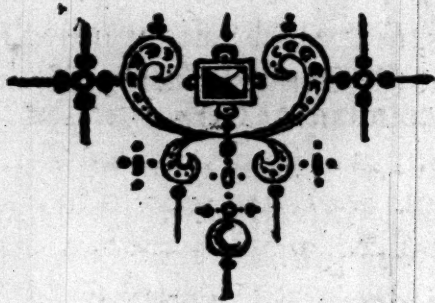
Plinius.

Athenæus.

Dronkēneſſe
begining to
be wel^l left
among the
Germans.

Thus hauing briefly ſhewed both that our an-

54 . THAT THE SAX. WERE ORIGIN. GERM.
 ceters the Saxons, were a people of *Germanie*; as
 also the honor aswel anciently as modernly of that
 great & noble nation, equal in honor to the chief, yf
 not before all nations els of the world (the points
 rightly considered & to bee seen in them that moste
 truly declare the honor of nations) our noble En-
 glish nation, doubtles from them descended, shal not
 need in all inuolued obscuritie and vncertaintie, els
 where to seek there original (only for the delyre of
 far fetching it) beeing from no where able to deryue
 it more cleer, nor no way more honorable.



OF

O
M



also o
vnto
out o
partly
tounge
whic

Fin
mann
indus
king
territo
toget
lynesh
prosp
fore t
the D
Cherse

OF THE ANCIENT MANNER OF LYVING OF OVR SAXON ANCETERS.

Of the Idols they adored whyle they were
pagans: and how they grew to bee of grea-
test name & habitation of any other
people of *Germanie*.

The third Chapter.



Having treated in the fore-going chap-
ters of the originall, the name, and the
habitation of the old Saxons, it is re-
quisit that I now speak of the custo-
mes and rytes which they obserued, as
also of the reputation and greatnes they haue grown
vnto in their countrie of *Germanie*. Partly gathered,
out of the writings of sundry learned Germā authors:
partly out of old books and records in the *Teutonic-
tounge*, and supplied by obseruation of sundrie things,
which long traditiō hath reserued in their posteritie.

First then as touching their ancient condition &
manner of lyf. They were a people very actiue and
industrious, vtterly detesting idlenes & sloth; stil see-
king by warres to enlarge the bounds of their own
territories: fiers against their enemyes, but conuersing
together among themselues in great loue and freind-
lynesse, an espetial cause of the augmentation of their
prosperitie. They had (as els where I haue noted) be-
fore the tyme of Christe, long and great warres with
the Danes, & espetially about the countrey of *Cimbrica
Chersonesus*, which the Danes vsurped from them, &

Anceters of
Englishmen
described.

56 THE OLD MANNER OF LIVING

Our Acceters
delighted in
warre and
hunting.

Description
of our an-
ceters.

M. Varne-
nicus.

VVeapons
of the old
Saxons.

albeit they were not then equall vnto them either in force or fortune, they did neuerthelesse so dispose of their vttermoſt abillitie, that euen by meer valour and main force of armes they atteyned vnto their deſyred habitation and reſoſe. And when it ſo fell out that they had no warres, then was their greateſt exerciſe and delight in hunting.

They were ordinarily talle of body, very fair of complexion, free liberal and cheereful of mynd, and in deportement, of a comely & ſeemly cariage. They wore long haire euen vnto their ſhoulders : & it was ordayned among them that a man might not cut the haire of his beard, vntil ſuch tyme as hee had either ſlain an enemy of his countrey in the feild, or at the leaſt taken his armes from him. The men wore cotes with ſyde ſkirts all garded or bordered about, and the better ſorte had their borders beautified with pearle; the others with fundry colours; and ſo in lyke manner had the womē: ſome ſay their apparel was of linnen, but I do not ſynd it generally ſo to haue bin: both mē and women did uſe to weare clokes, and their ſhuwes pyked and bowing with ſharp points vp before.

They uſed long ſpeares, and alſo holbards. Their ſheildes were ſhort, and hee that hapned to loſe his ſheild in battail was barred and kept from beeing preſent at the ſacrifices vnto their Idols, and many for the very ſhame and anguiſh thereof deſtroyed themſelues. The croſbow they had in great uſe and that in warr. Their ſwoords were broad and bowing, ſomewhat according to the faſſion of a ſythe, as before in the firſt chapter I haue already ſhewed, they alſo uſed to carry hatchets, which they called byles & whereof

wee

wee y
ſteles,
right
beaſts
pons v

Fov
among
noble
people
were
ſed, and
per, to
custom
yf any
vertues
riches,
welth,

The
eldeſt ſo
this cu
Britaine
mainet
ſtome
bee acc
is aſmu

The
mother
mother
were v
them ſo
ſtrāge m
her, the

wee yet retain the name of bil, but they had short
steles, and these they could throw very forcibly and
right, both at their enemyes in warre and at wyld
beasts in hunting: & they alwayes kept their wea-
pons very faire & clean.

Ioannes Pe-
marus.

Fowre degrees of people they accompted too bee
among themselves; the first were *Ædel*, that is to say
noble or gentle: the second were *frī-teod* that is, free
people, to wit, free born, and of free parents: the third
were *frī-gelaten* that is to say lettē-free or manumy-
fed, and the fourth weare *Ægen*, that is, own or pro-
per, to wit, bond, & each of these sortes by ordinary
custome did comonly marry in his own degree. But
yf any of any the inferior degrees did through his
vertues deserue wel, or by honest industry attain vnto
riches, enabling himself thereby to assise the comon
welth, he was then aduanced higher.

Ioannes Pe-
marus.

They suffred not their landes to descend to the
eldest sonne only, but vnto all their male children, and
this custome the Saxons that afterward came into
Britaine, did there also obserue, whereof there yet re-
maineth memorie in the prouince of kent, in the cu-
stome now corruptly termed *Gauelkynd*, but should
bee according as anciently it was, *Ætue all kynd*, which
is asmuch to say, as giue each chyld his parte.

Custome of
Gauelkynd.

The children were comonly nursed by their own
mothers, and it was accompted a great shame for a
mother to put her chyld forth to nurse, vnlesse it
were vpon some necessitie: they holding it among
them for a general rule, that the chyld by sucking a
strāge nurse, would rather enclyn vnto the nature of
her, thē vnto the nature of the own father or mother.

Mothers the
moste natu-
ral nurses
to their own
children.

H

If

If either wyf or mayd were found in dishonestie, her clothes were cut of round about her, beneath the girdlestead; and shee was whipped and turned out, to bee deryded of the people. S. *Boniface* an Englishman, and Archbishop of *Magunce*, in an epistle which he wrote vnto *Ethelbald* king of *Mercia* (wherein he reprooueth him for his vnclen lyf) declareth the punishmēt for such offences, to haue bin amōg the old pagan Saxōs, farre more seuerer thē is heer set downe.

They begā their importāt busynesse according to the cours of the *Moon*, to wit, with the encreas and not with the wane. They did count tyme by the nightes, whereof wee yet retain our saying of senight and fortnight, for seauen-nights & fourteen-nights, more vsually yet so speaking, thē saying seauen-dayes or fourteen-dayes. The ages of their own lyues they alwayes counted by winters; & the reason why they vsed this, seemeth to haue bin because they had ouerpassed somany seasons of cold & sharpweather. And by winters they also counted their termes of yeaeres.

They vsed to engraue vpon certaine squared sticks about a foot in length, or shorter or longer as they pleased, the courses of the moones of the whole yeare whereby they could alwayes certainly tel when the new moons ful moons and changes should happen, as also their festiual dayes; and such a carued stick they called an *Al-mon-acht*, that is to say, *Al-moon-heed*, to wit, the regard or obseruation of all the moones, and here-hence is deryued the name of *Almanac*.

For the twelue monethes of the yeare they had such names, as the nature of their seasons did aptest requyre; for the names which wee now call them

by

Ages counted by winters.

The signification of Almanac.

Our old names of the twelue monethes of the year.

by ,
fren
ceter
T
cal
are v
dang
son e
of co
fynd
The
the k
great
vsed,
cal
the m
our o
& as t
terw
was i
yeild
gaue
was n
good,
Romā
the six
fitians
wurts
cine:
they o
thing
Th

by, wee haue in aftertyme borrowed from the french and Latin, they hauing bin vnto our anceters wholly vnknownen.

The moneth which wee now call *January* they called ~~Wolf-monat~~ to wit ~~Wolf-moneth~~ because people are wont alwayes in that moneth to bee in more danger to bee denowred of wolues, then in any season els of the yeare; for that through the extremitie of cold & snow, those rauenous creatures could not fynd of other beasts sufficient to feed vpon.

VWolf-moneth.

They called *February* ~~Sprout-kele~~ by kele meaning the kele-wurt-which wee now call the colewurt, the greatest ~~pot-wurt~~ in tyme long past that our anceters vsed, and the broth made therewith was thereof also called kele, for before wee borrowed from the french the name of *porage* and the name of *herb*, the one in our own language was called ~~kele~~; & the other ~~wurts~~; & as this ~~kele-wurt~~ or *porage-herb* was the chief winterwurt, for the sustenance of the husbandman, so was it the first herb that in this moneth began to yeild out hole some yong sprouts, & consequently gaue thereunto the name of ~~Sprout-kele~~. This herb was not only of our old anceters held to bee very good, both for sustenance & helth, but the ancient Romas had also such an opinion thereof, that during the six hundreth yeares that *Rome* was without physicians, the people vsed to plant great store of these wurts, which they accompted both meat and medicine: for as they did eat the wurt for sustenance, so did they drink the water wherein it was boyled, as a thing soueraign in all kyndes of sicknesses.

Sprout-kele

Februarie is yet in the netherlands called Spruckel.

Dioscorides

The moneth of *Marche* they called ~~Lenct-monat~~

Length-
moneth.

that is, according to our now ortography, *Length-moneth*, because the dayes did then first begin in Length to exceed the nights. And this moneth beeing by our anceters so called when they receaued Christianitie, and consequently therewith the ancient Christian custome of fasting, they called this chief season of fasting, the fast of *Lent*, because of the *Lent-monat*, whereon the most parte of the tyme of this fasting alwayes fel, and heerof it cometh that we now call it Lent, it beeing rather the fast of *Lét*, though the former name of *Lent-monat*, be long since lost, & the name of *Marche*, borrowed in steed thereof.

Oster-mo-
neth.

They called *April* by the name of *Oster-monat*, some think of a Goddesse called *Goster*, whereof I see no great reason, for yf it took appellation of such a Goddesse (a supposed causer of the easterly wyndes) it seemeth to haue bin somewhat by some miswritten, and should rightly bee *Oster* and not *Goster*. The wyndes in deed by ancient obseruation, were found in this moneth moste comonly to blow from the East, and East in the Teutonic is *Ost*, and *Ost-end*, which rightly in English is *East-end*, hath that name for the eastern situation thereof, as to the ships it appeereth which through the narrow seas do come from the west. So as our name of the feast of *Easter*, may bee asmuch to say as the feast of *Oster*, beeing yet at this present in *Saxonie* called *Ostern*, which cometh of *Ostermonat*, their & our old name of *April*.

Trimilki.

The pleasant moneth of *May*, they termed by the name of *Trimilki*, because in that moneth they began to milk their kyne three tymes in the day.

Vveyd-mo-
neth.

Vnto *Iune* they gaue the name of *weyd-monat*, because

cause their beasts did then weyd in the meddowes that is to say, go to feed there, and heerof a meddow is also in the Teutonic called a weyd, and of weyd we yet retayn our woord ~~wade~~ which wee vnderstand of going through watrie places, such as meddowes are wont to bee.

Iuly was of them called ~~Ieu~~-monat or ~~Iey~~-monat/ Hey-mo-
that is to say Hey-moneth, because therein they neth.
vsually mowed, and made their hey-haruest.

August they called ~~Arn~~-monat (more rightly barn- Arn-moneth
moneth) intending thereby the then filling of their or rather
barnes with corn. Barne-
moneth.

September they called ~~Gerst~~-monat/ for that barley Gerst-mo-
which that moneth comonly yeilded, was anciently neth.
called ~~Gerst~~, the name of barley beeing giuen vnto it
by reason of the drink therewith made, called beer, &
from beerlegh it came to be berlegh, and from ber-
legh to barley. So in lyke manner beer-heym to wit
the ouerdecking or couering of beer came to bee cal-
led berham & afterward barme, hauing since gotten
I wote not how many names besydes.

This excellēt & healthsome licour, beer/ anciently
also called ~~æt~~, as of the danes it yet is (beer & æl
beeing in effect all one) was first of the Germans in-
uented and brought in vse.

October had the name of ~~wyn~~-monat/ & albeit they VVyn-mo-
had not anciently wyne made in *Germanie*, yet in neth.
this season had they them from diuers countries
adioyning.

November they termed ~~wint~~-monat/to wit, wynd- VVynd-mo-
moneth, whereby wee may see that our anceters neth.
were in this season of the yeare made acquainted

with blustering *Boreas*, & it was the ancient custome for ship-men then to shrowd themselues at home, and to giue ouer sea-faring (notwithstanding the litlenes of their then vsed voyages) vntil blustering *Marche* had bidden them wel to fare.

VWinter-mo-
neth. name of *Winter-monat*/to wit,*winter-mon th*/but after the Saxons receaued Christianitie, they the of deuotion to the birth-tyme of Christ, termed it by the name of *hellig-monat*/ that is to say holy-moneth.

Some of the Germans in their seuerall prouinces did somewhat varry from the others, in some of these moneths appellations; and our anceters came in tyme to leaue these their old significant names, and to take and imitate from the french, as is aforesaid, the names by vs now vsed.

Ancient
gouernment
of Saxonie.

Ioannes Po-
marus.

Chro. Sax.

Carolus
magnus.

For the generall gouernment of the countrey, they ordayned twelue noble men, chosen from among others for their woorthynes and sufficiencie. These in the tyme of peace rode their seuerall circuits, to see iustice and good customes obserued, and they often of cours, at appointed tymes met all together, to consult and giue order in publyke affaires; but euer in tyme of warre one of these twelue was chosen to bee king; & so to remain so long only as the warre lasted; & that beeing ended; his name and dignitie of king also ceased; and he became as before: and this custome continued among them vntil the tyme of their warres with the Emperor *Charles* the great, at which tyme *Vitrekid* one of the twelue as aforesaid, a nobleman of *Angria* in *Vestphalia*, bore ouer the rest the name and authoritie of king, and hee beeing afterward

after
to th
king
duke
thesa
of Ea
tinua
them
issu
nie.
yet c
way,
had
peron
nitie
the b
befor
his y
that
princ
iusts
mes
T
whic
heer
wee
and
manie
ment
cases
and
guilt

afterward by meanes of thesaid Emperor conuerted to the faith of Christ, had by him his mutable tytle of king, turned into the enduring tytle and honor of duke, and the eleuen others, were in lyke manner by thesayd Emperor aduanced to the honorable tytles of Earles and Lordes, with establishmēt for the continual remayning of these tytles and dignities vnto them and their heyres: of whose descents are since issued, the greatest princes at this present in *Germanie*. And although it bee heer some litle degression yet can I not omitte, to note vnto the reader by the way, that about 120. yeares after the Emperial rule had remained in the posteritie of the aforesaid Emperor *Charles the great*. The Emperial crown & dignitie came by election vnto a Saxon prince, who was the brothers sonnes sonne of this *VVittekindus*, heer beforenamed, and for the great pleasure hee took in his youth in birding, was surnamed *Henricus Auceps*, that is, Henry the fowler. He was a very notable prince, he first instituted the honorable exercise of iusts & turnaments in *Saxonie*, and gaue shields of armes to fundrie families.

King witte-kind made a duke.

Henricus Auceps.

Pomarius Chro. Sax.

They had among them fower sortes of *Ordeal*, which some in Latin haue termed *Ordalium*. *Or*, is heer vnderstood for due or right, *deal*, for parte, as yet wee vse it, so as *Ordeal* is asmuch to say as due-parte, and at this present it is a word generally vsed in *Germanie* & the *Netherlands*, in stede of dome or iudgement. These sortes of *Ordeal*, they vsed in doubtfull cases when cleer & manifest proofes wanted, to try and fynd out whether the accused were guiltie, or guiltlesse.

Fowresortes of Ordeal.

Speculum Saxon. lib. 1.

Aeneas Sil-
uius.

B Renanus.
Chro. Saxo.

Ioannes Po-
marus.

Cornelius
Kilianus.
& others.

Kamp-fight
other-wise
written
Campfight.

The first was by ~~Kamp-fight~~/which in Latin is ter-
med *Duellum*, & in french *Combat*.

The second was, by Iron made red hot.

The third was, by hot water.

And the fourth, by cold water.

For the trial by ~~Kamp-fight~~, the accuser was with the peril of his own body to prooue the accused guiltie, & by offering him his gloue to chalége him to this trial; the which thee other must either accept of, or els acknowledge himself culpable of the cryme whereof hee was accused. If it were a cryme deter- uing death, then was the ~~Camp-fight~~ for lyf and death, and either on horsback or on foot. If the offence deserued imprisonment & not death, then was the ~~Camp-fight~~ accomplished when the one had subdued the other, by making him to yeild, or vnable to defend himself, & so be taken prisoner. The accused had the libertie to chuse another in his steed, but the ac- cuser must perform it in his own person, & with equalitie of weapons. No women were admitted to behold it, nor no men children vnder the age of thirteen yeares. The priests and people that were spectators did sylently pray that the victorie might fall vnto the guiltlesse, and yf the fight were for lyf or death, a beer stood redy to carry away the dead body of him that should bee slain. None of the people might cry, scryke out, make any noyse, or giue any signe whatsoeuer; and herevnto at *Hall* in *Swenia*, (a place appointed for ~~camp-fight~~) was so great regard taken, that the executioner stood besyde the iudges, redy with an ax; to cut of the right hand & left foot of the party so offending.

Munsterus
libro 12. c. 10.

Hee

Hee that (beeing wounded) did yeild himself, was at the mercie of the other, to bee killed or to bee let liue. If hee were slain, then was hee caryed away & honorably buried; & hee that slue him reputed more honorable then before: but yf beeing ouercome hee were left alyue; then was hee by sentence of the iudges, declared vterly voyd of all honest reputation: and neuer to ryde on hors back, nor to carry armes.

The trial by red hot iron, called ~~fyre-ordeal~~ was Fyre-ordeal. vsed vpon accusations without manifest proof (though not without suspitio that the accused might bee faultie) and the party accused and denying the delict, was adiudged to take red hot iron and to hold it in his bare hand, which after many prayers and inuocations that the truth might bee manifested, hee must aduenture to do, or yeild himself guiltie; and so receaue the punishment that the law according to the offence comitted, should award him.

Some were adiudged to go blyndfolded with their bare feet ouer certain plough shares, which were made red hot, and layd a litle distance one before another: & yf the party either in passing through them, did chance not to tread vpon them, or treading vpon them receaued no harme, then by the Iudge he was declared innocent. And this kynd of trial was also practised in England, vpon *Emma* the mother of king *Edward* the confessor, who was accused of dishonestie of her body with *Alwyne* bishop of winchester, & beeig led blyndfolded vnto the place where the glowing hot irons were laid, went forward with her bare feet, and so passed ouer them; & beeing gon past them all, & not knowing whether shee were

Vide Ioh.
Auent An-
nal. Boiorũ
libro 4.

Triall of
Queẽ Emma

66 THE OLD MANNER OF LIVING

past them or not, said, *O good Lord, when shal I come to the place of my purgation.* And hauing her eyes vn-
couered, and seeing her self to haue passed them, shee
kneeled down and gaue thanks to God: for mani-
festing her innocentie by her preservation from
beeing hurt. A much lyke trial vnto this is recorded
of *Kunigund*, wyf vnto the Emperor *Henrie* the se-
cond, who beeing falsly accused of adulterie, to shew
her innocencie, did in a great & honorable assembly,
take seauen glowing Irons one after an other in her
bare handes, & had thereby no harme.

Triall of the
Empresse
Kunigund.

Hot water
Ordeal.

The trial called ~~hot water~~ *Ordeal*, was in cases of
accusation as is aforesaid, of glowing iron, the party
accused & also suspected beeing apointed by the
iudge, to put his armes vp to the elbowes in-see-
thing hot water, which after sundry prayers and in-
uocations hee did, & was by the effect that followed,
iudged faulty or faultlesse.

Cold-water-
Ordeal.

~~Cold-water~~ *Ordeal*, was the triall which was or-
dinarily vsed for the comon sorte of people, who
hauing a cord tyed about them vnder their armes,
were cast into some riuer, and yf they sunck down
vnto the botom thereof vntil they were drawn
vp, which was within a very short limited space,
then were they held guiltlesse: but such as did remain
vpon the water, were held culpable, beeing (as they
said) of the water reiected and kept vp. And to this
day in some places of *Germanie*, and also in the *Ne-
therlands*, this kynd of trial is vsed for such as are
accused to bee witches, who beeing cast into the
water with a cord fastned vnto them, are said yf
they bee witches in deed, to fleet vpon the same,
and

Triall vsed
for witches.

and i
T
long a
of the
exorfi
of the
the me
way o
nocen
iustly
trials h
not th
at the
they v
But
of our
nitie, v
they li
son, w
God, f
sacrifi
trees,
battail
as also
them p
fortun
mans
adict
presag
hee sa
They
litle st

and in no wyse to be able to sinck into it.

These aforesaid kyndes of ~~Ordeals~~ the Saxons long after their Christianitie continued, and in some of them the priests which were present vsed some exorsifmes, and sundry ceremonies, vsing also in all of them moſte earnest inuocation vnto God, as vnto the moſte iuſt iudge, that it would pleaſe him by ſuch way of trial to make the truthe apparent, that the innocent might bee preſerued from hurt, & the vniuſt iuſtly puniſhed. But ſeeing theſe tirrible kyndes of trials had their beginnings in paganisme, and were not thought fit to bee continued among Chriſtians, at the laſt by a decree of *Pope Stephen* the ſecond, they were vtterly aboliſhed.

Ordeals a
boliſhed by
Pope Steph^e

But now to return again, to the more ancient ſtate of our Saxon anceters, to wit, before their Chriſtianitie, whereof I heer intended to ſpeak: true it is, that they liued according to the lawe of nature and reaſon, wanting nothing but the knowlege of the true God, for they adored Idoles, and vnto them offered ſacrifices, yea they woorſhiped planets, woods and trees, and took great regard when they went to battail, vnto the neyghings and cryes of their horſes, as alſo vnto the flight and noiſes of birdes, weening them preſages or fore-tellings of their good or euil fortune, and vnto this augurie of fowles, the Germans more then all other nations were generally adicted: and as *Iosephus* wryteth a German ſoldier preſaged vnto *Herode Agrippa*, by an Owle which hee ſaw ouer his head, that hee ſhould bee a king. They alſo vsed to preſage by certaine lots made of litle ſticks, cut from frute-bearing trees, ſquared

Idolatrie of
the old pa-
gan Saxons.

68 THE OLD MANNER OF LYVING

& carued with characters or marks vpon them, which their pagan priests after inuocations vnto their Gods, did cast at aduenture vpon a whyte spreadfoorth garment, & according to the falling of these lots, that is, by the characterd sydes lying vpwrd or downward they foretold their fortune.

As touching the Idols which our Saxon anceters adored, they were diuers, and those not such as the pagan Romans were wont to adore; but Idols of their own, as the Romans had theirs. For with the Idols only proper to the Romans they were vnacquainted, before the coming of the Romans into *Germanie*, albeit some authors haue interpreted some of their Idols to haue bin such, as among the Romans were called by other names, whereof I shal take occasion to speak more anon. Of these though they had many yet seauen among the rest they espetially appropriated vnto the seauen dayes of the week, which according to their cours and properties I wil heer to satisfy the curious reader descrybe, both in portrature and otherwise.

First then, vnto the day dedicated vnto the espetial adoratiō of the Idol of the *Sun*, they gaue the name of *Sunday*/as much to say as the *Sun*=*day*/ or the day of the *Sun*. This Idol was placed in a Temple and there adored and sacrificed vnto, for that they believed that the *Sun* in the firmament did with or in this Idol corespond and cooperate. The manner and forme whereof, was according vnto this en-
fuying picture.

Name of
Sunday
whence it
cometh.

THE

It wa
man set
with gle
mes stre
the whe
runneth
& bright
meth &
The
the wee

THE IDOL OF THE SUN.



It was made as heer appeereth, lyke half a naked man set vpon a piller, his face as it were, brightned with gleames of fyre, and holding with both his armes stretched out, a burning wheel before bis brest: the wheel beeing to signify the cours which hee runneth round about the world; & the fyrie gleames & brightnes, the light and heat wherewith he warmeth & comforteth the things that liue and grow.

The next according to the cours of the dayes of the week, was the Idol of the ~~Moon~~ Moon, whereof wee

Name of
Monday
whence it
cometh.

76 THE OLD MANNER OF LYVING
yet retain the name of ~~Monday~~ in steed of Moóday, &
it was made according to the picture heer following.

THE IDOL OF THE ~~Monday~~.



The form of this Idol seemeth very strange and ridiculous, for beeing made for a woman shee hath a short cote lyke a man: but more strange it is to see her hood with such two long eares. The holding of a moon before her brest may seem to haue bin to expresse what shee is, but the reason of her chapron with long eares, as also of her shorte cote and pyked shuues, I do not fynd.

The

O
The
rent pl
cient an
scribed
moste a

Of this
among th
themselu
ple, I hau
shewed,

The next vnto the Idols of the two moſte apparent planets was the Idol of **Tuſco** the moſte ancient and peculiar God of all the Germans, heer deſcribed in his garment of a ſkin, according to the moſte ancient manner of the Germans clothing.

THE IDOL **TUſCO**.



Of this **Tuſco**, the firſt and chiefſt man of name among the Germans, and after whome they do call themſelves **Tuſſon**, that is, duytſhes or duytſh-people, I haue already ſpoken in the firſt chapter: as alſo ſhewed, how the day which yet among vs retayneth the

Name of
tuesday
whence it
cometh.

72 THE OLD MANNER OF LYVING
the name of Tuesday was especially dedicated vnto
the adoration & seruice of this Idol.

The next was the Idol *moden* who as by his
picture heer let down appeereth was made armed, &
among our Saxon anceters esteemed and honored
for their God of batail, according as the Romans re-
puted & honored their God *Mars*.

THE IDOL *MODEN*.



He was whyle somtyme hee liued amongst them,
a most valiant and victorious Prince & Captain, and
his Idol was after his death honored prayed and sa-
crified

crified
might
when
such pr
moden
wee ye
that hee
And af
week, r
hee was
moden
that fir
seemeth
and not
much ly
father o

The
who wa
ancient
of the se
that dwe
was hee
promont
sea, as al
promont
ner how
clare.

crified vnto, that by his ayd and furtherance they might obtain victorie ouer their enemyes: which when they had obtained, they sacrificed vnto him such prisoners as in batail they had taken. The name *woden* signifieth fiers or furious, and in lyke sence wee yet retayn it, saying when one is in a great rage that hee is *wood*/or taketh on as yf hee were *wood*/ And after this Idol wee do yet call that day of the week, *wedensday*/in steed of *wodensday*/ vpon which hee was chiefly honored. *Venerable Bede* nameth one *woden*, to haue bin the great grandfather of *Hingistus*, that first came with the Saxons into *Britain*, but this seemeth to haue bin another prince of thesame name; and not hee whose Idol is heer spoken of, who in much lykelyhood was long before, the great grandfather of *Hingistus*.

Name of
wedensday
whence it
cometh.

The next in order as aforesaid was the Idol *Thor*, who was not only serued and sacrificed vnto of the ancient pagan Saxons, but of all the Teutonic people of the septentrional regions, yea euen of the people that dwelt beyond *Thule* or *Island*, for in *Gruneland* was hee known and adored; in memorie whereof a promontorie or high point of land lying out into the sea, as also a riuer which falleth into the sea at thesaid promontorie, doth yet bear his name; and the manner how hee was made, his picture heer doth declare.

K

THE

THE OLD MANNER OF LYVING
THE IDOL THOR.



Description
of the great
Idol Thor.

This great reputed God, beeing of more esteema-
tion then many of the rest of lyke sorte, though of as
litle woorth as any of the meanest of that rabble; was
maiestically placed in a very large and spacious halle:
and there set, as yf he had reposed himself vpon a co-
uered bed.

On his head hee wore a crown of Gold, and round
in compas aboue and about thesame, were set or fixed
twelue bright burnished golden starres. And in his
right hand hee held a kingly septer.

Hee

Hee was of the seduced pagans beliened to bee of moſte maruelous power and might, yet and that there were no people through-out the whole world, that were not ſubiected vnto him; and did not ow him diuine honor & ſeruice.

That there was no puiſſance comparable to his: his domination of all others moſte fartheſt extending it ſelf, both in heauen and earth.

That in the ayre hee gouerned the wyndes and the clowdes; and beeing diſpleaſed did cauſe lightning, thunder, and tempeſts, with exceſſiue rain, hail and all ill weather. But beeing wel pleaſed, by the adoration ſacrifiſe and ſeruice of his ſupplyants, hee then beſtowed vpon them moſte faire and ſeaſonable weather: and cauſed corne abundantly to grow: as alſo all ſortes of fruites, &c. and kept away from them the plague, and all other euil and infectious diſeaſes.

Of the weekly day which was dedicated vnto his peculiar ſeruice, wee yet retain the name of **Thurſ-day**, the which the Danes and the Swedians do yet call **Thorſ-day**. In the *Netherlands*, it is called **Dun-derſ-dagh**, which beeing written according to our english ortography, is **Thunderſ-day**, whereby it may appeer that they anciently therein entended, the day of the God of **Thunder**; and in ſome of our old Saxon books I fynd it to haue bin written **Thunreſ-deag**. So as it ſeemeth that the name of **Thor**; or **Thur** was abreuiated of **Thunre**, which wee now wryte **Thunder**.

Name of
Thurſ-day
whence it
cometh.

The next following in rancke and reputation, was the Goddesse *Friga* who was made according as this picture heer doth demonstrate.

THE IDOL *FRIGA*.

This Idol represented both sexes, as wel man as woman, and as an *Hermaphrodite* is said to haue had both the members of a man, and the members of a woman. In her right hand shee held a drawn swoord, & in her left a bow; signifying thereby that womē as wel as men should in tyme of need be ready to fight. Some honored her for a God and some for a Goddesse,

desse,
desse
and ph
amitie
yet re
the da
weden
the sep
Thor
red be
Idol w
do call
of wo
Saxon
name r
em fait
fanim i
I haue
lot to
Godde
gobard
reiecte
Th
was th
Saturn
goodly
heer hi

desse, but shee was ordinarily taken rather for a God-
desse then a God, and was reputed the giuer of peace
and plenty, as also the causer and maker of loue and
amitie, and of the day of her espetiall adoration wee
yet retain the name of friday, and as in the order of
the dayes of the week *Thursday* cometh between
wedensday and friday, so (as *Olaus magnus* noteth) in *Olaus mag-
nus.*
the septentrionall regions, where they made the Idol
Thor sitting or lying in a great hall vpon a coue-
red bed, they also placed on the one syde of him the
Idol *woden*, & on the other syde the Idol *friga*. Some
do call her *frea* & not *friga*, and say shee was the wyf
of *woden*, but shee was called *friga*, and her day our
Saxon anceters called *frige-deag*, from whence our Name of
name now of friday in deed cometh, *Saxo Gramati- whence is
cus* saith, that the people which by reason of the great cometh.
fanim in the tyme of *Snio* king of *Denmark* (whereof *Saxo Gram-
I haue before made mention) were constreyned by maticus.*
lot to go seek them new habitation, were by the
Goddesse *friga* comaunded to call themselues *Lon-
gobards*, which is an opinion by *Crantzius* & others *Albertus
Crantzius.*
reiected as fabulous, and for no lesse I esteem it.

The last to make vp heer the number of seauen,
was the Idol *Seater*, fondly of some suposed to bee
Saturnus, for he was otherwise called *Crodo* this
goodly God stood to bee adored in such manner as
heer his picture doth shew him.

THE OLD MANNER OF LIVING THE IDOL SEATER.



Description
of the Idol
Seater.
Iohannes
Pomarius.

First on a piller was placed a pearche, on the sharp prickled back whereof stood this Idol. Hee was lean of visage, hauing long haire and a long beard: and was bare-headed and bare-footed. In his left hand he held vp a wheel; and in his right hee caryed a pail of water, wherein were flowers and frutes. His long cote was girded vnto him with a towel of white linnen. His standing on the sharp finnes of this fish, was to signify that the Saxons for their seruing him, should pas stedfastly & without harme in dangerous and

and
knit
and
cours
from
pail v
kynd
foorth
which
receat
pellat
Th
sew i
Ermes
of the
armed
held a
a red r
lance,
breft w
fixed a
ballanc
Idol th
Saxons
saith, t
honore
men vn
diuers t
preted f
preted h
for Me
their G

and difficult places. By the wheel was betokened the knit vnitie and conioyned concord of the Saxons, and their concurring together in the running one cours. By the girdle which with the wynd streamed from him, was signified the Saxons freedome. By the pail with flowers and frutes was declared, that with kyndly rain hee would nowrish the earth, to bring foorth such frutes and flowers. And the day vnto which wee yet giue the name of *Sater-day*, did first receaue by beeing vnto him celebrated, the same appellation.

Name of
Saterday
whence it
cometh.

The Saxons had besydes these the Idol *Ermenfowl* in great reputation, his name of *Ermenfowl* or *Ernefowl*, beeing asmuch to say, as the pillar or stay of the poor. This God (or more truly diuel) was made armed, standing among flowers. In his right hand he held a staf hauing at it a banner wherein was painted a red rose. In his other hand hee held a paire of ballance, and vpon his head was placed a cock. On his brest was carued a bear, and before his midle was fixed a scutcheon, in chief whereof was also a pair of ballance, in face a lion, and in point a rose: and this Idol the francks and the other Germans aswel as the Saxons did also serue & adore. And whereas *Tacitus* saith, that of all the Gods the Germans espetially honored *Mercurie*, and vpon certaine dayes offred men vnto him in sacrifice, this Idol *Ermenfowl* is of diuers taken to bee the same that the Romans interpreted for *Mercurie*, though some others haue interpreted him for *Mars*, and *woden* with lesse reason for *Mercurie*; for that he was held of the Saxons for their God of warre, as *Mercurie* among the Romans

The descrip-
tion of Er-
menfowl.

Tacitus in
descrip. Germ.

80 THE OLD MANNER OF LYVING
 neuer was. And in all lykelyhood of truth, the Ro-
 mans for some propertie which the Germans ascri-
 bed to their Idols, might wel for the lyke propertie
 ascribed by them vnto theirs, take them to bee the
 very same Idols, albeit they were of the Germans
 called by other names, and made in other manner.
 And so in lyke sorte hath *Thor* bin of some interpreted
 for *Iupiter* for that among his other maruels hee
 made and caused thunder, and was chiefly honored
 vpon the same day wheron the Romans honored
 their *Iupiter*. *Friga* is also interpreted for *Venus*, be-
 cause among other her qualities shee was a furtherer
 of freindship, and that on the very day of her chief
 celebration, the Romans chiefly honored their amia-
 ble *Venus*. *Seater* alias *Crodo* was also mistaken for
Saturnus, not in regard of any saturnical qualitie, but
 because his name sounded somewhat neer it, and his
 festiual day fel iump with that of *Saturn*. But I can
 fynd no reason to think that any of these were in
 deed intended for such, before it pleased the Romans
 to interpret them so, and perhaps some of the Ger-
 mans for their Idols more honor, were afterward
 content to allow it so.

Reasons of
 the Romans
 mistaking of
 the Idols of
 the Germas.

The descri-
 ption of
 Flint.

They adored also the Idol *flint*, who had that
 name for his beeing set vpon a great flint stone. This
 Idol was made lyke the Image of death & naked saue
 only a sheet about him. In his right hand hee held a
 torche, or as they termed it, a fyre-blase. On his head
 a lion rested his two fore-feet, standing with the
 one of his hinder feet vpon his left shoulder, and
 with the other in his hand; which to support, he
 lifted vp as high as his shoulder.

They

They had also, *Wodan*, *Thunor*, *Frege*, *Odin*, and many others, which would bee too long and too worthlesse, heer to bee descrybed. And such was their great blyndnes in this grosse paganisme, that they not only with all diuine honor adored these Idols, but euen sacrificed humain creatures vnto them, both in *Germanie* & in the adioyning septentrional regions. Yea king *Herald* of *Norway* of that name the first, did not let to sacrifice two of his own sonnes vnto his Idols, to the end that he might obtain of them such a tempest at sea, as should break & dispers the Armada which from *Herald* king of *Denmarck*, and the sixt of the same name, was prepared to come against him, the which according to his desyre, by the deuils power (whose instruments the Idols weare) he obtayned. These Idols before named, with other the lyke, the pagan Saxons brought with them at such tyme as they came into Britain, and there erected & honored them, & espetially there Idol *woden*, as by sundry places where in great lykelyhood hee was adored, & which do yet in England of him retain their appellation, it may appeere. As at *wodnesborough* in kent, *wodnesfeild* in *Staforshyre*, *wodnesbeorgh* or *wannes-dyche* in *Wilshyre*, &c.

Crantzius
Nor. hist.
lib. 3. cap. 3.

Horrible
Idolatrie of
Herald king
of Norway.

These Idols and fals Gods, were afterward in our countrey destroyed by *Echelbert* king of *kent*, the first Christian English-Saxon king that euer was, and by the other English-Saxon kings in their seuerall kingdomes, at such tyme as it pleased God to illuminate them with the glorious brightnes of Christianitie. And in *Saxonie* it self they were ouerthrowen, by the moste Christian Emperor *Charles the great*.

L

Beeing

Beeing not yet come to the coming of our ancestors into *Britain*, I haue hetherto spoken as I yet intend to speak (except obiterly) of the tyme of their beeing in *Germanie*, where albeit their name of Saxons in the begining was not very great, all beginings beeing alwayes litle; so am I now to shew what reputation and greatnes it afterward grew vnto euen in *Germanie* it self: for in the tyme of *S. Hierome* which was about 400. yeares after Christ, of all the sorts of people of *Germanie*, three only were the most famous, & those were the Saxons, the Franckes, & the Sueuians; so as the Saxons were not only now grown to bee one of the three moste renowned of all the others, but the first also in accompt of those three. For some good number of them hauing come out of *Holsatia* ouer the riuer of *Albis*, where now is the bishopryk of *Bream*, encreased their southward bounds euen vnto the *Hircinian forest*, so possessing the ancient habitation of the Sueui, and comprising westward all *VWestphalia*, and the countries lying all along the sea: insomuch as saith *Henry of Erfurd*, *Saxonland* stretched from the riuer *Albis* vnto the *Rhene*, the boundes of no one people of all *Germanie* extending any way so far. Yea both the Frisians and Battauians that remayned within their domination (beeing also Germans) came to bee reputed and called by the name of Saxons, whereof thease old Teutonic verses, do giue very cleer proof.

Henricus
Erfordensis.

Syt des seker en gewis
Be of this fiker and ywis,
assured certain

Dat

T
Scela
deuy
entre
Saxo
fyde
sea, v
the c
then
T

W
amon
mer a
other
T
farth
Germ

OF OUR SAXON ANCETERS, &C. 53

Dat die Graeffchap van Holland is,
That the Greueship of Holland is,
Earldome

Een ſtuk van Frieflant ghenomen/
A peece of Friefland taken of.

Theſame author after other verſes, ſaith thus.

Oude boeken hoorde ic gewagen/
Old bookes heard I to mention

Dat al het lant beneden Nijmegen/
That al the land beneath Newmegen,
Wylen neder Saffen hiet.

Whilom nether Saxon hight.

Then goeth hee on, & telleth how the riuer of Sceld, (which in paſſing down along by Antwerp, deuydeth Brabant from Flandres, and in Sealand entreth into the ſea) was the weſtern limit of the Saxon countrey. So as accompting now from the eaſt ſyde of Holſatia, which conſyneth on the Baltiſh ſea, vnto this aforeſaid riuer of Sceld, Saxonland or the countrey of the Saxons; cōteyned in length more then three hundreth Engliſh myles.

Theſame old Teutonic author addeth further.

Die neder Saffen hietten nu Friefen.
That is,

The nether Saxons are hight now Friefians.
are called

Whereby it may appeer that the Friefians hauing among themſelues reſerued the memorie of their former appellation, did after ward come again to bee of others alio ſo called.

Thus encreaſed the Saxons their bounds, much farther (as before is noted) then any other people of Germanie, and ſo might wel do, they beeing ac-

Zofimus. compted as *Zofimus* witnesseth, the strongest and valiantest sorte of all the Germans, and whose great
Marcellinus valour as *Marcellinus* saith; was exceedingly feared of the Romans: & they were not only moste great & famous for their valour by land, but as *Sidonius* describeth them, they were very valiant sea-men, and fore dreaded of all the other nations that inhabited the maritime costes of this Ocean. Some German
Sidonius. authors are of opinion that the countrey of *Alsacia*, whereof *Strasburg* was somtyme accompted the principal citie, took that name of certain troops of Saxons, who went thether & there made their habitations, & were for their noblenes & valour called *Edel-saxons*; that is, Noble-saxons, & the countrey after them by abridgement of the name, came in the Teutonic tounge of *Edelsas* to bee called *Elsas* and in Latin to bee termed *Alsacia*.

**Io Pomarius
and others.**

Moreouer. The Emperor *Charles the great*, coming afterward to haue great & troobleesome warres with the Saxons; who first by all meanes hee sought to bring vnto the Christian faith, and after to reduce again when hauing receaued it they fel back to Idolatrie; did in fine transport great troops of them into other regions; as many thowfands with their wyues & children into *Flaunders*, and a great number also into *Transilvania*; where their posteritie yet remayneth. And albeit by reason of their habitation there for so many ages, they are accompted *Trásiluanians*; yet do they keep there Saxon language stil, and are of the other *Transiluanians* that speak the Hungarian tounge, euen vnto this day called by the name of *Sassons*.

And

And
 for bee
 of *Tr*
 uelous
 many
 thereo
 There
 of *Br*
 the fan
 with si
 a pype
 fellow
 forme
 were i
 that ve
 beeing
 pyping
 came a
 bers a
weas
 no onc
 he aft
 ding t
 was n
 an opi
 feat: t
 they i
 neuer
 hee ha
 were
 him fa
 discon

And now hath one digression drawn on another, for beeing by reason of speaking of these Saxons of *Transilvania*, put in mynd of a most true & maruelous strange accident that hapned in *Saxonia* not many ages past, I cannot omit for the strangenes thereof briefly heer by the way to set it down. There came into the town of *Hamel* in the countrey of *Brunswyc* an od kynd of compaignion, who for the fantastical cote which hee wore beeing wrought with sundry colours, was called the pyed pyper; for a pyper hee was, besydes his other qualities. This fellow forsooth offred the townsmen for a certain somme of mony to rid the town of all the rattes that were in it (for at that tyme the burgers were with that vermin greatly annoyed) The accord in fyne beeing made; the pyed pyper with a shril pype went pyping through the streets, and foorthwith the rattes came all running out of the howses in great numbers after him; all which hee led vnto the riuer of *weaser* and therein drowned them. This donne, and no one rat more perceaued to bee left in the town; he afterward came to demaund his reward according to his bargain, but beeing told that the bargain was not made with him in good earnest, to wit, with an opinion that euer hee could bee able to do such a feat: they cared not what they accorded vnto, when they imagyned it could neuer bee deserued, and so neuer to bee demaunded : but neuerthelesse seeing hee had donne such an vnlykely thing in deed, they were content to giue him a good reward; & so offred him far lesse then hee lookt for: but hee therewith discontented, said he would haue his ful recompence

The pyed
Pyper.

according to his bargain, but they vtterly denying to giue it him, hee threatened thē with reuēge; they bad him do his wurst, wherevpon he betakes him again to his pype, & going through the streets as before, was followed of a number of boyes out at one of the gates of the citie, and coming to a litle hil, there opened in the syde thereof a wyde hole, into the which himself and all the children beeing in number one hundreth & thirty, did enter; and beeing entred, the hil closed vp again, and became as before. A boy that beeing lame & came somewhat lagging behynd the rest, seeing this that hapned, returned presently back & told what hee had seen; foorthwith began great lamentation among the parents for their children, and men were sent out with all dilligence, both by land & by water to enquire yf ought could bee heard of them, but with all the enquiry they could possibly vse, nothing more then is aforesaid could of them bee vnderstood. In memorie whereof it was then ordayned, that from thence-foorth no drum, pype or other instrument, should bee founded in the street leading to the gate through which they passed; nor no osterie to bee there holden. And it was also established, that from that tyme forward in all publyke wrytings that should bee made in that town, after the date therein set down of the yeare of our Lord, the date of the yeare of the going foorth of their children should bee added, the which they haue accordingly euer since continued. And this great wonder hapned on the 22. day of Iuly, in the yeare of our Lord one thousand three hundreth seauentie, and six.

The occasion now why this matter came vnto
my

VVounder-
full trans-
porting
away of 130
children.

my
for
am
sur
wil
pyp
the
cau
to t
stra
not
the
a th

of t
Sax
spea
tain
men
Brit
mea
nen
Bri
agai
Eng

my remembrance in speaking of *Transilvania*, was, for that some do reporte that there are diuers found among the Saxons in *Transilvania* that haue lyke surnames vnto diuers of the burgers of *Hamel*, and wil seem thereby to inferr, that this iugler or pyed pyper, might by negromancie haue transported them thether, but this carieth litle apparence of truthe; because it would haue bin almost as great a wonder vnto the Saxons of *Transilvania* to haue had somany strange children brought among them, they knew not how, as it was to those of *Hamel* to lose them: & they could not but haue kept memorie of so strange a thing, yf in deed any such thing had there hapned.

And hauing now shewed the great enlargement of the Saxon territories, as also the transporting of Saxons into other further partes, It resteth now to speak of their crossing the seas and coming into Britain, which more particularly concerneth Englishmen, but because I would before I bring them into Britain first speak somewhat of that countrey, I do mean yet to leaue them a whyle longer in the continent, & in the next ensuying chapter to speak of the *British Ile*, meaning in the next after that, to return again into *Saxonia*, & to bring thence the anceters of Englishmen into the aforementioned *Britain*.

OF THE ILE OF ALBION, AFTERWARD

CALLED BRITAIN, AND NOW

*England, Scotland, and VVales. And how it
is shewed to haue bin continent or
firme-land with Gallia, now named
France, since the flud of Noe.*

The fourth Chapter.



BEING heer, as it were by way of digression, to speak of *Albion*, the most famous and best Ile of all *Europa*, and the greatest also except *Groonland* (which in *Europa* is to bee cōprised) I do not mean to stand long in discussing, what and who were the first and most ancient inhabitants thereof, chusing rather to referre the curious reader for his further satisfaction therein, vnto other authors. And albeit it may vnto some seem vncertain, that the first and moste ancient name was after *Samothes* called *Samothea*, because our anciēt wryters seem not much acquainted therewith, yet hauing at the first bin continent or firme-land with *Gallia*, as in this chapter I purpose to demonstrate; then surely was it peopled so soone in effect as *Gallia* was, and in all lykelyhood with the self people.

That it had the name of *Albion*, is more known then that it was first of all called *Samothea*, and yet from whence it took thesame appellation seemeth very vncertain, but much vnkely it is that it should be

So
be de
those
proba
inhab
would
count
bee no
the G
they f
wit, A
from
that is
Douer
from
no oth
inuent
so vnc
with n
taken
some v
to hau
diuers
for th
daugh
woort
The
king B
had th
sider w
Some
wil har
Brute,

SOMETIME CONTINENT WITH GALLIA. 89

be deriued either from the *Greek* or from the *Latin*; those languages in such long tyme past hauing in all probabilitie bin altogether vnknown to this countreys inhabitants: and wee may wel belieue that they would neuer go so farr as to borrow a name for their countrey out of *Italie* or *Greece*. And it is further to bee noted, that those which wil fetch the name from the *Greek*, wil haue it *Olbian* & not *Albion*, because they fynd in the *Greek* a signification for *Olbian*, to wit, *Happy*, and those on the other syde that bring it from the *Latin*, wil haue it come *ab albis rupibus*, that is, of the whyte rocks or clifs, (by lyke about *Douer*) & this very difference in these deriuations & from different languages, may wel shew them to bee no other then the very dreames of their Gramarian inuenters. But seeing the reason of this name seemeth so vncertain that it may go by coniecture, then may it with more lykelyhood bee coniectured to haue bin taken from some king or principal gouernour (or as some wil haue it, of *Albion* the sonne of *Neptune* said to haue bin king thereof) seeing the appellations of diuers countries haue grown vpon lyke reason: & as for that which is fabuled of *Albina* one of the daughters of *Dioclesian*, it is so foolish that it is scars woorth recital.

The name of *Britain* in all lyklyhood it had from king *Brute*, after whome his people in lyke manner had the name of *Britans*, and yet is it strange to consider what a contention there also is about this name. Some from the name of *Brute* by turning y in o v. wil haue it to be *Brutain*, others altogether reiecting *Brute*, wil haue it notwithstanding *Britannia*: but

Contention
about the
name of
Britain.

M

trauail

trauail as far as *Greece* to fetch that name from a Nymph there, though in lykelyhood that Nymph neuer heard of this countrey. *Sir Thomas Eliot* wil haue it to bee *Pritania*, & not *Britania*; but *Humfrey Lhuyd*, wil rather haue it to bee *Pridcain*, because that woord in britilh signifieth beautie, or whytenes. Others deryue it from *Brith* a britilh woord, which is asmuch to say as painted. *Ioannes Goropius Becanus*, hath a coniecture moſte different from all theſe, for hee would haue it to bee *Bridania*; and the b beeing ſomtymes in the teutonic taken for the ſingle v, & v oftentyimes vſed for f. it ſhould then of *Bridania*, become *Vridania* or *Fridania*, which is asmuch to ſay as *free-denmark*, wherein to ſpeake freely, *Becanus* hath taken his mark much amiſſe. By all this wee may ſee, to what great vncertainty this ancient name of *Britain* is now brought, and moſte of all through the doubt that many haue conceaued of *Brute*, to wit, whether euer there were any ſuch at all. But that there was ſuch a king, and that of him both the countrey and people of our Ile had heertofore their appellation, it both is and hath bin, the comon receaued opinion: & is not now raſhly to be reiected, albeit ſome-thinges which to ſome do ſeem to ſound very fabuloſly, may haue bin by ſome few obſcure authors heertofore added vnto his hiftorie, & ſo haue made the whole to bee doubted of.

Fabulous
narratiōs of
king Brute.

As for example, his departure out of *Italy* for hauing by miſfortune ſlain his father *Siluius*, in ſhooting at a deer, his deſcent from *Troy*, his going into *Greece*, and bringing thence the remnant of the *Troyans* that were there in captiuitie, to wit, ſeauen
thowſand

Som
thowſ
which
there h
& obta
after al
remnar
former
his pe
The
that ſuc
his ow
ſonnes
mer o
were i
Gallia
count
warr t
buyldi
Albion
ſeſſion
and ye
ters of
as wro
bin bo
ble for
lieued
Italie t
abſurd
yf any
other,
among
regiſtre

thowſand men, beſydes women & children, the which they ſay hee brought by ſea into *Gallia*, & there hauing had long warres with the Poyteuines, & obtrayned ſundry victories, buylded two cities, & after all this came with the remainder of the aforeſaid remnant into *Albion*, chaſed thence the Giants, or former inhabitants, & there laſtly planted himſelf and his people.

Theſe things I ſay wil hardly bee believed, for that ſuch a thing as the killing of a king of *Italie* by his own ſonne (although by miſfortune) and that ſonnes coming afterward not only to bee the redeemer of the remainder of the captiue Troyans that were in *Greece*, but the bringer of them by ſea into *Gallia*: the conductor of them quyte through that countrey from the one ſyde to the other, & there by warr to haue had ſundry victories; and after the there buylding of cities, to croſſe the ſeas into the Ile of *Albion*; & by ſubduing the inhabitants to obtain poſſeſſion of the whole Ile to himſelf & his poſteritie, and yet all this to be ſylenced by all the ancient wryters of theſame countrey where ſo notable a Prince as wrought ſomuch honor therevnto, is ſaid to haue bin born, is ſo ſtrange, that it may well ſeem impoſſible for any ſuch thing to haue bin, vnleſſe it be believed that there were none in theſaid countrey of *Italie* that had the knowlege of letters, which were abſurd, for any man to ween. But without all doubt yf any ſuch thing had bin, it had in ſome ſorte or other, either in poetrie or proſe, by one or other among ſo many ancient wryters of that countrey bin regiſtred. And *Iulius Ceſar* who came afterward

into *Britain*, beeing a man both of learning & iudgement, could neuer haue bin so ignorant as he was, that the British kings were able to deryue their descent from his own countrey of *Italie*. Who was in deed so farr from the knowlege heerof, that beeing very curious to vnderstand the true descents of the Britans, could not euen among themselues be thereof any way rightly resolued, and therefore as himself faith, hee held their races and descents to bee altogether vncertain and obscure.

Cesar in
his Coment.

Many ima-
gined des-
cents from
the Troyans.

And now as touching the Troyans, it is a world to see how-many people haue sought to deryue from them their descents, and how-many foundations of cities are reported to haue by them bin laid. Yea the folly of men hath bin such, that they haue giuen the glorie vnto this fugitiue people, of almoste all that is excellent in all *Europa*: but in deed the so-many making claime to be descended from these Troyans, maketh it somuch the more doubtful whether any of these claymers be descended from them at all: and in troth a lesse fault it were for a people to remain ignorant of their own original then any way to falsify it. *Popilinier* a late french author, maketh it in his historie of histories a meer fable and foolery, for any man to imagin that euer the francks or frenchmen haue issued from these miserable fugitiues: notwithstanding it hath bin as long and as much belieued, as that *Brute* and his *Britans* haue also in lyke manner from them had their offspring. And thus wee see that after the poore Troyans haue bin (at the least in conceyt) so long settled both in *Gallia* and *Britain*, and I wote not where, they are now a new chased away & made fu-

SOME
fugitiue
from the

To
should p
lyklyer
among
their D
of letter
their tru
become
And for
among
of letter
out their
to make
from the
vpon a
in glory
thereby
tate the
fortifyin
names o
to any t
bin four
France,
in the b
bee inte
which i
may be
But
lenged
the tru

fugitiues again, as-wel from the one countrey as from the other.

To seek out then the reason why this conceyt should possesse so many peoples mynds, I can fynd no lyklyer then the lack of learning in former ages, among the inhabitants of these partes of *Europe*: their Druydes themselues not hauing any knowlege of letters. So as wanting the best meanes to conserue their true antiquities, they had the greatest cause to become wholly ignorant of their own originals. And some of them afterward when the Romas came among them, coming to get the knowlege & vse of letters, beeing curious some way or other to seek out their original, might easely fynd some supposall to make them fall into a conceyt of beeing descended from the Troyans (a cōceyt perhaps much furthered vpon a delight taken in virgils verses) & some therein glorying and extolling themselues, others might thereby be drawn to follow the fassion, and to imitate them in such a vain glorious conceyt, and for the fortifying thereof, seek eftsoones to interpret the names of their cities, yf in sound they had any neernes to any thing concerning *Troy*, to haue consequently bin founded by the Troyans, as the citie of *Paris* in *France*, by *Paris* the sonne of *Priā*, *Trene* with which in the british tounge is asmuch to say, as new-town, to bee interpreted *Troynouant*, that is to say, new *Troy*, which is now our old *London*; and the lyke in effect may bee said of many cities besydes.

The ancient druydes, had no knowlege of letters.

Treneuid.

But now are not only these many descents challenged from the Troyans called in question, but euen the truthe of the matter of *Troy* it self, and the histo-

The Historie of the Troyans thought of some to be rie fabulous.

Queen Dido
neuer knew
Eneas.

Titus Liuius

Hier. contra
Iouinianū.

VVhence
king Brute
came.

rie of the Troyans said to bee without any assured author. Howbeit I do not mean to wade so farr in this matter, but wil rather leaue it to the dispute of others. Yet thusmuch wil I say, that the poet *Virgil*, hath much fayned and fabuled in his tales of *Eneas*, for whereas he wryteth that *Dido*. Queen of *Carthage* killed her self for his loue, it is moste vnttrue, & contrary to all true histories, for the chaste Queen *Dido* did neuer see *Eneas* in her lyf, neither could shee, by reason of the different ages wherein they both liued. The said *Eneas* maryed with *Launia* the daughter of king *Latinus*, and had six successors in the kingdome of *Alba* in the space of two hundreth yeares, or more, from the later of which, *Romulus* the first founder of *Rome* did descend.

And the citie of *Carthage* wherein Queen *Dido* raigned, was buylt but seauentie yeares before the foundation of *Rome*, whereby it easely may appeer that *Eneas* was dead a great number of yeares, before euer Queen *Dido* was borne. And *S. Hierome* wryting against *Iouinian*, saith, that the chaste *Dido* founded the citie of *Carthage*, and gaue her lyf because she would not violate her chastitie.

Brute then and his Britans for sundry reasons not now so easely imagyned to be descended from the Troyans, as heertofore belieued to haue bin, it standeth with far more lyklyhood of truth, seeing out of *Gallia* hee came into *Albion*, that wee hold him for some prince of thesame countrey and nation: of the which nation his people can no lesse be accompted, also to haue bin. And farre more honorable it is for the Britans to deryue their descent from so great, so ancient,

So
ancien
then
truth
from
gitiues
ancien
the ne
shal ha
why o
the Br
uing sp
Albion
the per
ciently
In v
God in
from th
altoget
fore the
woords
tur aqu
arida: E
congreg
reby ap
ther in t
had no f
they hau
fore the
uersal de
ouer it
tyme of
of sea a

ancient, & so honorable a people as the Gaules were, then with somuch obscuritie and vnlyklyhood of truthe, to seek so farr of to fetch their descēt; & that from no better anceters then the poore miserable fugitiues of a destroyed citie. And that the Britans were anciently in deed a people of the Gaules, I mean in the next chapter to shew some further light, when I shal haue occasion to speak of the true cause & reason why our Saxon anceters coming into *Britain*, called the *Britans* by the name of welshmen: and heer hauiug spoken thus much of the ancient inhabitants of *Albion*, I wil now in the meane tyme proceed vnto the performance of my promisse, in shewing it anciently to haue bin firm land with *Gallia*.

In what manner and forme it pleased Almightye God in the begining of the world, to deuyde the sea from the dry land, is vnto vs wholly vnknown; but altogether vnlykely it is that there were any Iles before the deluge; and somuch may be gathered by the woords of the scripture. *Dixit vero Deus: congregentur aqua quae sub caelo sunt, in locum vñũ, & appareat arida: Et factũ est ita. Et vocauit Deus aridam terram, congregationesq̃ue aquarum appellauit maria.* Whereby apeereth, that the waters were gathered together in their own place by themselves, and therefore had no such intercoures between land & land, as now they haue, and so consequently there were no Iles before the flud of *Noe*: howbeit by that great and vniuersal deluge, many Iles were doubtles caused. Moreover it is manifest by the scripture, that since the tyme of the aforesaid deluge, some alterations both of sea and land haue also bin made, as may appear

Genes. 1.

Genes. 14.

As Cicilie
sometyme
was sepe-
rated frō Italy
Ouid. lib. 15.

Opinions of
diuers au-
thors that
our Ile was
continent
with France
Sir Thomas
More in his
Vtopia see-

where it is said of the meeting together of certain kings. *Omnes hi conuenerunt in vallem syluestrem, que nunc est mare salis.* All these met together in the wood valley, which is now the salt sea; so as this valley hauing in the tyme of Abram bin full of trees, was now in the tyme of Moyses the salt sea. Plinie saith that it somtymes hath hapned that Iles haue bin drowned and deuowred by the sea, and that at other tymes they haue appeered out of the sea where before they neuer were seen, and haue so continued. Moreouer that it hath bin seen that Iles beeing situated neer vnto the continent, haue become ioyned and annexed vnto it; and contrariwise partes or peninsulaes that were annexed vnto the continent, haue bin seperated & made Iles. Of all which he giueth in his naturall historie both the examples and the reasons. Ouid also saith, that hee hath seen land where somtyme was sea, & sea where somtyme was land. Sundry the lyke examples might in lyke manner heer be set down, of the alterations that haue bin wrought by the inundations and cours of the sea, as where it hath in many places gayned of the land, & contrariwise where the land hath recouered it self again frō the sea, all which were only to shew how vsuall a thing it hath bin for the limits and bounds of many maritime places, to haue bin most subiect to such alterations & changes.

That our Ile of *Albion* hath bin continent with *Gallia*, hath bin the opinion of diuers, as of *Antonius Volsus*, *Dominicus Marius Niger*, *Seruins Honoratus*. The french poet *Bartas*, our countreymē *M. John Twyn*, and *M. Doctor Richard Whyte*, with sundry others, but these authors following the opinion the
one

one of the other; are rather content to think it som-
tyme so to haue bin, then to labor to fynd out by
sundry pregnant reasons that so it was in deed.

meth so to
vnderstand
of our cou-
trei of En-
gland.

The first apparence to moue lyklyhood of this
thing, is the neernes of land betweene *England*
and *France* (to vse the moderne names of both coun-
tries) that is, from the clifs of *Douer*, vnto the lyke
clifs lying between *Calis* and *Bullen*, for frō *Douer*
to *Calis* is not the neereſt land, nor yet are the toyles
a lyke: the shore of *Douer* appeering vnto the saylers
hygh and chalkie, and the shore of *Calis*, low and al-
together sandie, as in lyke manner the english shore
toward *Sandwyck* (which is more directly ouer
againſt *Calis* then *Douer* is) also doth.

Theſe clifs on either ſyde the ſea, lying iuſt opo-
ſyte the one vnto the other; both of one ſubſtance;
that is, of chalk and flint; the ſydes of both towards
the ſea, plainly appeering to bee broken off from ſome
more of theſame ſtuf or matter, that it hath ſomtyme
by nature bin faſtned vnto; the length of theſaid clifs
along the ſea ſhore beeing on the one ſyde answer-
able in effect, to the lēgth of the very lyk on the other
ſyde, and the diſtance between both, as ſome ſkilfull
ſaylers reporte, not exceeding fowr-and-twentie en-
gliſh myles; are all great arguments to prooue a con-
iunction in tyme long paſt, to haue bin between theſe
two countries; whereby men did paſſe on dry land
from the one vnto the other, as it were ouer a bridge
or *Iſthmus* of land, beeing altogether of chalk and
flint, and conteyning in length about the number of
myles before ſpecified, & in bredth ſome fix english
myles or thereabouts, whereby our cōtrey was then

Neernes of
England vnto
France.

Albion
sometyme a
Peninsula.

98 OF THE ILE OF ALBION,
no lland but *peninsula*, beeing thus fixed vnto the
mayn continent of the world.

To make this more plainly to appeer, this *maxime*
or *principle* must bee graunted, that there is nothing
broken, but it hath bin whole, for albeit Nature doth
now and then (against her own intent) comit some
errors, and that somtymes the things shee formeth
haue too-much, & somtymes too-little, yet deliuereth
shee nothing broke or diseuered, but such as it is, how
euer in deformitie it bee, yet is it alwayes whole and
neuer broken, vnlesse afterward by accidēt. So ought
it also to bee believed that Almighty God the cause
and conductor of Nature, in creating the world did
leauē no parte of his woork imperfect or broken.
But manifest it is, that these clifs (not beeing by God
and nature at the first so framed) are seen to bee bro-
ken, yea euen as it were cut of stiepe or straight down,
from the top to the bottom, and not coming by de-
grees sloping down, as inland hilles ordinarily do
vnto their valleys; but evidently appeer to haue bin
by force broken of, and that not inward towards the
land, but outward towards the sea, either syde in such
manner stil remayning corespondent to other, and
either shewing the lack of the matter or substance
which it hath lost: and that beeing one self thing, to
wit, chalk and flint, it plainly thereby doth declare
vnto vs that somtyme it was conioyned together in
one same substance, and consequently was first by
nature made one soyle.

Some may heer obiect, that other hilly partes or
clifs of the sea shore are in many other places seen to
be broken away, as stiepe and as straight down as these
heer

So
heer
there
viol
fydes
part
And
rocks
them
Alpe
to ha
quake
seen
heer
Besy
not, b
the v
the e
peer
I
guag
fydes
by th
more
name
to th
view
belon
clifs
as w
answ
again
matt

heer spoken of, which I confesse to bee true, and thereunto do answere, that it is a plain sign that the violence of the sea hath so worne and eaten out the sydes of them beaneth at the bottom; that the vpper-part for want of vnderpropping, hath falne down. And moreouer where it also is found that inland rocks or hilles are seen to haue had some partes of them broken away, as I haue obserued in passing the *Alpes* and other mountaines, this may wel be thought to haue proceeded in old tyme by occasion of earthquakes, but the breaches found in rocks are neuer seen to passe all along in any sorte of euennesse, but heer and there without any kynd of cours or order. Besydes, they may often seem broken when they are not, because they are formed craggy by *Nature*, or the wynd and the rain hauing long since beaten away the earth from them, may thus haue left them to appear the very true anatomies of themselues.

It is further to be noted, that in our ancient language the cut-of or broken mountaines on the sea sydes are more rightly and properly called clifs, then by the name of rocks or hilles; that appellatiō beeing more fitting vnto the inland mountaines, but the name of clif coming from our verb to-cleauē, is vnto these more aptly giuē, for that they seem vnto our view as cleft or clouen, from the parte that somtyme belonged vnto them, and albeit (as I said before) many clifs are in many places of the sea shore to bee seen, as wel as at *Douer*; yet are they not seen so to bee answered and coresponded vnto by others right ouer against them, nor to bee of such neernes and such self matter or substance, as these haue heer bin shewed to

Clif, what it
signifieth.

bee. This coniuncture to haue remayned for some space after the great and general deluge, and the breach and separation of *Albion* from *Gallia* by the said deluge not to haue bin caused, is by sundry reasons to bee prooued.

Netherlāds
haue heerto
fore bin sea.

Diuers stee-
ples at low
water do
yet appeer,
of the
townes and
villages that
haue bin
drownd.

Netherlan-
ders planted
in England.

The first that I wil bring is from the *Netherlands*, which so farr as they are euen and plain without any hilles or hilly grownds, haue vndoubtedly heerto-fore in tyme long past, bin sea: yea and that before and since, the flud of *Noe*. The proofs that they haue bin sea; are, first the lownesse of their situation, some of the more maritime partes of them as *Zealand* and *Holland*, with some partes of *Flanders*, &c. beeing so low, that by breach or cutting of the sand bancks or dunes, which the reiection of the sea by litle and litle hath raised and cast vp, and the labor of man heer and there supplied, might easely bee drowned and conuerted from land into sea again: and of the great harmes that these partes haue heertofoe by eruption of the sea sustayned, I could heer set down sundry examples, but one among others shal suffise, because our own chronicles giue testimonie thereof, & that is of the mighty inūdation in the raigh of king *Henry* the first, whereby a great parte of the countrey was irrecoverably lost, & many of the poor distressed people beeing bereft of their habitation came into England; where the king vpon compassion (as also for that he saw they might bee profitable to the realme by instructing his subiects in the arte of clo-thing) first placed them about *Carlel* in the North of *England*; and after remoued them into *South wales*, where their posteritie hath euer since remayned.

Moreouer,

So
More
of our
the D
land b
ebbing
certain
might
selues
in vpo
this da
besyde
beeing
partes
euenn
Holla
but of
whit a
dunes
ken on
and fo
and F
Hu
tyme o
Rhen
count
euē v
drecht
Lewis
think
self, an
ning t
Tongr

Moreouer, lōg before this hapned, to wit in the yeare of our Lord seauen hundredth fyfty and eight, when the Danes & the Gothes did fortify the Iles of *Zealand* by dryuing in of pyles and making banckes at ebbing water, they were so prouident as first to make certain mounts in sundry places, wherevnto they might retyre at high water, as also fly to saue themselves, yf the sea should at any tyme happen to break in vpon them, the which artificiall hilles are yet vnto this day in the Ile of *VValkers* to be seen. But now besydes these low places that adioyn vpon the sea, beeing properly *Holland* and *Zealand*, the greater partes of *Flaunders* and *Brabant* do ly of such great euennesse of grownd as do both thesaid countries of *Holland* and *Zealand*, though not so low as they, but of such height as no inundation of the sea can any whit annoy them, yea although the sand banckes or dunes now on the sea syde where neuer somuch broken or cut through, and that both *Holland* *Zealand* and some of the next confyning partes of *Brabant* and *Flaunders*, were altogether drowned.

Danes and
Goths for-
tify *Zealand*.

Artificiall
Hilles to
saue people
from drown-
ing.

Hubert Thomas a man of very good partes, somtyme chief secretarie vnto *Frederic* count palatin of *Rhene* and Prince elector, in his description of the countrey of *Liege*, saith, that the sea hath come vp euē vnto the walles of *Tōgres*, (now welnigh an hundredth english myles frō the sea) which seemeth vnto *Lewis Guicciardin*, very strange, insomuch as hee thinketh *Hubert Thomas* to haue far ouerhot himself, and to haue bin of slender consideration in weening that the sea hath euer come vp as farr as vnto *Tongres*, notwithstanding the good reasons which

Guicciardin in his
description
of the Ne-
therlands.

the other aleageth to prooue it (& among other that the great iron rings are there yet remaining, vnto which the shippes that there somtyme arryued were fastened) because saith *Guicciardin*, *Tongres* lyeth now so farre from the sea, and that the sea could neuer haue had cours so farr as thether, without the ruine of such countries as ly between it and the sea. With thesaid *Guicciardin* whyle he liued I was acquainted, and haue found him to confesse some errors that by mistaking or misinformation hee had in his wrytings comitted, and were hee yet lyuing he might easely be brought to confesse this also, and so to become of the opinion of *Hubert Thomas*, for whereas hee would ouerthrow the reasons of thesaid *Thomas*, because *Tongres* is now so farr from the sea, and that the countries lying between that and the sea, must then of the sea needs haue bin ouerflown, what refutal is this, when it can bee prooued that they so were, I mean, all such as ly in an equall euennesse without any hilles, for the great euennesse of all ground that naturally is so, hath doubtlesse bin so first made and caused by water; as the plain and euen medowes haue without all dowe in tyme past so bin made by the water wherewith they haue bin couered, and the water either seeking some cours by chanel, or otherwise drayned or holpen to haue issue, the Sun in tyme drying vp the mud; hath made them to become firm and fruteful grownds. An espetial reason then that these partes of the low countries haue bin sea, is their maruelous great euennesse, which nothing can haue caused but water.

Reasons of
the euennesse
of medowes.

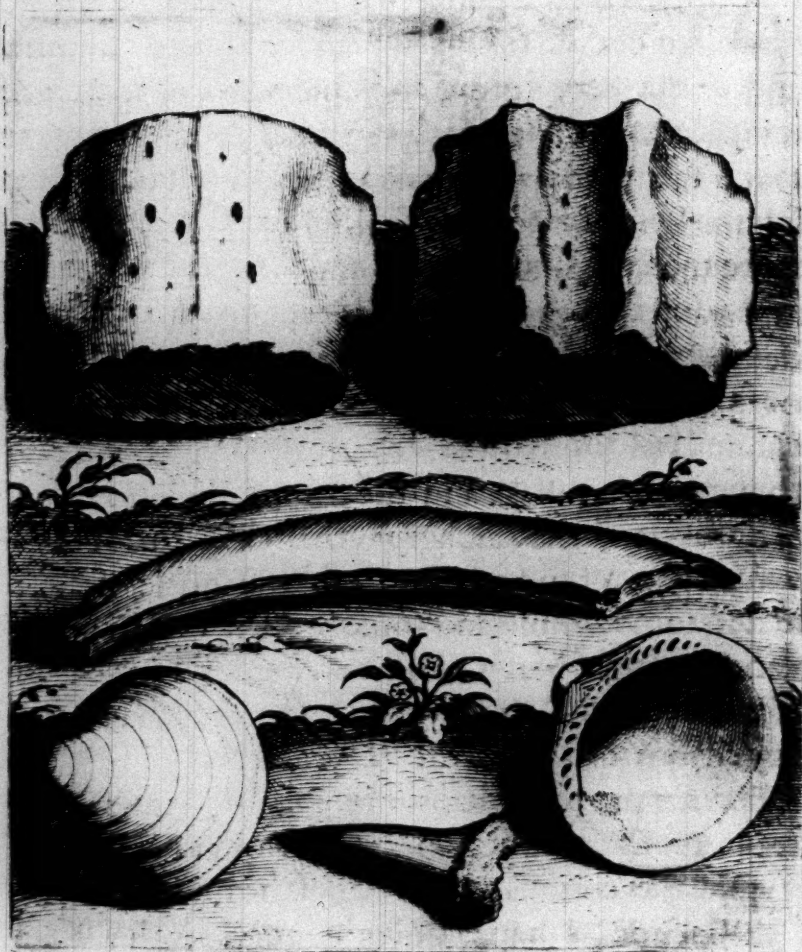
Another

Son
An
oreu
Flan
demo
the fl
A
fador
more
fishe
these
town
haue
haue
buyld
ly in a
shelle
places
many
digge
Fo
forme
gi

Another reason is, that with this great plainnesse or euennesse of ground, the soile generally, both of *Flanders & Brabant*, is sandy, which doth naturally demonstrat those partes (in tymes past) to haue bin the flats, sands or shores of the sea.

A third reason is, that in digging about two fadome deep in the earth, though in some places more and in some lesse, innumerable shelles of sea Shelles of sea fish found in the earth. fish are found, and that comonly in all places of these plain & euen grownds, both in feild and town, and heerof to bee thoroughly informed I haue talked with such laboring men as vsually haue digged welles, and the deep foundations of buyldings, and they all agree, that they do comonly in all places fynd an innumerable quantitie of these shelles, some whole and some broken, and in many places the great bones of fishes whereof I haue seen many, and haue had some euen as they haue bin digged out of the earth.

For a more plain description of the manner and forme of these bones and shelles of fishes, and to giue the curious reader heerein the more satisfaction, I haue thought good in the next ensuing page to set down some of them in picture.



Great bones
of fishes
found in the
earth.

The chyne bones are comonly found in this manner, of about a foot in length, some much more, and some lesse, the peces of broken ribbes are somtymes found as thick as a beam of timber, and somtymes far lesse, the shelles are not lyke vnto our cocle shelles, but on the outsyd plain & euē & about a quarter of an inche thick, especialy the bigger sorte which are of ten or twelue inches in compas about

So
about
their
fynd
and
some
make
such
more
inche
call th
and t
natur
conue
seen t
firr tr
in the
lying
Nort
haue
know
apt to
in col
Germ
delug
bee dr
shelles
pagn
a hilly
wise b
ner by
vniuer
any se

about by the edges. Moreouer potters in woorking their clay which is gotten in some espetial places, do fynd in it certain things which are as hard as stone, and of the very forme and shape of the tounge of some sortes of fishes, each with the root vnto it, to make it the very markable and right proportion of such a kynd of tounge in all respects, some beeing more then two inches long, and some lesse then one inche, and they that thus fynd them do not otherwise call them, but the tounge of fishes, which beeing so, and turned into very hard stone, is a strange thing in nature, but the lesse strange because nature in her conuersions of other substances into stone, is often seen to woork the lyk. True it is, that in some places firre trees haue also bin found in digging in the earth in these low countries and comonly with the roots lying to the Sowthwest, and the toppes to the Northeast, but these are not to bee thought euer to haue grown in the *Netherlands*, because none are known to grow there, the soyl not beeing by nature apt to produce them, but are mooste comonly found in cold hilly places, or vpon high mountaines, as in *Germanie* & other partes, & these in the tyme of the deluge might from thence by the rage of the waters, bee driuen thether. There is moreouer some sorte of shelles somtyme found in the vineyards of *Champaigne in France*, which is no low or euen but rather a hilly or vneuen countrey; of these it cannot otherwise bee imagyned but that they haue in lyke manner by the great rage and tosing of the waters in the vniuersal deluge bin cast thether, yf they haue bin of any sea shel fish & not such as horsmuscles which are

Firre trees
found in the
earth.

The bones
of a sea Ele-
phant found
in the earth.

Caligula car-
ried shelles
of the sea
coſte of Hol-
lā to Rome.

found in freſh water for that may alſo bee a queſtiō,
ſeeing no man can think that theſaid countrey hath
euer bin ſea, no reaſon or lyklyhood in the world
therevnto concurring: nor of theſe ſhelles are there
any great ſtore: neither ly they deep in the earth, but
are now & then found by a chāce; whereas the ſhelles
found in the *Netherlands* are in ſuch innumerable
quantitie; that they ly all along within the earth as
do the vaines or differences of the earth or ſoyl it
ſelf, in other places: and heer and there the great
bones of fiſhes (as before hath bin ſhewed) are alſo
found lying among them. Yea it hath hapned that
anckers haue bin found in digging on the heath in
the ſandy *Kempinia* of *Brabant*. Moreouer, at ſuch
tyme as the famous water-paſſage was digged from
Bruxels, vnto the riuer of *Rupel* at *VVillebrook*,
which was by the labor of men cut or digged,
through cornland, woodland, and medowes, about
the ſpace of fifteen english myles: begun in the yeare
of our Lord, 1550. and ended in Anno 1561. (a
maruelous attempt to bee vndertaken by one citie)
there was found among other things the bones or
anatomie of a ſea Elephant, the head whereof, which
is yet reſerued, my ſelf haue ſeen. It is alſo to bee no-
ted that albeit in digging deep in the earth in *Bra-
bant* and *Flanders* great aboundance of the ſhelles
of fiſhes are found yet in digging in the earth in *Hol-
land* and *Zealand*, none at all are perceaued, howbeit
on the ſands on the ſea ſhore there are very many, &
of theſe the Emperor *Caligula* cauſed his ſoldiers to
gather great ſtore, to carrie with them to *Rome*, and
there in the *Capitol* to preſent them in token of
triumphe

S
trium
Occ
four
are
haue
ſea:
the f
ſuch
T
ſea; it
both
only
that
ſhort
fiſhes
beeing
they r
theref
after t
tude f
vehem
might
are fou
I haue
exceed
order,
not lo
there f
ſoft an
colour
litle an
dry lan

triumphe, as hauing taken the spoyle of the *German Ocean*. The reason then why such shelles are not found in the earth in *Holland* and *Zealand* as they are in *Brabant* and *Flanders*, is, because those partes haue bin in tyme long past parte of the depth of the sea: & the partes aforesaid of *Brabant* & *Flanders* the flats or shore; & on the flats & not in the depths such kynd of shel-fish is naturally nowrished.

The *Netherlands* thus beeing shewed to haue bin sea; it is now to bee demonstrated that they were sea both before and since the flud, and not by the flud only so caused; and this may appeer by the litle tyme that the flud lasted, because there could not in so shorte a space such an innumerable multitude of shel-fishes breed and encrease to such biggnes, the shelles beeing so big and so thick as before is shewed, but they must needs haue had a farr longer tyme, and therefore the sea heer to haue remayned many yeares after the flud. Neither could such innumerable multitude from els where by the said flud which was very vehement and raging bee brought hether, as such few might peradventure bee, as now and then by chance are found in some vineyards of *Champaign* whereof I haue spoken before, but these beeing heer in such an exceeding quantitie, lying in such an equall cours and order, which the confused cours of that flud could not so dispose, plainly sheweth them to haue bin there first bred and nowrished by nature, and in that soft and loose kynd of redish sand somewhat of the colour of clay, sunck down and setled together, by litle and litle; before it grew to the nature of hard and dry land the which hauing bin sea before the flud (in

the shel-fish
might heer
be bred,
both before
and after
the flud.

which tyme this store of shel-fish may haue bin bred) it must needs also haue continued sea after the flud, for the flud could not bee the cause to make any parte land that before had bin sea, but rather many partes sea, that before had bin land.

An apparent reason must then bee sought, how it hath come to pas that these *Netherlands* hauing bin sea, haue become to bee land; and yf so bee that this question were moued of such partes only of these countries as *Holland Zealand*, and their confynes, which may by the seas inundation (as before hath bin said) easely bee drowned, and made sea again, it might by the ordinary answere that the sea doth often gain in one place and lose in another, soone bee resolved: but speaking of these partes of *Flanders* and *Brabant*, which hauing bin sea and beeing become land, can no more by any inundation be made sea again, this I say requyreth an imminet reason to bee sought for; the which cannot bee found, but in the breaking of the *German Ocean*, through that *Isthmos*, or narrow passage of land, which once conioyned *Albion* to *Gallia*, that is to say, *England* to *France*, by which only meanes the sea fynding out a new cours, all the euen partes of the *Netherlands* hauing (as is aforesaid) before bin sea, became eftsoones dry land: euen as by comon experience wee see that watry or moorish grownds are drayned dry, when an issue may bee found to lead away the water to some lower chanel, pool, or riuer. And euen so in lyke manner this breach in our *Isthmos* beeing once made, and the sea hauing bin before the said breach somewhat lower on the west syde thereof then on the east syde; the cours

of

How the
Netherlandes
hauing bin
sea became
land.

of the water, by a naturall redynes taking scope down through this new chanel (which before was only a kynd of gulf as is *Mare Rubrum*) towards the moſte huge western Ocean the great deuyder of *Europe*, & *Africa*, from the late-found *America*, it did without all doubt woork this great effect, and no way is there els to bee found or imagyned, whereby these seas might be drayned or drawn away, to make these former shallow places to appeer and become dry land, but only by this way and cours.

That the sea on the west syde of the said *Isthmos* was lower then the sea on the east syde thereof, is besydes this great woork thereby wrought, to bee iudged by the sundry flats and shallowes on the east syde, aswel on the coste of *England* as of *Flanders*, yea one in a manner lying between *Douer* and *Calis*, of about three english myles in length, of some called our Ladyes sand. And contrariwise on the west syde no such flats at all to bee found, whereby may wel bee gathered that as the land vnder the sea remaineth on the one syde lower then one the other, so accordingly did the sea also. It is Moreouer to bee iudged by the very present cours of the sea; for it is obserued that the currant of the water is more swift down the chanel towards the west, then from the west vnto the east: old shippers of the *Netherlands* affirming, that they haue often noted the voyage from *Holland* to *Spaine*, to bee shorter by a day and a halt sayling, then the voyage from *Spaine* to *Holland*. That the seas are different in height one from the other, euen in places where they haue but narrow seperations of land between them, is very manifest, for

110 OF THE ILE OF ALBION,
heertofore at such tyme as some of the kings of
Egipt went about by cutting the separation of land
which is between the *Red-sea* before recyted, and
Mare mediterraneum or the *Midland-sea* to bring
them both into one, it was found by the *perpendicu-*
lum or instrumēt of water-leuel that the *Red-sea* was
much higher then the *Mediterraneum* sea, and beeing
but shallow in diuers places it was feared it would in
those places haue become so dry that it would not
haue bin nauigable, but rather that people might
haue passed through it on foot, though not as *Moyse*s
with the children of *Israel* miraculously did, but eue
vpon dry grownd, and for this and other inconue-
niences which might haue ensued it was left vndon.
Moreouer it hath also bin found that the sea on the
west syde of *America* vulgarly called *Mar del zur*, is
much higher then the *Atlantike* sea, which lieth on
the east syde, so as yf it had so bin that the *Isthmos* of
land between *Panama* & *Nöbre de Dios* might haue
bin cut through, that passage there might haue bin
made into the *Pacifyke* sea, otherwise called *Mar del*
zur, without sailing so farr about as by the straights
of *Magellan*, yet would some other great inconue-
niences haue grown through the inequality of the
heights of these two seas.

Another reason there is that this separation hath
bin made since the flud, which is also very considera-
ble, & that is, that the Patriarch *Noe* hauing had with
him in the *Ark* all sortes of beastes (all els besydes
throughout the whole world beeing destroyed) these
then after the flud beeing put foorth of the *Ark*, to
encrease and multiply, did afterward in tyme dispers
themselues

themselves ouer all partes of the continent or main land, but long after it could not bee before the ravenous wolf had made his kynd nature known vnto man, and therefore no man vnlesse hee were mad, would euer transporte of that race for the goodnes of the breed, out of the continent into any Iles: no more then men wil euer carry foxes (though they bee lesse damageable) out of our continent into the Ile of *Wight*. But our Ile as is aforesaid, continewing since the flud fastned by nature vnto the great continent, these wicked beasts did of themselves passe ouer, & yf any should obiekt that *England*, hath no wolues in it, they may bee answered that *Scotlād*, beeig therewith conioyned hath very many, & so *England* it self sometye also had, vntil such tyme as king *Edgar*, took order for the destroying of them throughout the whole realme, which general destruction they wel deserued by a kings comaund, hauing before that kings tyme bin the destruction of two kings of the Britains, which were, *Madan* and *Mempricius*.

No foxes in the Ile of *Wight*.

The lyke may be thought of *Ireland*s sometye breing annexed to *Scotland* in regard of the wolues in that Ile.

But now whether the breach of this our *Isthmos*, were caused by some great earth-quake, whereby the sea first breaking through, might afterward by litle & litle enlarge her passage, or whether it were cut by the labor of man in regard of comoditie by that passage, or whether the inhabytants of the one syde or the other by occasion of war did cut it; thereby to bee sequestred and freed from their enemyes, must needs remain altogether vncertain; but that our Ile hath bin continent with *France*, and that since the deluge, hath heer bin shewed: and although not out of the wrytings of old authors, yet by euident reasons & mark-

*Berosus hath
all his credit
of Annus of
Viterbo.*

able demonstrations; such as wel in this case are to bee allowed for sufficient authors: yea & that before such as might perhaps deliuer vs some such reporte vpon some others hearefay, and want such due proofs as heer haue bin aleaged to confirm it. And no maruel is it that in old authors no relation of this is found, considering that they must in deed bee very old that heerof must make mention, yea they must haue bin such as in those tymes must haue liued about these partes, or had good meanes from these partes to haue vnderstood it, both which, considering those so very ancient ages; and the want of knowlege of letters, generally of all people in these parts of *Europe*, cannot possibly bee expected. Many ages were ouerpast between the tyme of the deluge, and the tyme wherein the first author liued that euer made mention of our Ile, & let *Berosus* the *Chaldean* priest (yf he were before *Aristotle*) haue the credit to bee the first, who liued (as it is said) about three hundred and fortie yeares before the tyme of *Christ*, and so far frō our Ile, that neither hee nor others for sūdry ages after him, could come to haue true knowlege thereof, seeing they neuer came to conuersse with any the inhabitants, that so they might haue learned it by tradition, yf by tradition among such barbarous people, it had vntil then bin conserued; for by wryting could they not vnderstand it from them, that in many ages after, knew not what wryting ment: and when afterward in length of tyme their posteritie came to the knowlege of letters, the had both this & other things belonging to their antiquities, long before bin worn out of remēbrance: and thus wil I heer end this chapter, & so return again to prosecute my former cours.

113

OF THE ARRYVAL OF THE SAXONS OVT

OF GERMANIE INTO BRI-

taine: and how they there receaued the
Christian faith, possessed the belt parte
of the countrey, called it *England*; &
leauing the name of Saxons
came generally to bee called
Engliſhmen.

The fiſt Chapter.

I Haue in the third chapter ſpoken of
the old cuſtomes of our Saxon anceters
before their coming into *Britaine*; and
of *Britaine* ſomtyme called *Albion*, I
haue ſpoken in the laſt foregoing chap-
ter, and heer am I now come vnto the coming of
them out of *Germanie* into this moſte famous and
flourishing Ile.

King *Brute* by conquering the more ancient in-
habitants, obtained the rule and domination ouer all
Albion, which after him the conqueror thereof, be-
came (according to the moſte generall opinion) to
bee called *Britaine*, which hee deuyding into three
partes did leaue vnto the kingly gouernment of his
three ſonnes. Vnto *Lochrine* who was the eldeſt, he left
Loegria, now called *England*. Vnto *Albanact* the
ſecōd ſonne, he allotted *Albania*, now called *Scotlād*:
& vnto *Camber*, the third ſōne he gaue *Cambria*, now
called *Wales*. But as in this world there is nothing
ſtable, nor no poſſeſſion of any family perpetually
P thereunto

It is ſaid
that *Brute*
arryued in
Albion about
3000 years
after the
creation of
the world.

About 330.
yeares as
some wryte,
before the
birth of
Christe.

The people
of the sep-
tentrionall
parties of
Germanie,
were chiefly
giuen to the
exercise of
shooting.

Now Bis-
caya.

Pictes not
so called of
painting
their bodies.

thereunto assured, so these three kingdomes did not stil remain vnto the posteritie of this king *Brute* and his *Britaines*, for the valiant Prince *Fergus*, sonne vnto *Ferquardus* king of *Ireland*, coming out of that Ile into the north parte of *Britaine*, vanquished the british inhabitants, and became the first king in that countrey, of the Scottish natiō; for so were the people which he brought with him out of *Ireland* called.

The Scottishmen yf originally they came out of *Scythia* (as some of their own authors affirme) and so take the name of Scottes or Scyttes, of the ancient teutonic verb *Scytan*, whereof cometh our english verb *to-shoot*, then in all lykelyhood was it from the *Germā Scythia*, whereof some do accompt a parte of *Denmark* also to haue bin, and seeking new habitation might passe ouer to the *Orcades*, and coasting down southerly along by the shore of *Ireland*, crosse ouer into *Cantabria*: and from thence (in some tyme after) come into *Ireland*. This I say must bee presumed, yf reiecting the tale of *Scota* wee accord vnto such authors, as wil bring them from *Scythia* into *Spaine*, from whence it is held they came into *Ireland*, and so into *Scotland*.

Moreouer the Pictes, a people not so called of painting their bodyes, as some haue supposed, but vpon mistaking their true name which was *Phichtiā* that is to say fighters (for the ch must heer bee pronounced as gh, and the n standeth in steed of s to expresse the plurall number) coming first out of the *German Scythia*, bordering vpon *Mare Balticum*, where at this present are the Dukedomes of *Meckelbourg* and *Pomerania* (from which partes or neer there

there-about, the Scótiſhmé according to the opinion of ſome wryters as is aforeſaid, are alſo ſaid to haue come) & getting foot in *Britaine* did laſtly encroatche vnto themſelues a kingdome between *Loegria* and *Albania*, by ſleefing from each of theſe two countries a parte, that is to ſay, a parte from *England* and a parte from *Scotland*, as *Galloway* from the one, and *Wſtmerland* from the other.

Loegria after
ward called
England.

But the britiſh people that as yet poſſeſſed *Loegria* did not there for all this enioy their ancient freedom, for that *Iulius Ceſar* with his Romans hauing inuaded and ſubdued them, made them tributarie vnto the Roman Empvre, vnder which they continued the ſpace of almoſt fyue hundreth yeares, during which tyme they were gouerned by their own tributarie kings, or by ſuch liſtenants as the Roman Emperors appointed ouer them, yeilding thus vnto the Romans a conſtrayned ſubiection, and from them again receauing protection, vntil ſuch tyme as the puiſſance of that monarchie began to declyne, and that by reaſon of the inuaſion made vpon them, euen in their own proper and naturall countrey of *Italie*, by cruel *Atilia* king of the Hunnes, they were forced to giue ouer and relinquish the rule and protection of the Britaines; euen at ſuch tyme as the Britaines were moſte vnable to defend themſelues from their bordering enimyes, the confederated Scótiſhmen and Piſtes: yea by the Romás themſelues were they made the leſſe able, in that they had drawn great troops of their beſt men of armes for their ayd and ſeruice out of *Britaine* into other partes, and weakned they alſo were becauſe that great multitudes had bin conſumed

by pestilence. Thus notwithstanding the moste grievous complaints made vnto the Romans by the Britaines to bee by them asisted, they were now of them vtterly neglected, & left vnto their own weakest abillitie : and so the Roman domination ouer *Britaine*, that first began vnder *Iulius Caesar*, the first of all the Roman Emperors, now ceased and took an end vnder the Emperor *Valentinian*, the third and last of that name.

David
Chamber.

Nyne thousand
Saxons
first brought
into Britaine
as saith Pom-
pilius.

The Britaines beeing thus abandoned, elected *Vortiger* to bee their king, who hauing lost as some Scottish writers reporte, twentie thousand men with *Guitellus* their captain, in a battail against the Scots and Pictes, who therein lost but about fowre thousand, was resolved to haue fled into *Cambria*, but beeing by his counsel and nobillitie diswaded, he with their aduice did send ouer for succour into *Germanie*, vnto the Saxons: then the moste renowned & warlyk people of all the Germans. His request they condescended vnto, and *Hingistus* and *Horsus*, two bretheren, and most valiant Saxon Princes, had the conduction of these forces ouer into *Britaine* in three great and long shippes, then called keeles; to the number of nyne thousand men. And because these noble gentlemen were the very first bringers & conductors of the anceters of Englishmen into *Britaine* from whence vnto their posteritie the possession of the countrey hath ensued, I thought fit heer in pourtraiture to set down their first arryual; therewithall to shew the manner of the apparel which they wore, the weapons which they vsed, and the banner or ensigne first by them there spred in the feild.

THE

OF THE ENGLIS-SAXONS IN BRIT. II7
 THE ARRYVAL OF THE FIRST ANCETERS
 of Englishmen out of Germanie into Britaine.



They arryued at *Ippedsfleet* now called *Ebsfleet*,
 in the Ile of *Tanet* in *Kent*, in the yeare of our Lord
 447. and in the second yeare of the raign of king
Vortiger. And albeit venerable *Bede* wryteth that in
 the yeare of our Lord 429. *Marcianus* raigned with
Valentinian, in whose tyme he saith the Saxons were

sent for by king *Vortiger* into *Britaine*, yet saith hee not that they arryued there in the said 429. yeare, but in the tyme of the raigne of *Valentinian*, which continued thirty yeares, vntil such tyme as by the practise (as is thought) of *Maximus* hee was killed.

Saxons came
into Britain
and franckes
into Gallia
much about
a tyme.

Heer by the way it may please the reader to note, that it was but somewhat more then twentie yeares before the coming of the Saxons into *Britaine*, that the Frankes (of whome in some of the fore-going chapters I haue spoken) beeing a people also of *Germanie*, bordering neighbours vnto the Saxons, and speaking in effect one same language with them, did vnder *Faramond* their leader and elected king, enter into the countrey of the *Gaules*: where they seated themselves, and became in fyne the occasion that the whole countrey after their name of Frankes was called *Frankenryc*, that is to say, the kingdome or possession of the Frankes, and since by abreuiation *France*. For in the raigne of *Clodion*, the sonne and next successor vnto the afore-named king *Faramond*, who (as is aboue said) conducted the Frankes out of *Germanie* into *Gallia*, Prince *Hingistus* conducted the Saxons in lyke manner out of *Germanie* into *Britaine*.

Prince Hingistus and
his brother
Horsus first
bringers of
Englishmen
into Britain.

Witarpius.

Hingistus when first hee there arryued was a goodly yong Gentleman vnder the age of thirtie yeares: of a maruelous great cowrage and of an excellent wit; and both hee and his brother *Horsus* were the more renowmed for that they had bin brought vp in the seruice of the aforenamed Emperor *Valentinian*. They were of very noble descent, their father *Wetass*, beeing the sonne of *Wecta* and *Wecta* sonne vnto the great renowmed Prince *Woden* from
whome

OF THE ENGLISH-SAXONS IN BRIT. 119
whome many kings did afterward deryue their of-
spring, and in regard of his great honor did duely
from him obserue their degrees and descents.

And heer I cannot but wonder at *Occa Scarlensis* *Occa Scar-
lensis.*
of whose litle credit I haue spoken in the second
chapter, who telleth vs first of two brethren called
Hingistus & *Horsus* the sonnes as he saith of *Vdulphe*
Haron duke of *Friesland*, and that *Hingistus*, who
was two yeares elder then his brother *Horsus*, was
borne in the yeare of our Lord 361. by which ac-
compt *Hingistus* when in the yeare of our Lord 447
hee came vnto the ayd of king *Vortiger*, must haue
bin 86. yeares old, & so a very vnlykly man to beare
armes. He further telleth vs of other two bretheren,
also called *Hingistus* and *Horsus*, sonnes as he saith,
vnto *Odilbald* king of *Friesland* and borne in the
yeare 441. who hee saith went also into *Britaine*, to
reuenge the deathes of the aforesaid *Hingistus* and
Horsus, and were both slain; but their soldiers not-
withstanding beeing animated by *Gorimond* an Irish
captain (who with many Irishmen was ioyned with
them) to reuenge the deaths of their princes; they
fought so valiantly that they obtayned the victorie,
and made *Gorimond* their king: after whose death
they chose one of their own natiō, vnto that dignitie.
Lo heer wee see that *Occa* hath not only found out
other parents for our *Hingistus* & *Horsus* then *Vene-
rable Bede* (though he liued 200. yeares before *Occa*)
doth name, or thē before by any other author we haue
heard of, but hee fyndeth out a second *Hingistus* & a
secōd *Horsus*, to reuēge the deathes of the former, &
deserueth in both his relations to bee believed a lyke.

Hingistus
of whence
he was.

Chro. Saxon

The ancient
armes of
Saxonic.

The D. of
Sauoy de
scended from
Saxonic.

Hingistus was doubtlesse a Prince of the chiefest blood and nobillitie of *Saxonic* and by birth of *Angria* in *VVestphalia* vulgarly of old tyme called *Westfeilding* (wherein vnto this present a place retayneth the name of *Hengster-hoit*) his wapen or armes beeing a leaping whyte horse or *Hengst* in a red feild; or according to our mixed manner of blasing armes in broken french and english put together, A horse argent rampant in a feild gules: which was the ancient armes of *Saxonic*, that the chief Princes and dukes haue there long since for many ages together borne. And albeit the dukes of *Saxonic* haue of later yeares changed that cote, yet doth *Henry Iulius* now duke of *Brunswyke* (a moste ancient Saxon Prince) who somtyme bore the whyte horse in a red feild, now beare the whyte horse for his creast, hauing for the chief cote of his armes, the two Leopards, which by *Richard Cordelion* king of *England* was giuen vnto his anceter *Henry the Lion*, duke of *Saxon*, who had maryed with *Mathilda* thesaid kings sister, & by the Emperor *Frederic Barbarossa*, had bin bereft of his armes and tytles of honor. Moreouer *Charles Emanuel* the now duke of *Sauoy*, who is lyneally descended from the ancient princes of the chief hows of *Saxonic*, by prince *Beral* who came out of *Saxonic* into *Sauoy* in the yeare of our Lord 998. and was the third sonne of *Hughe* duke of *Saxonic*, which *Hughe* was brother vnto the Emperor *Orho* the third, doth yet beare for one of his cotes thesaid leaping whyte horse in a red feild.

And very lykely it is that this armes was in ancient tyme of paganism espetially chosen in regard
of

OF THE ENGLISH-SAXONS IN BRIT. 121
of some diuine excellencie belieued to bee in this
beast, for the old Germans as saith *Tacitus*, had a cer-
tain opinion, that a whyte horse neuer hauing bin
brydled or any way vsed, but taken out of the woods,
and put to draw a sacred chariot, the Priest or Prince
following it; did by the neighings thereof foretel
things to come.

Vnto their armes their names of *Hingistus* and
Horsus did also alude, beeing in their language *Hengst*
and *Horse*; and *Synonuma*, that is, both signifying one
thing, to wit, a *Horse*. A *Hengst* properly in the teuto-
nic is a *stoãd horse*: a *Horse*, beeing anciëtly therein, & A *Hengst*
yet with vs, the general name of that kynd of beast. is a *Hingst*,
If some wil say that in *Germanie* a *Horse* is called a *horse*.
Ros, and in the *Netherlands* a *Pert*, I answere it is
true, but it was anciently in the *Netherlands* also cal-
led a *Horse*; & somtymes *Orse*; and at this day a litter
is in the *Netherlands* called an *Orsbare*; which beeing
written according to our English ortography, is a
Horsbarow; which were yf wee so vsed it, a name
more fit & intelligible in our tounge then a *Horslitter*.

The ancient pagan *Germans* espetially the noble
men, as both *Crantzius* and other wryters testify, did *Crantzius*.
sometymes take the names of beasts, as one would bee
called a *Lion*, another a beare, another a wolf: and so
in lyke manner had these two aforenamed princes
their denominations. Very probable it is that these
two Saxon leaders with their forces, which were of
VVestphalia, *Friesland* and *Holland*, did (as the chro-
nicles of *Holland* affirme) let forth from thence &
so saile ouer into *Britaine*, for as I haue said in the *Chro. Ba-*
third chapter, the inhabitants of these prouinces were *taulz*.

allfomtyme generally called by the name of Saxons.

Hingistus and his brother with their forces beeing arryued in the Ile of *Tanet* in *Kent*, in the yeare of our Lord before specified, and the second of the raigne of king *Vortiger*, as before hath also bin said; were vnto the said king greatly welcome, and marching against his northern enemyes the Scottish and the Pictes, valiantly incountred them in battail and ouerthrew them, whereby they gayned vnto themselves most great honor and reputation. Heeruppon Hingistus desired of king *Vortiger*, somuch grownd as with the skin of a bul he could compasse about; which hauing obtayned, hee did cut out a large bulles hyde into very small thongs, leauing them stil fast the one vnto the other, and hauing by this meanes brought the whole skin as it weare into one thong of a great length, he laid it in cōpasse on the grownd, & so accordingly laid the foundatiō of a castle which hee finished and called *Thong-castle*, situated neer vnto *Sidigborne* in *Kent*, in which castle he afterward feasted king *Vortiger* as anon I wil declare. This castle thus buylded, Hingistus sent home woord into his countrey of *Saxonie* as well of the good successe hee had had against king *Vortigers* enemyes as of the goodnes and fertillitie of the soyle, and the lack of warrly cowrage in the *Britains*. Whereupon a greater nauy and number of men was sent ouer out of *Saxonie* vnto him, and these consisted of the three principall sortes of Saxon people, to wit, of those that without distinction bare the name of Saxons. Of those that were perticularly called the English. And of those that were called the Vites.

The

The name of Saxons was notwithstanding general to all, and thereof in the first chapter I have already spoken, but of the name of English & whence it should bee deryued, I wil heer first begin to speak. From whence then this may haue proceeded the coniectures haue bin diuers, albeit few or none do carrie lyklyhood of truth.

It should seem by the woords of *Venerable Bede*, Beda Hist. Eccle. Angl. that they were called English after their countrey called *England* (wherein they inhabyted long before they came into *Britaine*) the which is thought to haue stood in the middest between the Vytes & the Saxons: and *M. Cambden*, out of one *Ethelwerdus* an ancient author fyndeth reason to bee of opinion that this countrey in deed was the very old *England*. Old Englād. And that there is such a countrey as was called *England*, and that before euer such a name was imposed vpon any parte of *Britaine*, *Venerable Bede* as before is shewed, doth also testify. And sundry other wryters, as namely *Crantzius*, who plainely calleth it *Anglia*, that is to say, *England*, It was in tyme long past See more hecrof towards the end of the first chapter. the ancient habitation of the Saxons, from whence by the Danes they were expelled, and euer since hath it remayned in Danish possession. It lyeth between *Iuitland* and *Holsasia*, or to distinguish the bounds thereof more particularly, between *Flensbourg* and the flud *Sly*, whereon the town of *Sleswyk* is situated: and from this place saith *Henricus Rantzouius*, Rantzouius In his periode of Em-pyres. the Saxons went, that passed ouer the sea vnto the ayd of the Britains, so naming them by the generall name of Saxons, though otherwise they were called English and of some English-Saxons.

About the
name of
England.

But now whence this name of *England*, and consequently of *English* should come, is to bee considered. *Saxo Gramaticus* wil needs haue it to haue had that name of one *Angul*, who he saith was brother vnto *Dan* the first king of *Denmark*, but *Albertus Crantz* beeing offended at his folly, telles him that *England* had the name of *Britaine*, many hundreth yeares after this *Angul* was dead. Marrie yf *Saxo* met it of the first or old *England*, heer-before spoken of, and not of our present countrey of *England*, hee is the more excusable, but it therefore followeth not that it is true, for other reasons that do withstand it. Very apparent it is, that many countries haue aptly taken their names from the very nature of their soile, or from the manner of their situation, whereof I could shew sundry examples: and moſte manifest it is that in the ancient Teutonic as wel as in the moderne, either high or low, the woord *Eng*, signifieth narrow or strait, and somtymes a nook, and yf a man at this present should aske any Duitsh-man in some language besydes his own, that he vnderstandeth; how hee would in his own language call a narrow countrey or region, he would straightwayes answere and say *England* or *Engeland*: not vnfitly then may old *England* by the litle or narrow situation thereof, in a very nook of land bordering vpon *Mare Balticum*, haue had at the first in the ancient Teutonic language that denomination: and not only this old *England* whereof wee speak, but our present countrey of *England* also growing to a narrownesse or straitnes, both towards the north and towards the west, doth not disagree from this reason; though perhaps

England
what the
name signi-
feth.

perhaps another reason might also moue king Egbert to cause it to bee called *England*, whereof I shal take occasion to speak more afterward. It was anciently written *Engaland*, and corruptly *Englaland*, and now both in the high & low duitsh it is comonly written *Engeland*, and thusmuch about the name thereof shal heer suffice.

King Egbert
first caused
our cōtrey
to bee called
England.

Now as touching the third sorte of Saxon people, which were called the *Vytes*. Some wil haue them called *Iuites* and not *Vytes*, and others wil haue them called *Geates* or rather *Gothes*, but with these later I meane not to meddle for that they ouershoot the mark too farr; and so wil neuer hit it. Venerable Bede calleth them plainly *vutes*, and noteth the Ile of *Wight*, which yet retayneth that name of them, to haue bin besydes other places of the continent, their habitation. Moreouer some of these *vutes*, as Sebastian Munsterus declareth, went and inhabited among the mountaines that deuyde *Germanie* from *Italie*. And these by this occasion (as plainly it seemeth) were called the *Hil-vites*, for a mountain which now in the Teutonic is called a *Berghe*, was heertofore called a *Hil*, as also a *Dun*, and wee yet from thence retain the name of *Hil*, in our language: and to the countrey of the *Hil-vites*, the latinists giuing a name drawn from the Teutonic sound, haue made it *Heluetia*, and the German name of *Suitsers*, that is to say the *vites* or *vitser* (for *r* in the end of a woord doth in the high duitsh diuers tymes expresse the plurall number, as *s* doth with *vs*) doth also heerunto concur. The *f* beeing set before the *v*, or double *v*, is often in the Teutonic vsed for abreuiation of the article *the*, as

Munsterus
libro tertio.

Hil-vites
otherwise
called Swit-
sers.

Vites and
Iuites all
one.

s'winter for the winter, and sundry the lyke. But I haue reason to bee of opinion that ~~Iuites~~ ~~vites~~, is all one, and so no man deceaued in taking of any of both to bee right, for the v beeing heer taken as a vowel, and not as a consonant, it is u-ites, and so by pronounciation easely brought to bee all one in sound with Iuites if the i u, bee sounded as in the Teutonic it is, which in deed is the more naturall and apt sound thereof, that is, as wee Englishmen would sound it yf the true writing were with y-u.

The vites
why so na-
med.

And as for the reason, why this people had particularly this name, I take it to haue proceeded of a certain swiftnes or agillitie, which they accustomed themselues vnto, both in warr and in hunting, more then did the others.

Vhitarpius.

With this troop, consisting of these three aforesaid fortes of German people, came ouer the moste faire Lady *Romena*, which some Saxon authors call *Ronixa*, who as our chroniclers say, was the daughter of *Hingistus*, but I fynd in some of that countrey wryters from whence shee came, that shee was his neece, which is the lykelyer of both, considering that *Hingistus* is not lyke at that tyme to haue bin old enough to haue had such a daughter, and that he was as yong when hee came into *Britaine*, as before hath bin said, may appeer by the many yeares that he liued after his coming thether. As this lady was very beautifull, so was shee of a very comely deportement, and *Hingistus* hauing enuyted king *Vortiger* to a supper, at his new buylded castle, caused that after supper shee came foorth of her chamber into the kings presence, with a cup of gold filled with wyne, in her hand, and making

making in very seemly manner a low reuerence vnto the king, said with a pleasing grace and countenance (in our ancient language) *Wæs heal hlaforð Cyning*/ which is, beeing rightly expounded according to our present speech, *be of health Lord king*/ for as *was* is our verb of the preterimperfect tēle or preterperfect tēse signifying *haue bin*/ so *wæs*/ beeing the same verb in the imperatiue mood and now pronounced *war*/ is as much to say as *grow*/ *bec*/ or *become*; & *wæs*-*heal* by corruption of pronounciation afterward became to be *wassaille*. The king not vnderstanding what shee said, demaunded it of his chamberlaine, who was his interpreter, and when hee knew what it was, he asked him how he might again answere her in her own language, whereof beeing informed, he said vnto her, *Drinc heal*/ that is to say, *Drink health*. Of the beauty of this lady the king took so great lyking that hee became exceedingly enamoured with her, and desyred to haue her in mariage; which *Hingistus* agreed vnto, vpon condition, that the king should giue vnto him the whole countrey of *Kent*, wherevnto he willingly condescended, & deuorcing himself from his former married wyf, married with the Saxon lady *Rowena*.

Hingistus hauing thus by the kings gift obtayned all *Kent* (which before that tyme with ſowhat more annexed vnto it, had bin deuyded into fowre pettie kīgdomes) hee made it now one entyre kingdome, by taking vpon himself the name & title of king thereof. And beeing now placed in his own realme, which hee ment to keep & defend, sent ouer into *Germanie*, for more Saxon forces, to bee employed in the north partes against the aforenamed enemyes of the Britās,

v *vassaille*
what it
rightly sig-
nifieth.

Hingistus
becometh
king of kē.

A second
supply of
Saxō forces.

which accordingly were brought ouer, to the number as some wryte of 5000. men, vnder the leading and conduct of *Occa* and *Ebusa*, neer kinsmen vnto king *Hingistus*, and these both in seruice in the feild and in garnisons in the holdes, were employed as is aforesaid.

The beginning of the breach between the Britans and the Saxons.

The Britans in the mean tyme, seeing king *Vortiger* not only for the loue of *Rowena* (a pagan woman) to haue left his lawfull and christian wyf, but to bee altogether adicted vnto her nation, and not only to haue giuen vnto king *Hingistus*, the free possession of all *Kent*, but to haue added vnto that kingdom, those partes which wee now call *Middlesex*, *Essex*, and *Suffolk*, there grew in the Britans a great auersion from their king, and no lesse hatred vnto the Saxons, which the Saxons alre dy perceauing, and fynding on their partes some causes of complaint, as the want of due payment, notwithstanding the great seruices they had donne them, the lack of necessarie prouision due vnto them, and the lyke; the fyre of hatred deeply kindled on either syde, & from loue and freindship they grew into mortall hate and enmytie. And king *Hingistus* beeing a pagan and not acquainted with the precepts of christianitie, perhaps was glad to haue occasion by this breach to get from them what hee could: though yet at the first by taking the kings parte, to help to chastice his people as his disobedient subiects.

Rebeldes against their willes.

The Britains heervpon seeing themselves thus to bee made rebeldes against their willes, sought eftsouones to bee the subiects of a better king, and deposing their king *Vortiger*, elected *Vortimer* his eldest sonne

sonne vnto his fathers dignitie. King *Vortimer* no sooner aduanced to the crown and dignitie of his father, began open hostilitie against the Saxons, and belydes sundry skirmishes, had with them fower battails or foughten feilds. In the first whereof which was at *Ailesford* in *Kent*, although the Saxons kept the feild, yet was *Horsus* brother vnto king *Hingistus* there slaine, howbeit his death was recompensed with the slaughter of *Categerne* the brother of king *Vortimer*. To bee brief, the Saxons by this aforementioned british king weare so weakned and pressed, that they not only retyred into the Ile of *Tanet*, but king *Hingistus* himself went ouer for a supply of more forces, and albeit some are of opinion that after his first arryuall in *Britaine*, hee neuer crossed the seas back againe into *Saxonie*, yet should it seeme by others that he did, and *Iohn Dowza* in his verses in praise of *Leyden* in *Holland*, saith, that *Hingistus* is thought at such tyme as hee returned victorious (as hee telles vs) out of *Britaine*, did lay the foundation of the castle of that town, which carieth no lyklyhood of truth, for that *Hingistus* returned not victorious, neither had he reason to stay there about the buylding of castles. During the tyme of the absence of king *Hingistus*, the Queen *Rowena* (as some haue written) found the meanes that king *Vortimer*, was poysoned, after hee had reigned about six yeares.

The sonne beeing now dead, king *Vortiger* the deposed father obtained again the kingdome, & soone after king *Hingistus* returned with his new forces into *Britaine*. But fynding a great & vnexpected alteration in this king, he was not only forced to make
R freindship

King *Vortiger* deposed & his sonne *Vortimer* made king.

Horsus the brother of *Hingistus* slaine.

King *Hingistus* returneth into *Saxonie* for more forces.

King *Vortiger* the second tyme made k became alienated from the Saxons.

freindship with the Scottish and the Pictes (yf his peace with them was not made a litle before) but to prepare euen by force of armes to defend himself against his new turnd enemy & former freind; who had now gathered a strong power of Britas to go against him in the feild. But whether it were that he thought himself to weak, or that hee rather sought to bee espetially reuenged vpon the British nobillitie which hee might presume to haue drawn the affection of king *Vortiger* from him, or both, true it is that hee rather deuysed to take vp the matter by treatie then by battaile, and the tyme and place therevnto appointed, beeing *May-day*, and *Salisburie plaine*, both these kings accordingly met; either accompned with his chiefeft lordes and followers, and there had king *Hingistus* prepared them a feast, and after the Britans were wel whitled with wyne he fell to taunting and girding at them, wherevpon blowes insued, and the British nobillitie there present, beeing in all three hundreth, were all of them slaine, as *William of Malmesburie* reporteth, though others make the number more, and say that the Saxons had each of them a seax (a kynd of crooked knyfe) closely in his poket. and that at the watchwoord *Nem cowe seaxes*, which is as in the first chapter hath bin said, take your seaxes, they suddainly and at vnawares slew the Britans.

Two kings
and their
nobillitie
meet at a
bloodie
banquet.

Britains
massacred
by the Saxons.

Some yeares before the coming of the Saxons into Britaine; a lyke meeting hapned in Germanie, betwee the Saxons and the Thuringers; at which meeting, the Saxons by the plot and practise of the Thuringers had all bin slaine, yf they had not before-hand suspected

suspected fals measure; and bin secretly prouided for it, and thereby made their partie good with the Thuringers, when as they thought to haue massacred them. And heerof as it should seeme, retayning memorie, they did peradventure vpon suspition of such a lyke practise entended against them by the Britains, come thus secretly prouided of weapōs, wherewith, beeing in drink and falling in quarrel, they comitted this bloodie act. An act which albeit that it may be held for a lesse fault among such as were pagans, then had they bin christians, yet not in any to bee allowed, nor by any to bee excused vnlesse by *Machiauel*.

King *Vortiger* vpon this massacre of his british nobillitie was seased vpon and detayned prisoner, and to purchase his libertie was faine to confirme vnto king *Hingistus* his former donation of *Kent*, and the afore-named prouinces; and to ad vnto them to the encrease of the said Saxon kings dominion, the prouinces that at this present beare the names of *Sussex*, and *Norfolk*; so as albeit hee bare the name of king of *Kent*, yet conteyned his dominion fyue of the other countries, & so fix in all. And when hee had raigned (though not without often warres and troobles) the space of thirtie and fowre yeares, he dyed honorably, as wryteth *Marianus*. Others that wryte hee dyed a violent death do much differ among themselves, and so each ouerthroweth the others credit, some say hee was slayn in battail, others that hee was behedded, others that hee was burnt. But the reporte of *Marianus* (besydes other good reasons to approoue it, ouer and aboue the other wryters contradictions) doth apeere to bee true, and espetially by the

King Hingistus raigned 34. yeares.

peace-able entrance and raigne of his sonne *Oese*, who next succeeded him in his kingdome.

King Vortiger his miserable end.

King *Vortiger* after the accord made between him and king *Hingist* as is aforesaid, retyred himself into *Wales*, and there buylt a castle, wherein hee afterward came to a miserable end, for the castle beeing set on fyre hee therein was burnt.

The Britans then elected to raigne ouer them in his steed *Aurelius Ambrose*, whose raigne lasted thirty and two yeares.

After him raigned
Uther Pendragon, eighteen yeares.

Next succeeded the famous king
Arthur, whose raigne endured twentie & six yeares.

Then *Constantine*, who raigned three yeares.

Aurelius Conan, thirtie and three yeares.

Vortiporus, fowre yeares.

Malgo, fyue yeares.

Careticus, three yeares.

Cadwane, twentie and two yeares.

Cadwalin, forty and eight yeares.

Cadwalladar, three yeares.

During the raignes of all these eleauen kinges, which together in number of yeares amounteth vnto 197. that is to say, from the death of king *Vortiger*, to the death of *Cadwalladar* the last king of the Britans, whose raigne ended in the yeare of our Lord 685. there began in *Britaine* six kingdomes more of the Saxons, so as in all there were seauen.

Seauē kingdomes of the Saxons in Britain.

The first as before hath bin shewed was the kingdome of *Kent*.

That

That which began next after, was the kingdome of the *South-Saxons*.

The third of the *East-Engliff*.

The fowrth of the *West-Saxons*.

The fift of the *East-Saxons*.

The fixt of the *Northambers*.

The feauenth which last of all took begining was that of the *Mercians*.

Thus the Saxons who at the first came vnto the ayd of the Britans, became about two hundreth yeares after, to bee the possessors and sharers of this best parte of the whole Ile of *Britaine* among themselues. And as there lāguage was altogether differēt frō that of the Britains, so left they very few cities, townes, villages, passages, riuers, woods, feilds, hilles or dales, that they gaue not new names vnto : such as in their own language were intelligible, and either giuen by reason of the situation or nature of the place, or after some place in some sorte lyke vnto it in *Germanie*, from whence they came. As the name of *Oxford* or *Oxenford*, on the riuier of *Thames*, after the town of lyke name in *Germanie*, situated on the riuier of *Oder*, Our *Hereford* neer vnto *wales*, after *Hernord* in *Westphalia*, and so in lyke manner may bee said of *Stafford*, *Swinford*, *Bradford*, *Norden*, *Newark*, *Bentham*, *Oxenbridge*, *Buchurst*, *Sconethorp*, *Holt*, *Mansfeild*, *Swinfeild*, *Dauentrie*, *Hamstede*, *Radclif*, *Rosendale*, and a great number more of places in our countrey, that yet retayne the names of places in *Germanie*, and the *Netherlands* (albeit the ancient orthography may in some of them bee some litle varied) as heer to bee reconed vp would bee tedious.

Names of
all places in
Britain chā-
ged by the
Saxons.

As touching the name of our moſte ancient chief and famous citie, it could neuer of *Luds-town* take the name of *London*, becauſe it had neuer anciently the name of *Luds-town*, neither could it, for that *town* is not a britiſh but a Saxon woord, but yf it took any appellation after king *Lud* it muſt then haue bin called *Caer-lud* & not *Luds-town*, but conſidering of how litle credit the relations of *Geffrey* of *Monmouth* are, who from *Lud* doth deryue it, it may rather bee thought that hee hath imagyned this name to haue come from king *Lud* becauſe of ſome neernes of ſound, for our Saxon anceters hauing diuers ages before *Geffrey*, was borne called it by the name of *London*, he not knowing from whence it came, might ſtraight imagin it to haue come from *Lud*, & therefore ought to bee *Caer-Lud*, or *Luds-town*, as after him others called it, & ſome alſo of the name of *London*, in britiſh ſound made it *L'hundain*, both appellations as I am perſwaded, beeing of the britans, firſt taken vp and vſed after the Saxons had giuen it the name of *London*.

But heer I cannot a litle maruel how *Tacitus* (or any ſuch ancient writer) ſhould call it by the name of *Londinum* (that hauing bin as it ſhould ſeem the latin name thereof ſince it hath bin called *London*) which appellation hee could neuer haue from the ancient Britains, ſeeing they neuer ſo called it, *Iulius Ceſar*, ſeemeth not to know of the name of *Londinum*, but nameth the citie of the *Trinobantes*, and a maruel it is that between the tyme of *Ceſar* and *Tacitus*, it ſhould come to get the new name of *Londinum*, no man can tel how. To deliuer my coniecture how this
may

may chance to haue hapned, I am loth, for that it may peradventure bee of some disallowed, and so omitting it, I wil leaue the reader to note that the raigne of king *Lud*, from whome some wil needs deriue the name of *London*, was before *Iulius Caesar* came into *Britaine*, and not after, for *Cesar* first entred *Britaine* in the tyme of *Cassibelan*, who was brother vnto *Lud*, and succeeded next after him, and in all lyklyhood yf *Lud* had giuen it after himself the new name of *Caer-lud*, or as some more fondly haue supposed of ~~Luds-town~~ *Iulius Caesar*, who came thether so soone after his death could not haue bin so vtterly ignorant of the new naming of that citie, but haue known it as wel as such wryters as came after him.

Euident it is, that our Saxon anceters called it *Lunden* (in pronountiation sounded *London*) somtymes adding there-unto the ordinarie termination which they gaue vnto all wel fensed cities, or rather such as had fortes or castles annexed vnto them, by calling it *Lundenbirig* & *Lunden-ceaster*, that is, after our later pronountiation *Londonbury* or *Londoncheester*. This name of *Lunden*, since varied into *London*, they gaue it in regard and memorie of the ancient famous ad Metropolitaine citie of *Lunden*, in *Sconeland* or *Sconia*, somtyme of greatest traficque of all the east partes of *Germanie*.

Of the
name of
London.

And I fynd in *Crantzius* that *Eric* the fowrth of that name, king of *Denmark*, went in person to *Roome*, to sollicite *Pope Paschal* the second, that *Denmark* might bee no longer vnder the ecclesiastical iurisdiction of the Bishop of *Hambrough*, but that the Archbish. of *Lunden*, should bee the chief prelate of *Denmark*.

Crantzius
libro 5.

Denmark, Sweden, and Norway, the which in fyne was graunted. As for the name of *Ludgate*, which some wil needs haue so to haue bin called of king *Lud*, & accordingly inferr the name of the citie, I answered that it could neuer of *Lud* be called *Ludgate*, because gate is no british woord, and had it taken name of *Lud* it must haue bin *Ludporth* and not *Ludgate*: but how cometh it that all the gates of London yea and all the streets and lanes of the citie having English names, *Ludgate* only must remain british, or the one half of it, to wit, *Lud*;gate as before hath bin said, beeing English? this surely can haue proceeded of no other cause, then of the lack of heed that men haue taken vnto our ancient language, and *Geffrey of Monmouth* or some other as vntrue in his reports as hee, by hearing only of the name of *Ludgate* might easely fall into the dreame or imagination that it must needs haue had that name of king *Lud*. There is no doubt, but that our Saxon ancerers (as I haue said) changing all the names of the other gates about London did also change this, and called it *Ludgate* otherwise also writtē *Leod=geat* / *Lud* & *Leod* is all one, & in our ancient lāguage folk or people, and so is *Lud=gate* / as much to say as *porta populi*. The gate or passage of the people, & yf a man do obserue it he shal fynd that of all the gates of the citie the greatest passage of the people is through this gate, & yet must it needs haue bin much more in tyme past before *Newgate*, was buylded, which as *M. Iohn Stow* saith, was first buylded about the raigne of king *Henrie the second*. And therefore the name of *Leod=geat* / was aptly giue in respect of the great cōcourse of people through it.

The

That Lud-
gate was not
so called af-
ter king Lud

The citie of *York*, which the ancient Britans *York* why so
called *Caer-Efroc*, our anceters called *Euerwyc* & named.
Eberwyc, which by vulgar abreuiation might come
to bee *bozic* or *bozic*, and so lastly *York*. *Euer* or
Eber, is in our ancient language a wyld-bore (though
this later name bee English also) *wyc*, is a refuge or
retreat, and it may bee that it had of our anceters this
appellation, as beeing the refuge or retreat from the
wyld bores which heertofore may haue bin in the
forest of *Gautries*, which is within a myle of that
town, and the more lyke it is, for that there remaines
yet a tolle called *guyd-taw*, which is paid for cattel at
Bowdumbar, a gate of the citie so called, and was first
graunted for the payment of guydes that conducted
men (by lyke to saue them from beeing hurt by this
cruel beast) through the said forest. To deliuer in lyke
sort the reason of our anceters denominations, of the
other cities and townes, as of these two the chief of
the Realme, would heer make to long a digression.
But in that they first comig to the ayd (as is aforesaid
of the Britans) should make themselves possessors
of the best parte of *Britaine* (whereof these changes
of the former appellations haue ensued) is not a thing
altogether so strange, yf wee consider the sundry ex-
amples of the lyke in other countries, where strangers
hauing bin by the inhabitants called in to bee their
helpers, haue afterward become to bee their masters.

The Autunians and Sequanians inhabitants of Alsistents to
some cantons of the *Gaules*, beeing at war together, distressed
fortune at the first fauoured the Autunians, by which inhabitants,
occasion the Sequanians did seek for ayd of *Ariouist* make them-
a king of *Germanie*, who assisting them; they gat the selues sha-
rers of their
country.

better hand of the Autunians, but *Ariouist*, beholding the forces of the Sequanians in respect of his own to bee but feeble, made himself in recompence of his trauals possessor of the best territorie they had. The Autunians beeing on the other syde agrieued that their enemyes by meanes of their new freinds had preuailed against them, requyred ayd of the Romans, and obtayned the assistance of *Iulius Caesar*, who when hee preceaued both the one and the other through their diuisions to enclyne to ruine, in fine not only made them, but all the rest of the Gaules tributaries to the people of Roome.

Moreouer *Baldwyn* surnamed the leper, king of Ierusalem, left for his heyre and successor another *Baldwyn*, beeing his nephew, and sonne vnto *Sybilla* his sister by her first husband (for at that tyme shee was wyf vnto *Guy* of *Lusignan*) of whome for that hee was yong, he left *Raymond* earle of *Tripoli*, to haue the tutorship. The aforesaid king beeing no sooner dead, *Raymond* made away his pupil, in intention to make himself king, but *Guy* of *Lusignan* in the right of his wyf withstanding it, ciuil warres arose between them, and *Raymond* fynding himself the weakest, called in *Saladin* Souldan of *Aegypt*, for his assistance. This Aegyptian espying his oportunitie, took without any resistance the citties of *Axorton*, *Ascalon*, *Berithe*, and *Ierusalem* it self, and in conclusion the whole realme, which with so great trauaile and coste the christians had before recouered.

A lyke third example I wil heer set down and so returne to my former matter. The Grecians beeing in popular dissention, one sorte willing to aduance vnto their
their

their Emperiall crown *Iohn Cantacufsin*, & the other sorte *Iohn Palleologus*, his sonne in law, but the sonne fynding himself of least abillitie, sent for ayd vnto *Orcan* at that tyme king of the Turckes, who with his forces passing ouer at *Helespont* so preuailed, that hee in deed made him Emperor, but by this meanes, himself and his Turckes first began to get a taste of the sweetnes of *Europe*, which before that tyme they neuer knew, and for his first footing therein he made himself the sure possessor of the citie of *Galliopolis*: and after his death *Amurate* his successor took *Philippopolis* and *Andrinopolis*, and neuer ceased vntil he had gotten that whole Empyre, and chased out *Palleologus* whome his predeceffor had installed: but now to returne to our matter.

Vnto *Hingistus* in the kingdome of *Kent*, succeeded (as before hath bin said) his sonne *Oesc*. To *Oesc* his sonne *Occa*. To *Occa* his sonne *Ermeryc*, and vnto *Ermeryc*, his sonne *Ethelbert*.

This king more blessed then all his predeceffors, was the first of all the kings of our Saxon anceters that euer receaued the Christian faith: the which faith hee right happely receaued, about an hundreth & fiftie yeares after the arriual of *Hingistus* first king of *Kent*, out of *Saxonie* into *Britain*. He was married vnto the Lady *Bertha*, the daughter as I take it of *Clotharius* the first of that name king of *France*, and not of *Cherebert* his sonne and successor, for that as the french Chronicles reporte, *Cherebert* raigning but a shorte space, dyed without issue. This Quene beeing a christian, as were her parents; hee permitted vnto her the free vse of her christian religion, and the ha-

King Ethelbert the first
Christned
English king

uing of the chaste and vertuous Bishop *Luidheard*, about her, as also her christian seruants, by whose good examples hee could not but bee much edified: and by such his charitable permittance of them he peraduenture obtayned the ensuing fauor which of Almighty God hee soone after receaued, which was his own christianitie.

English pagan
childre
so bee sold
in Roome.

Some few yeares before hee receaued the said faith, it hapned in the tyme that *Aella* raigned king of *Deira*, somtyme a parte of the kingdome of the Northumbers, that certaine english children of that countrey (whether taken in warre & so transported away by enimyes, or that it were tolerable among pagan people somtymes to sel away their children) were brought to *Roome* to bee sold (as captiue heathen people are wont to bee among christians) and standing there in the market; a certaine reuerend religious father named *Gregorie*, beeing a man, as witnesseth *Venerable Bede*, of the greatest vertue & learning of his tyme, coming thether & beholding them to bee of a very faire complexion, ruddy & whyte with yellowish haire, demaunded of the marchant that had them to sell of whence they were, which beeing told him, hee asked yf they were christened, it was answered that they were not, whereat fetching a deep sigh, he said; alas that the author of darknesse should yet detaine people of such bright countenāces in his possession, & that men of so faire faces should inwardly carrie such fowl soules. Demaūding by what name this people were called, answere was made him that they were called *Angles*, or rather (yf it were pronounced as they then called themselves,

(selues) *Engelisse*, that is to say English. The reuerend father perceauing this name to alude vnto the name of *Angeli* in Latin, said, verely not without cause are they called *Angles*, for they haue faces lyke *Angels*, & meet it weere that such men were made partakers & coheyyres with the *Angels* in heauen, then demanded he the name of the prouince from whence they came, and it was answered him; they were of *Deira*, that is wel quoth hee, for they are to bee deliuered *de ira Dei*, that is, from the ire of God, & called to the mercie of Christe. What is the name quoth hee, of the king of that countrey, it was answered, that his name was *Aella*, vnto which name also alluding, *Alleluia* quoth hee, must be sounded in that princes dominions, to the praise of Almighty God his creator.

And beeing stricken with much compassion, to behold that such angelicall people in respect of their great beautie and comlynesse, should continew the bondslaues of the fowl feynd of hell; he went vnto *Pelagius* the second, who then was Pope, desyring of him that some ministers of the woord of God might bee sent into *Britain*, to preach vnto the pagan English people, the faith of *Iesus Christ*; offring himself to bee one of that number that would in person vndertake the iourney, yf so it pleased the Pope to allow thereof. Some that haue written the lyfe of *S. Gregorie* do reporte, that hee obtayned of the Pope, this his pious desyre, and that hee departed from *Roome*, and was three dayes onward on his iourney towards *Britaine*, and that the people of *Roome*, when they had gotten knowlege thereof,

S. Gregorie
was on his
way 3. dayes
iorney to
haue come
into England
in person.

were exceeding sorowful, and went vnto the Pope, and in lamentable manner declared how great a losse, and detriment it would bee vnto the whole citie to want the presence of so woorthie a person; and therefore besought him, that this reuerend father might bee sent after and called back againe. The Pope considering their so earnest desyre, he there-vnto condescended, and sending after him, caused him to returne againe to *Rome*. *Venerable Bede* is heerin somewhat brief, and only sheweth that albeit the Pope would haue graunted him leaue to haue gō, yet would not the people suffer him to depart so farr from their cittie of *Rome*. But by this occasion the Pope, now hauing the more knowlege of the lyf learning and vertue of this good religious father, he soone there-vpon aduaunced him to the dignitie of a Cardinal, & himself not long after chancing to dy, this Cardinal was thē (though much against his own mynd) chosen his next successor, and was the first in that sea of the name of *Gregorie*, howbeit he became afterward more renowned by the name of *Gregorie the great*, then of that name the first, and for his great learning and scyence, woorthely reputed one of the fowre chief doctors of the Church.

S. Gregorie
chosen Car-
dinall and
soon after
Pope, sen-
deth *S. Au-*
gustine into
England.

Beeing now Pope and myndefull of the good woork which before hee purposed, moued thereunto (as saith *Venerable Bede*) by the inspiratiō of God, he sent *S. Augustine*, & with him certaine other monkes which feared God, to preach the woord of God vnto the English nation, who after some difficulties and their long iorney, arryued in the Ile of *Tanet* (which as it should seem was at that tyme farr greater then
now

now it is) to the number of almoste fortie persons, beeing somuch encreased , by reason of certaine frenchmen to be their interpreters which according to the appointment of *Pope Gregorie* they brought with them, whereby it is to bee noted , as in the ensuing chapter I shall take occasion to make manifest, that the true and ancient language of the frenchmen, which was at that tyme yet with them in vse, was in effect all one with the ancient language of the Englishmen, which they at that tyme did also speak.

Ancient English and French in effect all one.

Beeing in the aforesaid Ile arryued, they sent vnto king *Ethelbert*, to let him vnderstand both that they were come from *Roome*, and that they had brought with them such doctrine as should bring the receauers and followers thereof to enioy an euerlasting kingdome in heauen, with the true and lyuing God. The king vpon this message comaunded that they should stay in thesaid Ile, hauing all things necessarie ministred vnto them, vntil they should further vnderstand his pleasure. Soon after the king came into the Ile in person, and for that hee supposed yf they were skilfull in forcerie they might perhaps deceaue his view within some hows, hee apointed to sit and giue them audience in the open ayre. And because this acte and message importeth so great a good as the first bringing of the faith of Christ vnto Englishmen, that neuer before believed in him, but were vn baptized pagans and altogether ignorant of the knowlege of the true God, seruing and sacrificing vnto their Idoles *Thor/ Woden/ Friga/* and the lyke, I haue heer according as *Venerable Bede* sets it down, thought good by portraiture more lyuely to deliuer the manner thereof vnto the view of the reader.

OF THE ARRIVAL,
THE MANNER OF THE FIRST BRINGING
and preaching of the Christian faith, vnto
Ethelbert king of Kent.



Beda.

These religious fathers not armed with the force
of the deuil, but strengthened by the power of God,
carying before them in place of a banner, a crosse of
filuer, and the image of our sauour painted in a table,
with inuocating almightie God in singing the lita-
nies

nies approached vnto the kings presence, before whome (beeing set down as hee willed them) they began to preache, both vnto him and his whole traine; the woord of lyf.

Audience
giuen by
king Ethel-
bert vnto S.
Augustyn.

The king hauing heard them answered that they gaue very faire woords and promises, but for that they were vnto him strange and vnknown, hee could not so rashly assent vnto them and forsake the religion which hee and his people had so long obserued, neuerthelesse quoth hee, seeing you are come so farr to imparte vnto vs such knowlege as you take to bee very true and good, wee wil not seek your trooble; but rather with all curtesie receaue you, and yeild vnto you such things as are necessarie for your lyue-lyhood; Neither do wee prohibit you to gain vnto your profession by your preaching as many as you can. He moreouer allowed them in *Canterbury* (the chief citie of his dominion) a place to resyde in, and according to his promis prouyded them of necessaries, & freely licensed them to preach. When a whyle they had thus proceeded, the good king beeing much pleased in beholding there puritie of lyf, and godlynesse of conuersation, and considering also the promisses of the sweet ioyes of heauen (which to bee true they aprooued by the woorking of many miracles) hee did belieue and was baptised, whereby beeing before of the greatest earthly possessions of any his predecessors for that his dominion extended euen vnto the flud *Humber*, hee now became capable (more then they euer were) of the eternall possession of the kingdome of heauen.

A gracious
answere of
king Ethel-
bert.

The con-
uersion of
king Ethel-
bert.

Suche as are desyrous more particularly to vnder-

T

stand

stand of the true manner and forme of the religion, and seruice wherevnto this our first christian English king and his people were conuerted, may for their further satisfaction therein haue recours vnto *Venerable Bede*, and all ancient authors that thereof haue written.

The English-Saxon
kings be-
come chris-
tians.

The frutes
of the con-
uerſion of
our ancient
kings.

Donations
of Land
written in
ryme.

This king thus beeing become a member of the Church of Christe, endeuwred in all he might, to ouerthrow the sinagoge of Sathan, by breaking down the abhominable Idolles before mentioned and such lyke. Whose good ensample through the grace of almighty God, the kings of the other seuerall kingdoms soon after did ensue, as first *Edwyne* king of *Northumberland Carpenwald*, king of the East-English. *Sebert* king of the East-Saxons, *Kynigilds* king of the West-Saxons, *Peda* king of the Mercians & *Ethelulphe* king of the South-Saxons, wherein God so wrought, that in the space of not much aboue threescore yeares, after the conuerſion of king *Ethelbert*, all these were conuerted from paganisme and idolatrie vnto the belief and woorship of our Lord *Iesus Christe*, and the christian faith was publykely preached in all their dominions. Churches Chappels and Monasteries were erected to the seruice of God, they buylded Colleges and Schooles for the encrease of learning. And in subscribing their names to any important wryting (which conteyning some donation was comonly in meeter, belyke to bee kept the better in memorie) the names of a number of witnesses beeing put vnto it, the signe of the crosse was also added. And such was the zeale of our first christian anceters in the propagation of the faith, that they

they neither forgot nor omitted, to labor for the conversion of their ancient countrey men the Saxons remayning in *Germanie*, but sent ouer diuers godly & learned men to preach vnto them the faith of Christ. As vnto the inhabitants of *Friesland* and *Holland*, with *Zealand* and some parte of *Flanders* and *Brabant*, *VVillebrordus*, with eleauen others his assistants. Vnto those of *VWestphalia*, the two *Ewalds*, called according to the colour of their haire, the black, and the whyte; who there were martyred about the yeare of our Lord 687. All these before mentioned, in respect of the naturall affection they caried vnto the countrey men of their anceters & great grandfathers, whose good (through their christian zeale) they moste desyred, were not only therefore most fit, but also for that they spake one same language, with them, as generally all the inhabitants of our countrey, and those of the aforementioned partes at that tyme also did.

VVillebrord was the first Bishop of *Vitregat*.

About 900. yeare past our language and the language of *Saxonic* and the *Netherlands* was all one.

Vpon lyke zeale, *VVinfrid* whome Pope *Gregorie* the second named *Boniface*, did also trauaile in the conversion of the people of *Friesland*, *Thuring*, and *Hessen*: and beeing afterward made Bishop of *Magunce*, he went back again to *Friesland* to prosecute his former woork, and was there murdered.

S. Boniface an Englishman, an Apostle of *Germanie*.

To come now vnto the cause of the generall calling of our anceters by the name of Englishmen, and our countrey consequently by the name of *England*, it is to bee noted, that the seauen pettie kingdomes aforementioned, of *Kent*, *South-saxons*, *East-English*, *West-Saxons*, *East-Saxons*, *Northumbers*, and *Mercians*, came in fine one after another by meanes of

How our countrey came to bee called *England*.

the West-Saxons who subdued and got the sovereignty of all the rest, to bee all brought into one monarchie vnder king *Egbert*, king of the said West-Saxons. This king then considering that so many different names as the distinct kingdomes before had caused was now no more necessarie, and that as the people were all originally of one nation, so was it fit they should againe bee brought vnder one name; & although they had had the generall name of Saxons, as vnto this day they are of the welsh and Irish called, yet did hee rather choose and ordaine that they should bee all called *Englishmen*, as but a parte of them before were called: and that the countrey should bee called *England*. To the affectation of which name of Englishmen, it should seem hee was chiefly moued in respect of Pope *Gregorie* his alluding the name of *Engelise* vnto *Angellyke*. The name of *Engel*, is yet at this present in all the teutonic tounge, to wit, the high and low duitsh, &c. as much to say as *Angel*, and yf a duitshman bee asked how hee would in his language call an *Angellykeman*, hee would answer *ein Engelsch-man*; and beeing asked how in his own language hee would or doth call an *Englishman*, hee can giue no other name for him, but euen the very same that hee gaue before for an *Angellykeman*, that is as before is said, *ein Engelsch-man* / *Engel* beeing in their tounge an *Angel*, and *English*, which they write *Engelsche Angellyke*. And such reason and consideration may haue moued our former kings, vpon their best coine of pure and fyne gold to set the image of an *Angel*, which may bee supposed hath aswel bin vsed before the Norman conquest as since.

Thus

The name of Britans could not bee by them assumed because they were not of that race.

Gregorius Magnus.

The reason of our ancient coyne of Angels.

Thus the name generally of Saxons was by the ordonance of noble king *Egbert*, about the yeare of our Lord eight hundreth brought vnto the general name of Englishmen, which beeing a name of such glorie as the deriuation sheweth it, euer may they with all encrease of honor therein continew.

The countrey was accordingly called *Engaland*, and by abreuiation *England*, a name which wel accordeth vnto two significations; for first it seemeth to haue had it by reason of the English people whose land it now was; and secondly in regard of the forme or fassion thereof; for that it groweth vnto a narrownesse both towards the north and towards the west: the name of the first or old *England*, whereof before I haue spoken hauing risen (as most Page 114. apparently it seemeth) for lyke cause and reason of the streyghtnes or narrownesse thereof.

And whereas *Cornelius Killianus* noteth to haue found in some ancient wrytings that our countrey of *England* was somtyme called *Saxonia Transmarina*; this name in all lyklyhood may haue bin giuen it by some forreyn wryters at such tyme as it was deuyded into seauen kingdomes, before it had the generall name of *England*. In which tyme considering that the whole was possessed by Saxons; forreyn wryters could giue it no name in generall more apt then by calling it by the name of *Saxonia Transmarina*. It also seemeth that some of our anceters when in those dayes they would call it by a generall name did call it *New Saxonie*, and this I gather because I fynd in some of our old wryters, that they called the countrey from whence their Saxon an-
Saxonia
Transmarina.
Noua Saxo-
nia.

NO OF THE ARRIVAL,
ters came into *Britain*, by the name of *Old-Saxonie*, which name they could not giue it, but to make a distinction between that and the new.

Names of
shyres why
so giuen.

The noble king *Egbert*, hauing as hath bin said, giue vnto our countrey the name of *Englād*; the good & rightly renowned king *Alfred*, did afterward deuyde it into shyres, that is as wee now would say, into seuerall shares or partes giuing them such seuerall names as in effect they yet among vs do retain. Some by reason of their situation, as *Kent* for that it is as it were a nook of the countrey: a nook or corner beeing in our ancient language called a kant or cantel; *Canterburie* thereof yet by the Netherlanders called *Cantelbergh*; and this name sounding neer vnto the name of *Cainc*, which that shyre is said to haue had in the tyme of the Britans, the change thereof was the lesse markable. Some he called according to the inhabitants, as *East-seax*, now *Essex*, because it was the easterne habitation of the Saxons. *Middle-seax* for that the Saxons their seated were in the midst of the others that inhabited about them. *Buckingham-shyre*, as it seemeth, of the abundance of buken-trees or as we now pronounce them beachen-trees; and *Barckshyre* of the plentie of beorcken-trees or as wee now call them birchentrees; and so had the other shyres for one or other lyke cause such denomination as we do yet at this present giue them. And whereas *M. Camden* calleth the people of *Middlesex* and *Essex*, by the name of *Trinobantes*, Those of *Buckinghamshyre*, *Bedfordshyre* & *Hertfordshyre*, *Cattieuchlani*; and the inhabitants of the other partes by lyke extrauagant and outworne names,

OF THE ENGLISH-SAXONS IN BRIT. 151

mes, hee is not to bee vnderstood that any of those names do belong to the present inhabitants, or those from whence they are descended, but only to such people as liued there in the tyme of the Britans and Romans, before euer our English-Saxon anceters came there to inhabite.

And whereas notwithstanding the aforesaid general change of denomination made by king Egbert, the Britans haue stil continewed (as is said before) to call vs Englishmen *Sassons*, that is to say *Saxons*, it wil not bee much from our purpose heer to shew the true cause and reason why the Saxons or Englishmen, did neuer call the said former inhabitants of our countrey, *Britans*, as these people called themselves, but by the name of *Welshmen*, as wee yet call them, and this I am the rather enduced to shew because I fynd it to bee very much mistaken, and yet generally to pas currant as a thing without any doubt or contradiction.

The Britans knowing the Saxons to call them *Welsh*, and not knowing the true cause why, could fall into no other accompt, but that *Welsh*, must needs in the Saxon language signify a stranger, and some authors so setting it down others haue followed them in the same opinion: but yf the first supposers of this had wel vnderstood the Saxon tounge, they would haue known that *welsh* doth neuer therein signify a stranger, nor yet in any teutonic whatsoever, either high or low: the woord *fremt*, is in the old Saxon tounge strange, and *fremtling* a stranger, whereof the moderne teutonic yet retayneth the woords *frembo*, and *frembdling*.

VVhy the name of *welshmen* was giuen to the Britans.

VWelsh doth not signify a stranger.

That the Saxons gaue them the name of *weish* after the came into *Britaine* is altogether vnlykely, for that inhabiting so neer them as they did, to wit, but ouer-against the on the other syde of the sea, they could not want a more particular and proper name for them, then to called them strangers: which is one argument that the name of *weish*, could not so signifie. True it is that *weish* they called them, and their countrey *weishland*: and by this name of *weish*, they ment and intended no other thing, then to call them *Gaules*, which hauing in their language tyme out of mynde so continewed, is an euident signe that the Britaines were originally a people of the *Gaules*, which the Saxons according to their manner of speech in steed of calling *Gallish* called *wallish*, & by abreuiation *walsh* or *weish*. In the ancient teutonic it is very often found that diuers names which the french are wont to begin with g the Germans, began with dooble v, as *ward* for *Gard*, *wardain* (whereof wee yet keep the name of *warden*) for *Gardian*, *warre* for *Guerre*, and very many the lyke, and french authors do alwayes call our *Wales* *Galles*, our *Cornwalles* *Cornugalles*, and *Edward* our famous prince of *Wales*, they call *Edouard* prince de *Galles*.

It is further to bee obserued, that as the *Gaules* did anciently border all along on the west syde of the Germans, from the south to the north, so were they of them euen all along as farr as there countrey stretched called *weish*, infomuch as *Lombardie*, beeing that parte of *Italy*, which bordereth neereft vnto the Germans, and heertofore inhabyted by a people of the *Gaules* was called *Gallia Cisalpina*, the Germans do yet

yet vnto this day vulgarly call *weishland*/and it beeing (as is said) the parte of *Italie* next vnto the, the name of this parte hath stil serued among the vulgar people of *Germanie* for the whole, who therefore call all Italy *weishland*/ and Italians *weishers*/ and yf any of the comon people of *Germanie* do giue this name to some other strangers coming amongst them, they do it not thereby to call them strangers, but by supposing them to bee Italians.

Germans
call Italy
VVelsb-land.

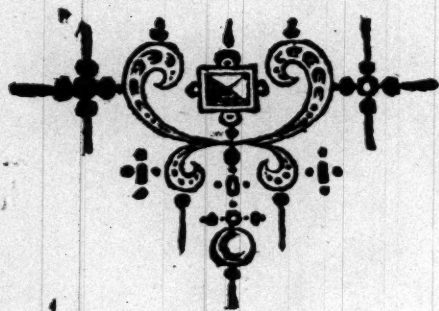
So in lyke manner do the lower Germans or Netherlanders, vulgarly call the present french tounge *Wals*/and the inhabitants of *Henalt & Artois*, *Wallen* or *Wallons*/which is asmuch to say as *Welsh*/and there prouinces *Wals-land*. Yea the lesser parte of *Brabant*, wherein the french tounge is spoken, is of those of the greater parte called *Wals-Brabant*/ that is, *Welsb-Brabant*. And a parte of *West-Flanders*, where the french tounge and not the flemish is spoken, is commonly called *Flandres-Gallicant*: the rest or greater parte beeing called *Flandres-Flamengant*. *Flandres-Gallicant* beeing in the flemish or low duytsch, *Wals-blaenderen*/ and according to our pronountiation *Welsh-Flanders*, whereby it doth plainly appeer, that Wallish and Gallish, otherwise Gaules and walles or welsh, is all one.

Netherlan-
ders call the
prouinces of
Henalt and
Artois by
the name of
VVelsb-land.

As now the higher Germans called the Gaules in *Lombardy* *weish*/ and the lower Germans, did so call the french, as wel as they did the people of *Henalt* and *Artois*, and the inhabitants of some parte of *Brabant* and *Flandres* (as is afore said) so the Saxons inhabiting on and towards the sea costes of *Germanie*, did also call their ouerthwart neighbours the Britans by

154 OF THE ARR. OF THE ENG. SAX. IN BRIT.
thesame name of *welsh*/enduced as it were by ancient
tradition to call them as originally they had bin, that
is to say Gaules, and somtymes (by lyke to make a di-
stinction between them and the other Galish or Wa-
lish people beeing each from other sequestred by the
sea) to call them *Brit-welish*/ which is in effect as-
much to say as Britan-welsh , and their countrey
accordingly *Brit-welish-land*/ for so in some old
Saxon wrytings I haue found it.

OF



155

OF THE DANES AND THE NORMANNES, AND THEIR COMING INTO

England. And how the English people haue
stil notwithstanding remayned the
corps and body of the realme.

The sixt Chapter.

ABOUT three hundreth and fyftie
yeares after the comig of the English-
Saxons into Britaine, and one hun-
dredh fyftie and six yeares after they
were become the sole possessors of
that parte thereof which of them took the name of
England: the Danes who in other fore-going tymes
had both on the sea coste, and somtyme by landing in
the countrey molested the Britans, came now againe
by warre to trooble and molest the English-Saxons.

This people were not much known vnto the an-
cient Greek or Latin wryters, for that they supposed
the coldnes of their countrey to bee such, as that it
scarsly permitted any inhabitants. That they were an-
ciently of one originall with the Germans (as in the
first chapter I haue noted) *Franciscus Irenicus* and
sundry other authors do affirme, and I think there
is thereof no doubt to bee made : their language,
neernes of habitation, complexion and custome of
lyuing, therevnto agreeing.

Cornelius Tacitus saith, that *Germanie* goeth bow-
ing towards the north with a great compas, which

*Franciscus
Irenicus.*

*Cornelius
Tacitus.*

Albertus
Crantzius.

Denmark
originally a
parte of
Germanie.

Io. Aurifa
ber in Lu-
thers Tylch
reden.

Denmark
some say
was first cal-
led *Ostgard*.

cannot so bee vnlesse hee wil compas into *Germanie*, *Denmark*, *Norway* and *Sweden*, and heervnto accor-
deth *Albertus Crantzius* in his aleaging that such as
haue anciently written of the great & spacious coun-
trei of *Germanie*, haue added vnto it the three sep-
tentrionall or northerne kingdomes, as *Denmark* and
the other adiacent countries before-named. *Martin*
Luther wadeth further, and wil haue *England* also
to bee a parte of *Germanie*; but heerof he makes his
owne fancie his author, for other author of more anti-
quitie then himselfe hee can fynd none. Manifest
enough it is, that *England* was neuer any parte of
Germanie, but a people of *Germanie* haue in deed
made a parte of *Britaine* to be *England*.

Whence the name of Danes, or their countrey of
Denmark should proceed, some haue made sundry
doubts; but I hold it a farr better direction in such
cases to follow the old grownded opinion, that hath
by ancient tradition succeeded from age to age as
from the father to the sonne, then to seek the cer-
taintie among so many new & vncertaine cōiectures.
We see for example how such as wil not allow
the Britans to take there name of king *Brute*, are left
confusedly to the suposed names of *Pridcaine*,
Brith-tania, *Bridania*, and I wote not what: and so
in lyke manner such as wil not allow the Danes to
take their name of *Dan* their first king, for that some
haue made him a Giant, & told of him some fabulous
tales, are left at randon to seek the cause of this name
either to haue come from a cittie called *Donia*, or as
others tell vs, from the Dahis a people of *Scythia*, or
after others from *Dausiones* or *Danciones*, or as *In-*

OF THE DANES AND THE NORMANNES, ETC. 157
nus wil haue it, from the firre-trees which grow in
 this countrey: *firre* beeing in the *duyth* tounge also
 called *Dene*. But as the chroniclers of our countrey can
 fynd no other deryuation of the ancient kings of the
 Britans then immediately from *Brute*, no more can
 the Danish kings bee found to haue any other begin-
 ning then immediately from *Dan*, which mee thinks
 is a strong argument to confirme the receaued opi-
 nion of the names, of both these nations & countries.

And as for the woord mark, when it serueth vnto
 the name of a countrey, as *Denmark*, *Stiermark*, *Mark-*
graueschap (otherwise *Markgreueship*) or the lyke, it
 signifieth in true sence, a limited or marked out place
 for a possession or Iurisdiction, as in the first chapter I
 haue alreedy noted: and our name of marshes of *wales*
 is corruptly so vsed, for marshes are properly marsh
 growndes, and it was anciently the mearces of *wales*,
 and the *c* beeing in our ancient language pronounced
 as *k*, it was in pronountiation the mearkes of *wales*,
 that is to say, the marks bounds or limits of *wales*, &
 so may be said of the north partes toward *Scotland*.
 In lyke sorte one of the seauen kingdomes of the
 Saxons, which after the latin name thereof wee call
Mercia, was of our anceters called *Mearkenland*, and
Mearkenryc; that is, the countrey or kingdome mar-
 ked or limited out. And heervnto accordeth our
 name of *Mearstones*; which should be *Mearkstones*;
 because they stand for the markes whereby the
 grownds belonging to different owners are limit-
 ed and deuyded, & thus may it the more plainly ap-
 peer, that this woord *Mark* doth aswel signify a li-
 mit or border, as a countrey or a region.

Firre gro-
 weth as-
 much or
 more in the
 other nor-
 thern coun-
 tries as in
Denmark.

Marshes of
walles not
 rightly so
 named.

They are
 deceaued
 that think
 the contrarie

Denmark is a very ancient kingdome, and the Danes haue alwayes bin a moste warlyke nation, & great numbers of them coming at sundry tymes foorth of their countrey, haue made their puiſſance known to the moste nations of *Europe*.

The first
cause of the
inuaſion of
the Danes.

Polichro.

Their first coming into our countrey, is reported to haue bin vpon two occasions. The first and principall beeing thus. *Osbert* king of *Northumberland* coming to the hows of one of his nobles called *Beorne Bokard*, and fynding him absent, violated his wyf; a moste beautifull and chaste Lady: her husband soon after returning home, and fynding her weeping, demanded the cause of her sorrow; shee with teares made vnto him her plaint, telling him how the king coming to her hows, shee had honorably entretayned & serued him, and how by telling her that hee had somthing to imparte vnto her in counſel, made by that meanes all seruants and others to auoyd the chamber, where beeing left alone and suspecting no euil, shee was through main force by him rauished.

The noble-man hearing this, willed her to bee of good comforte, for quoth hee, feebleneſſe againſt force cā litle auail, & therefore & for that thow haſte told mee the troth, thow shalt not bee of mee the leſſe beloued; howbeit yf God lend mee lyf I wil reuenge the iniury: & calling his freinds together who were the chiefeſt noblemen of the countrey, hee declared vnto them the wrong which the king had donne vnto him; whereupon they aduiſed him to go vnto *York* where the king then was, and there to defy him. Their aduice he followed, and coming vnto the kings preſence accompanied with ſundry
his

his followers, the king when he saw him vsed him in his speeches courteously; but he contrariwise told the king that hee defyed him, and that from thence forward hee would neither hold ought of him, nor yeild vnto him any fealtie or homage, and so departing away, passed which expedition ouer the seas into *Denmark*, vnto king *Goderic* (as I take it) though some of our chroniclers call him *Godern*, but *Godern* it could not bee, for that *Godern* called in Latin *Gotorinus*, raigned before the tyme of *Christe*. This king was his kinsman, and to him hee made his complaint of the great iniury before rehearsed, intreating his assistance for reuenge. The king hearing it, and beeing glad as it seemeth of an occasion whereby hee might send forces ouer into *England*, prouyded a nauy of shippes and leuyed a great power, the which vnder the conduct of *Hunga* and *Hubba* two of his bretheren or kinsmen, he sent into *England*. These landing in the north partes and encountring king *Osbert* in battail, either syde receaued some losse, but in fync king *Osbert* himself was slaine.

The cause as others reporte it, was, that one *Loth-*
brok a Dane hawking on the sea shore, his hawk took
 her flight sea-ward, and hee taking a litle cockbote
 to follow her was driuen by contrarie wynd to the
 coste of *Northfolk*, and there landed at *Rodham*,
 where of king *Edmund* he was wel entretayned, but
 this, *Beric* the said kings falconer greatly enuying,
 hee murdered him in a wood, and the body by a
 spaniel beeing found out, *Beric* was conuicted of the
 murther, & by sentēce of iustice beeig set in *Lothbro-*
kes bote without saile or tackling, was by the wynd &
 tyde

A second
 cause of the
 inuasion of
 the Danes.

tyde dryuen ouer into *Denmark*, euen there where *Lothbroke* himself had taken bote. The bote there beeing known to haue belonged vnto *Lothbroke*, *Beric* was layed handes on and examyned, but very falsly and maliciously hee told them that king *Edmund* had murthered the afore-named *Lothbroke*, and this beeing made known, the king of *Denmark* sent ouer (say they) the two afore-named Captaines *Hunga* and *Hubba* with an armie of men, to reuenge the murther.

These two tales thus particularly told, do both carry probabilitie of truthe: howbeit that a king of *Denmark* should make warre against another king or countrey for the killing of a falconer, and that before hee were wel certified of the truthe whether the king killed him or no, or of the cause why, yf hee had bin by him killed, doth carry very smalle apparence to make this seem to haue bin the very cause in deed; neuerthelesse such a reporte maliciously made by *Beric*, and coming as is lykely iust in the nic, at or about such tyme as *Beorne* might bee there solliciting for ayd, could the more moue the Danes to the inuading of the countrey, and so these two thinges concurring together, may both passe without contradicting the one the other. And that both the true complaint made by *Beorne* against king *Osbert*, and the false calumniation by *Beric* against king *Edmund*, may so haue hapned in deed, dothe appeer in that the Danes after they had slaine king *Osbert*, hastned vnto the destruction of king *Edmund*, whose forces when they had ouerthrowne in battail, they therevpo took himself prisoner, and fynding him to remaine most constant

OF THE DANES AND THE NORMANNES, ETC. 161
stant in the faith of Christ, which they (beeing as yet
pagans) much vrged him to forsake; they bound him
to a tree and shot him to death with arrowes. Thus
as it appeereth they had a greater spyte vnto this
good king *Edmund* then vnto king *Osbert*, who be-
fore as is laide, they slew in battaile: for that they not
beeing satisfyed with this king *Edmunds* cruel death
and torments, beheaded him after hee was dead.
These two complaints as is aforesaid of *Beorne* and
Beric coming thus together, some peradventure vn-
derstanding of the later and not of the former might
note it down for the espetial cause, when as in deed
it did only therevnto concurre.

Martyr-
dome of S.
Edmund.

But that the first was the very true cause, an ex-
ample lyke vnto it which hapned in *Spaine*, about
fowrscore yeares after this chanced in *England*, may
giue a kynd of testimonie. For *Roderic* king of *Spain*
hauing deflowred the daughter of Counte *Iulian*, a
noble mā of that cōtrei, the said cōt to be reuēged
vpō the king, brought in the *Sarasins* of *Africa*, who
beeing sent by their king *Miramolin*, vnder the cō-
duct of their leader *Muza*, arryued there in the yeare
of our Lord 714. & in the space of two yeares obtay-
ned almost all *Spaine*, except the partes of *Asturia*. In
which short space according to some authors, there
were slaine of the one and the other syde to the
number of seuentie thousand men; and these *Moors*
and *Sarasins* were not wholly expelled vntil the yeare
of our Lord 1480. so that they occupied sundry
kingdomes and prouinces in *Spaine*, for the space of
766. yeares.

Cause of the
Moors in-
uading
Spaine.

The Danes as aforesaid hauing slaine king *Osbert*,

X

and

and martyred king *Edmund*, ranged from one prouince to another, but not without many encounters; wherein according to the fortune of warre, they had somtymes the better and somtymes the woors, and had often bin vtterly extinguished had they not bin relieued with new supplyes from tyme to tyme from *Denmark*, by which meanes they came now and then to get the possession of one prouince, and now and then of another: and in fine (though long it lasted not) the domination ouer the whole realme. For *Canutus the second* of that name, king of *Denmark*, hauiug gotten by agreement between him and our king *Edmund Ironsyde*, to bee sharer with him in the one half of his kingdome; yet after the said king *Edmunds* death, albeit hee left his two yong sonnes *Edmund & Edward* behynd him, *Canutus* vpo the law of growing-too, and because in the couenant between him and king *Edmund Ironsyde* no assurance was made for the luccession of the said king *Edmunds* children, took vpon him the possession of the whole realme. And therevnto as some of our chroniclers affirme, he alio obtayned *Scotland*; and had moreouer the kingdomes of *Sweden* and *Norway*, so as he was king of fyue kingdomes: and consequently the greatest king (as I take it) that euer *England* had, & prooued in the end a very notable and good Christian prince.

Next after him succeeded in the realme of *England*, his illegitimate sonne *Harold*, surnamed *Harefoot*, howbeit *Hardi-Canutus* his brother and the legitimate sonne of their father, gat in his lyf tyme the possession of the south-parte of *England*; and after his death the kingly gouernment of the whole: but the

The yonger
of these was
afterward
called Ed-
ward the
outlaw.

Io. Stow.

King Canu-
tus the Dane
the greatest
king that
that euer
Englād had.

OF THE DANES AND THE NORMANNES, ETC. 163
the tymes of the raignes of these three Danish kings
beeing all added together, do not amount vnto aboue
twentie and seauen yeares in the whole.

The lyne and succession of the English kings for
that tyme beeing thus interrupted, at the end of the
aforesaid yeares it began againe vnder king *Edward*
(for his great pietie after his death called *S. Edward*
the confessor) who was brother by the fatherssyde
vnto king *Edmund* the last English king that raigned
next before *Cāutus*, & by his mother beeing the secōd
wyf vnto his father king *Ethelred*, he was brother
vnto *Hardi-Canutus* the last Danish king, by whome
before his death he was sent for out of *Normandie*.

Edmund
Ironsyde.

And it is to bee noted that albeit sundry troops
of Danes did enter the realme at their sundry in-
uasions, yet were they stil so spent and consumed by
warre that they wanted tyme of peace and repose so
to settle and plant themselves as that their posteritie
might there multiply and make an enduring habita-
tion, which in the litle repose they had in the only
twenty and seauen yeares wherein their three kings
raigned, they could not do. For as presently before
the begining of that repose, king *Ethelred* the father
of king *Edmund Ironsyde* (beeing restored againe to
his kingdome from whence by the Danes hee was
forced to fly, and to lyue for a whyle in exile in *Nor-*
mandie) shewed such crueltie vpon the Danes that
he found remaning in *England* (in reuenge of the
wrong hee had by that nation sustayned) that he
spared neither man nor woman, young or old; so im-
mediately vpon the death of *Hardi-Canutus* the last
of their three kings, it was agreed vpon and decreed

Danes
destroyed.

Io. Stow.

Polydor. vii.

by the chief Lordes & Nobles of the realme that no Dane from thence forth should any more raigne ouer them, and that all the Danish soldiers in any citie or castle in garison should bee expelled and banished the realme, or as some wryte, should be slaine.

Simon Dun.

Edgar Atheling declared heyre to the crown of England.

Now whereas king *Edmund Ironsyde* left two sonnes; of whome mention is made before, those were both sent by king *Canutus* into *Sweden*, *Edmund* the elder of them dyed in exile without issue, *Edward* the yonger surnamed for his long absence out of the realme, the *Outlaw*, Married with *Agatha*, daughter vnto the Emperor *Henry the third*, & he was now by this pious king *Edward*, sent for home into *England*, where with his wyf and three children, *Edgar*, *Margaret* and *Christian* beeing arrayued, hee shortly after died, but the king soon vpon the death of the father declared the sonn his great nephew his heyre vnto the kingdome, and gaue him the surname of *Etheling*, so as hee was called *Edgar Etheling*, which is asmuch to say, as *The noble Edgar*. Howbeit after the death of this saintly king *Edward*, the crown neuer came vnto him, for *Harold* the eldest sonne of Earle *Goodwin*, hauing gotten the goodwil and promise of fidellitie of the nobles, obtayned thesame, and for the kingdome of *England*, recompenced prince *Edgar* with the earldome of *Oxford*: but as *Harold* had thus by fraud obtayned the regal septer, so was he soon after by force (euen in the first and last yeare of his raigne) bereaued at once both of that & of his lyf, in the battail foughte between him and *VWilliam*, Duke of *Normandie*, neer vnto *Hastings* in *Sussex*; in the moneth of
October

OF THE DANES AND THE NORMANNES, ETC. 165
October in the yeare of our Lord 1066.

And heer by this occasion am I now brought to speak of the coming in of the Normannes (a people somtyme all one with the Danes) and for a whyle to forbear to tel what became of Prince *Edgar* and his two sisters. But yet before I come to the coming of the Normannes into our countrey, it is not impertinent that I first speake more anciently of the said nation.

This people as before I haue said of the Danes, are not otherwise to bee accompted of then moſte anciently to haue bin of the Germain nation. Their habitation was in *Norway*, ſo called for the northern ſituation there-of, and themſelues Northmen, now vulgarly Normānes, vpon lyke reaſon. Their ancient countrey becauſe it is rocky and mountanous as well as cold, is more ſteril and vnfrutefull then either *Denmark* or *Sweden*; but themſelues a people very ſtrong and hardy, & the rather for not beeing weakened with delicacies.

Normannes
frō whence
iſſued.

In proceſſe of tyme, whether it were through the ſterrillitie of their countrey, or that they were moued through their own cowrage and hardynes, or rather occaſioned by both, they betook themſelues firſt to rob vpon the ſea coſtes of the *Netherlands*, *England*, and *France*, ſomtymes alone & ſomtymes conioyned with the Danes. Afterward about the yeare of our Lord 830. in the raigne of the Emperour *Lodouicus Pius*, they boldly put themſelues a land in the *Netherlands*, and ſpoyled and ranſacked the countrey, but in *Picardie* neer vnto *S. Omers*, beeing encountered by the countrey forces gathered together againſt

Normannes
vſed to rob
by ſea.

Normannes
inuade the
Netherlands
and *France*.

Normannes
burnt Paris.

Charles the
bald.

Lewis the
Stamere.

them, they receaued a great ouerthrow; howbeit sur-
ceased not for all that frō the lyke courses, for with-
in very few yeares after, they made sundry such in-
cursions both in the *Netherlands* and *France*, ran-
sacking and spoiling in all places where they could,
burning townes and cities, and not sparing among
others to fyre the citie of *Paris* it self. Howbeit all
these were but incursions of this barbarous and pa-
gan people, who for all this neuer came to settle them-
selues in any parte of *France*, vntil such tyme as *Ha-*
ding who was descended of the blood royal of *Nor-*
way, after many outrages by him comitted in the
realme of *France*, in fine did there receaue the Chri-
stian faith, and had giuen vnto him by *Carolus Cal-*
uus Emperor and king of *France*, the countrey about
Chartres, for the retreat and dwelling place of him
and his people; who with him were now become
Christians.

Another terrible voyage was made by the Nor-
mannes into *France* about the yeare of our Lord 880
at such tyme as *Levvys* and *Carloman*, the two son-
nes of *Lodouicus Balbus*, had gotten the soueraigne
septer. This voyage was made by the two Norman
Princes *Godefrid* and *Sigessfrid*, who left no corner
in *Gallia Belgica*, that felt not the rage of their
crueltie, but in fine they were appeased by *Charles the*
Grosse, who to that end gaue his neece *Gilda* to one
of theie Norman Princes in mariage, but this peace
lasted not long, because disloyaly the prince *Godefrid*
was slaine, after whose death insued the ruyne of
many cities, & lastly to paccify the Normannes there
was giuen vnto them some parte of the prouince of
Nervystria:

OF THE DANES AND THE NORMANNES, ETC. 167
Nervstria: and this hapned some space of tyme before *Rollo* the Norman came into *France*.

This *Rollo* was a prince of great birth, but of a greater spirit, and beeing with his brother reuolted from the obedience of *Harold* the sixt of that name, king of *Denmark*, who also comaunded ouer *Norway*, & hauing against him lost a battail and therein his brother, departed with his troops consisting of *Norwegians* and *Danes* out of the countrey, in hope els where to fynde better fortune. His first ar-ryual was in *England*, where as *Crantzius* saith, vpon a certaine dreame which hee had, hee made an agreement with king *Athelstane*, and in freindly manner departed the realme. Our chroniclers say that this agreement was made between him and king *Alfrid*, and so I rather take it to haue bin. Vpon this agreement he passed ouer into *Zealand*, and so to *Holland* and *Friesland*, and coming about through *Brabant* and *Flanders* entred into *Picardie*, and so passed thence vnto other prouinces in *France*, taking the cities of *Roan*, *Bayeux*, *Eureux*, and other townes; not without making a pitiful slaughter of the christian inhabitants, so as the frenchmen had great reason to ad as they did, into their litanies, the prayer.

Rollo first
came into
England.

Great cruel-
tie of the
Normannes
in *France*.

A furore Normannorum, libera nos Domine.

To bee brief, this pagan septentrional captaine was the space of thirteen yeares afflicting without cease those partes of *France*, somtymes defeated, and somtymes againe defeating great numbers of christians, vntil such tyme as vpon a finall agreement he receaued baptisme, and was called *Robert*. To whome was then giuen the best parte of *Nervstria*; albeit at

that tyme waste and desolate, because of the incursions which the Normannes and Danes before had made. And of these new inhabitants thereof, beeing men of the North in regard of their countrey of *Norway*, it took the name of *Northmandie*, otherwise *Normandie*.

*Robert first
Duke of
Normandie
of his race.*

This *Rollo* now named *Robert*, was inuested into the Duchie of *Normandie*, by *Charles the simple* king of *France*, in the yeare of our Lord 912. He maryed with *Poupa* the daughter of *Berenger* Earle of *Bessyn* and *Beauvoisy*, of whome hee had a sonne called *William*, some wryte that he married afterward with the daughter of thesaid *Charles the simple*, by whome hee had no issue, but they mistake the matter, it was indeed the other Norman prince aforenamed that maryed with the daughter of a king of *France*, named also *Charles*, of whome mention is lykwise made before. Duke *Robert* died in the yeare of our Lord 917. & was buried in our Ladies Church in *Roan*.

*William
Longfuvord
2. D. of Nor.*

William surnamed *Longfuvord*, the second Duke of *Normandie*, succeeded his father. He married with *Sporta* the daughter of *Herbert* Earle of *Senlis*, by whome he had a sonne called *Richard*, he was in fine slaine by treason.

*Richard 1. &
3. D. of Nor.*

Richard the third Duke of *Normandie* succeeded his father *William*, and was comonly called *Richard without-feare*. He first maryed with *Agnes* the sister of *Hugh Capet*, by whome hee had no issue, and after her deceasse he married with *Gonor* the daughter of a Dane, by whome hee had diuers children. He died in the yeare 980. & was buried in the Abbey of *Fecam*.

*Richard 2. &
4. D. of Nor.*

Richard the second of that name but fowrth Duke
of

OF THE DANES AND THE NORMANNES, ETC. 169
of Normandie succeeded his father *Richard* afore-
named: he married first with *Iudith*, sister unto the
Earle of Britaine, and after to *Paula* daughter unto
Syveyn king of *Denmark* and *Norvvay*. He dyed in
the yeare 1026. & was buried at *Fecam* by his father.

Richard the third of that name & fifth Duke of Nor-
mandie succeeded his father of that name the second,
beeing borne of his first wyf *Iudith*, for by both hee
had issue. This *Richard* was neuer married for ought
is known, howbeit he left children: he dyed in the
yeare 1028. impoisoned as some reporte, by his bro-
ther *Robert*.

Robert succeeded his brother, and was the sixth
Duke of *Normandie*, and surnamed the *Liberal*, he
died in *Asia*, in the yeare 1035. and was buried at
Nice in *Bithinia*. Hee was neuer married, only by his
concubine called *Arletta* the daughter of a bourges
of the town of *Fallaise*, hee had a sonne called *VVil-*
liam, whome he afterward legitimated, and at his ta-
king his iorney into *Asia*, made him his heyre, beeing
then but of the age of nyne yeares.

This yong Duke *VVilliam*, the second of that
name, and seauenth Duke of *Normandie*, beeing vnder
tutorship, and not able of himself to gouerne the
countrey, nor consequently to be dreaded, great quar-
rels and contentions began among his Nobillitie: &
as he grew to riper yeares so grew the troobles more
and more, yea euen into open rebellion and plain
hostillitie against himself: and that at sundry tymes,
and by such as were of his own blood and kin; who
by reason of his beeing illegitimate by birth, preten-
ded more right to the duchie then himself. After

Y

long

*Richard 3. &
5. D. of Nor.*

*Robert 2. and
6. D. of Nor.*

*VVilliam the
conquerer.*

*VVilliam. 1.
and 7. Duke
of Nor.*

Megifsier in
Chro. Nor.

D. VWilliam
resoluech
vpon the
enterprise of
England.

long and sundry broyles hauing ouercome and chastised the rebells and beeing come vnto a litle repose, as he was on a tyme in a park neer vnto *Roan*, hauing his bow in his hand and redy to shoot, a messenger came vnto him and priuately told him that king *Edward* his coosin was dead, and that *Harald* was king of *England*, the Duke at this newes remaning a whyle pensue; at last gaue his bow to one that stood by, and went speedely to *Roan*; where to some of his priuate freindes he declared his heauynes for the death of king *Edward*, as also for the wrong which *Harold* had donne him, wherevnto one of them replied saying, no man ought to bee vexed for ought that may bee amended, but lesse for the thing that cannot bee remedied; nothing can remedie the death of king *Edward*, but remedie may be found to right the wrong done vnto you by *Harold* yf your self please: and therevnto all that were present promised him all their seruice and assistance. The Duke knowing the crown of *England* to bee more woorth then to be let slip for the aduenturing for, resolved to win it by force, seeing by faire meanes hee could not expect it.

Some kynd speeches might peraduenture haue passed between this king *Edward* (surnamed the confessor) and the Duke, in former tyme of their great loue and familiaritie, which the Duke might interpret and take as a promise of beeing his heyre vnto the kingdome of *England*, aswel in regard of beeing his kinsman as of the kings greatly beeing beholding vnto him, but that the said king euer made him any absolute and vnconditional promise, is altogether vnlykely: for this king beeing very equitable
could

could not but know how greatly hee should therein preiudice his neereft kinfman and right heyre, Prince *Edward* furnamed *the outlaw*: and we fynd that hee fent for thefaid Prince out of *Hungarie* home into *England* with intent to make him his heyre, where beeing arryued and foon after deceafing, hee declared (as before hath bin faid) his fonne yong *Edgar Etheling* his heyre: which hee would neuer haue donne, nor neuer haue fent for the father with his children to haue come into *England*, yf hee had ment that the crown should haue come vnto the Duke of *Normandie*. Neither do wee fynd that thefaid Duke did take exceptions vnto the fauourable proceedings of king *Edward*, with Prince *Edward* or his fonne *Edgar*, towards their aduancement vnto the crown; as in all probabilitie he would haue donne, if hee could haue chalenged king *Edward* with any cleer promiffe to the contrary, neither could this Duke when now hee purposed the enterprife, produce thefaid kings promiffe either by wryting or witnes.

And whereas it may feeme to fome that by the fuddain pensyuenes wherein he appeered to bee ftricken, vpon the newes of the kings death, and *Harolds* beeing in poffeffion of the kingdome, hee made fure accompt to haue had it himfelf by reafon of fome afured promiffe paff from king *Edward*, this of neceffitie followeth not, for it often chanceth that fome men conceaue no fmall grief at the losse of a litle hope of a great benefit.

Neither did hee only rely vpon this pretended donation of king *Edward*, but making it his firft and principal caufe he added vnto it two caufes more.

Reasons
that king
Edward
neuer pro-
miffed the
crown of
England to
the Duke of
Normandie.

Three cau-
fes of the
conquerors
enterprife of
England.

2. The one was, to reuenge the death and cruel murder of his Nephew *Alfrid*, brother vnto this late king *Edward*, which he moſte imputed vnto king *Harold*.

3. The other was, to reuenge the wrong donne vnto *Robert* Archbiſhop of *Canterburie*, who he ſaid was exiled in the dayes of king *Edward* by the meanes of this *Harold*.

Of theſe three cauſes, as the firſt was without proof, ſo were the two later without obligation, no-man beeing to impute blame vnto him, albeit the kings brothers death and the Biſhops wrong, had remained vnreuenged. And hauing as it were forgotten with how many difficulties warres and troobles hee had attained vnto the quiet poſſeſſion of *Normandie*, wherevnto his right by reaſon of his birth was by others denied, yet ſuch was the greatnes of his cowrage and mynde, that it could not bee containd within the limits of this duchie, and no leſſe diademe could fit his head then the crown of *England*, which hee ſeeing to be poſſeſſed by him to whome by deſcent of birth it was not falne, might think it more due vnto himſelf, and himſelf more woorthy thereof, then was he that now had it, and perhaps remembring.

That force and might,

Do make a tytle where there wanteth right.

He preſumed much vpon that: and the rather for that he was greatly encowraged and forwarded in the matter, by diuers of his moſt inward freindes.

The greater parte of the nobillitie and people very vnwillingly heervnto agreed, alleaging that they were
ſo

so wearied and impouerished by the long endurance of their late intestine warres, that neither with their bodies they could serue him, nor with their purses ayd him: espetially vnto such an enterprife as was of no necessitie, but contrariwise very doubtfull and hazardous, and that it was of more importance for him to look vnto the well keeping and conseruing of his own countrey against his neighbours, then to begin a new warre in another land. The Duke whose head was filled with ambition, supposing the relinquishing of his manifested purpose not a litle to touche his reputation, somuch preuailed in his assembles of the three estates, which consisted of the Clergie, Nobillitie, and Comons, that in fine the Nobillitie promised to serue him, and the Clergie and People, to ayd him with mony, according to their seuerall abillities: and such offers as they made, were foorthwith set down in wryting by a Secrerarie there present. *Odo* Bishop of *Bayeux* accorded to furnish him with fortie ships. The Bishop of *Mans* with thirtie, and others according to their beneuolent myndes. Then began hee to desyre ayd of the Princes his neighbours, as of the Earles of *Aniou*, *Poictou*, du *Maine*, *Pontheiu*, *Boulongue* and others, promising to giue land vnto euerie of them in *England*: yf hee conquered it, according to their qualities. And with his mony hee leuyed soldiers.

Nobillitie is taken in France for gentlemen as well as for Earles or persons of lyke dignitie.

He solicited *Phillip* the first of that name king of *France*, for his royal assistance, promising him that yf hee could obtayne the realme of *England*, hee would hold it of him, but the said king bearing him inwardly no great good wil, and hauing with his counsaile con-

sulted vpon the matter, it was found no way profitable vnto *France*, to haue a Duke of *Normandie* king of *England*. Wherevpon the king did not only refuse to ayd him, but sought to diswade him from the enterprise.

Megifsier in
Chro. Nor.

Megifsier saith, that *Baldwyn* earle of *Flanders* refused to ayd Duke *William* his brother in law, to the conquest of *England*; but heerin hee grossely erreth, for Duke *William* conquered *England* in the yeare of our Lord 1066. at which tyme *Baldwyn* the fift of that name and leauenth earle of *Flanders* (after the foresters) was aliue, and was father-in-law vnto Duke *William*, who had maryed with *Mathild* his daughter, & he gaue vnto him very great assistance both of men mony and other necessaries.

Oudegerst
in Chron.
Fland.

In consideration whereof the Conqueror afterward gaue vnto him a yearely pension out of *England* of 300. marks, which he enioyed not long, for hee died the very next yeare after the said conquest; that is to say in the yeare 1067. as may appeer by the inscription of his toomb, in the great Church of *Lyle*, where according as he apointed hee lieth buried, and next after him succeeded his sonne *Baldwin*, the sixt of that name, who was in deed brother in law vnto the Conqueror, but held with him no great corespondence.

Ayders of
the con-
querer.

The Emperor *Henrie the fourth* vnto whome hee also sent for ayde, sent him certaine troops, vnder the conduct of a Prince of *Germanie*.

Alain Fergant Duke of *Britaigne*. The Lord of *Touars*, The sonne of the Lord *Bertram* of *Dignam*, *Raoul* of *Gayer*, and other Barons and gentlemen, as wel

OF THE DANES AND THE NORMANNES, ETC. 175
wel of *Normandie* as other partes came in great
nūbers of their own accord. Some of them requyred
wages and good furniture, others demaunded but
their passage and to take in recompence of their ser-
uice, what they could get in *England*. One demaun-
ded a castle, another a towne, and some contented
themselues with the promise of hauing some goodly
Lady or Gentlewoman in mariage, and vnto the re-
quests of euery of them the Duke accorded.

He sent by the councel of his Barons an Amba-
sador vnto Pope *Alexander the second*, declaring the
causes and reasons of this his intended warre against
him that was an vsurper and no lawful prince. Pro-
mising due obedience for the realme of *England*
vnto the sea Apostolyke, yf God gaue him grace to
cōquere it. When the Pope with the Cardinalles had
considered of the matter, the Pope sent him a very
fauourable answere, & withal a bāner of the Churche,
with a ring of gold hauing a riche stone therein,
as also a relyke of *S. Peter*. The Duke hauing re-
ceaued the Popes answere, together with these giftes,
hee was maruelous glad, and caused his shipping to
bee made in a readynesse at *S. Valeries*, where within
a whyle after hee embarked his forces & all necessarie
prouision; and hauing attended conuenient wynd,
crossed the seas and landed at *Pemssey*, neer vnto
Hastings in *Sussex*, the 28. of September in the yeare
of our Lord 1066.

Some wryte
that the D.
had 896.
ships, others
say, 300.

Place and
tyme of the
conquerers
landing.

The first that were disembarked were his archers;
then the other soldiers; then was set a shore the ba-
gage, horse, and munition, and last of all landed the
carpenters, masons and other artificers. As the Duke

An Astro-
nomer
drowned.

himself stepped out of a bote to go a shore, one of his feet slipped, so as hee was faine to light with both his handes vpon the grownd, which some beholding took for *malum Omen*, but himself interpreted it to signify his taking possession of the countrey. Dinner beeing prepared the Duke caused diuers of his freinds to dyne with him, and chanceing to talk of an Astronomer which at *S. Valeries* had assured him that *Harold* would neuer withstand him, but submit himself vnto him and yeild him faith and homage; willed now that the said Astronomer should be brought vnto him, for hee had caused him to embark for the voyage, but it was told him that the ship wherein the said Astronomer was, was cast away at sea, and hee there-withall was drowned; whereunto the Duke in effect replied, that that man was not wise that had more regard vnto the good or il fortune of another, then vnto his own. I am now (quoth hee) thanks bee to God come ouer, I know not how the rest wil succeed. After dinner hee assembled his counsel, by the which it was ordayned that all the shippes should bee peerced and sunk, to the end that all hope of flying back, might bee taken away. This accordingly performed three conuenient places where chosen out, where three castles of wood, which had bin made and framed in *Normandie*, and were with them brought ouer, should bee set in frame againe, made vp and furnished with victualles and other prouision, hauing men to gard them, to the end that in case of necessitie they might serue for places of retreat. The Duke then entring a litle farther into the countrey, gaue comaundemēt that nothing should
bee

OF THE DANES AND THE NORMANNES, ETC. 177
bee taken from the people, nor any violence offered
them, saying that it was reason hee should preferue
that which should bee his owne.

What number of men the Duke in all brought
with him is not mentioned in diuers of our chroni-
cles, nor yet in the french; but soon vpon the Dukes
lāding king *Harald* was aduertised that the number
of vessels wherewith the Duke arriued was about
800. and the number of men about 40. thousand,
howbeit the number both of men and ships are not
thought to haue bin half somāy. The said king *Harald*
was then in the North, against another sorte of Nor-
mannes, for they were people of *Norway*, of which
nation and countrey these that now came out of
France were somtyme descended, as formerly hath
bin shewed. And some authors do seem to bee of opi-
nion that it was a plot layd between the king of
Norway and the Duke of *Normandie*, that both
about one tyme should set vpon *Englād*. Howsoever
it were, certaine it is that against both of them king
Harald had not lyke fortune, for in the North parte
of *England* the Norwegians or Normannes were
ouerthrown, and their king *Harald Harfager* with
his brother *Tofto* slaine in battail (which as *Megisier*
the Norman writeth, was fought the seuenth of *Octo-*
ber in the yeare of our Lord 1066.) But in the south
wherevnto king *Harald* hastning, beeing both wee-
ried and bloodie (for that it seemeth to haue bin but
seuen dayes after the other aforesaid battail) encoun-
tring with Duke *William* and the Normannes of
France, his forces were ouerthrown and himself
slaine.

Crantzius.

V Vonderful
expedition
in king Ha-
rald.

Z

To

To describe this battail at large I could bee very willing, but because it is related by sundry of our chroniclers, and not greatly requisit vnto the scope of my purpose, I shal heer thereof need to say the lesse.

He arryued
the 28. of
September.
1066.

This great victorie beeing obtayned by Duke William, the 14. day of *October* in the aforesaid yeare of our Lord 1066. and within seauenteen dayes of his arryuall in *England*; hee so prosecuted his good fortune that on Christmas day next ensuing, hee gat the crown of *England* vpon his own head. True it is that soon vpon the ouerthrow of king *Harald*, the realme with the citizens of *London*, would haue set vp the yong prince *Edgar Etheling*, and giuen a new battail vnto the Norman Duke, but differences and disagreements (the vndooing of important actions) beeing the let, Prince *Edgar* with his mother and diuers of the English nobillitie and gentrie retyred into *Scotland*, whereof I shal haue occasion to speak more anon.

Prince *Edgar*
with his
sisters retyre
into *Scotland*.

The me-
merie of
sorrow.

King William hauing thus obtayned the crown, did according to his promise reward such of the Clergie, Noblemen Gentlemen & Officers as came with him: distributing among them the Bishoprykes Earldomes, Baronnies, Lordships, Gouvernements, and offices, &c. at his pleasure, dispossessing and thrusting out a great number of Englishmē from their ancient possessions; as wel as out of their places of authoritie & offices. By which great violēce, suddain & lamentable desolation, it may wel haue come to passe that many beeing anciētly of the races & descēts of many woorthy families, yea euen of Princes, haue since become poor artificers and pefants. And had it not bin that

that the Conqueror knew not els how to gratify, & reward his principall freinds and followers, and so of necessitie was enforced vnto this cours, hee had otherwise had very litle reason with such rigour to haue delt with the English nation; because no nation would or could haue donne lesse then withstand a stranger, when they knew him to haue no more tytle to their crown then had hee: neither could they do other beeing vnder the comaund and subiection of king *Harald*. But in deed as this plague was moſte deſerued by ſuch of the nobillitie as reiecting Prince *Edgar* the lawfull heyre to the crown, did vniuſtly therevnto aduance king *Harald*, ſo did it moſte fall vpon them, for that their liues beeing loſt with the ſaid king in battail, their lands were giuen by the cōqueror to recōpence their paynes that killed them.

The ſmarte in ſome ſorte or other was in a manner generall, but as the moſte appeering marks are moſte aymed at, ſo ſuch as had the good fortune to keep or compoſe for their own lyuelyhoods were in lykelyhood men of the meanest lyuings, ſuch as perhaps the prowd conquerors took ſcorne to bee recompensed withall, and of theſe ſome heer and there in diuers partes of the realme, became out of this general miſ-rule to bee excepted.

Some Englishmen of meā lyuings kept their lands at the conqueſt.

Alſo noble *Kent*, to the euerlaſting honor of that prouince before all others of *England*, reſolutely ſtanding with the Conqueror vpon termes of reaſon, reſerued vnto it ſelf both landes and liberties.

The honor of *Kent*.

The Normannes begining now to ſeat themſelues in Englishmennes lyuings, in all the other ſhyres of the realme, and no hope remayning of the

Or about
that tyme.

aduancement of Prince *Edgar* to the English crown, such of the English nobillitie as were with thesaid Prince in the north, and so many others as could not for the tyme endure the insolencies of the Normannes, withdrew themselves with him, his mother and his two sisters *Margaret & Christian*, into *Scotland*, where of king *Malcolme* the third of that name, they were honorably receaued. With the ladie *Margaret* the elder of these two sisters, thesaid king maryed; and as himself was a most noble Prince, so was he blessed in his mariage with this noble Princessse, who in her lyf tyme was so full of vertue and pietie, that after her death shee obtayned the name and reputation of a *Saint*.

English first
began to bee
spoken in
Scotland.

As now the English court by reason of the aboundance of Normannes therein, became moſte to speak french; so the Scottish court because of the Queen and the many English that came with her, began to speak English; the which language it should seem king *Malcolme* himself had before that learned; and now by reason of his Queen did the more affect it. But the English tounge in fine preuailed more in *Scotland*, then the french did in *England*, for English became the language of all the south parte of *Scotland*, the Irish before that hauing bin the generall language of that whole countrey, since remaining only in the north, where by reason of the alteration thereof in the south partes, the vulgar *Hylāders* began to call their southerne countymen by the name of Englishmen, and that parte of *Scotland* by the name of *England*. On the othersyde, the french tounge in *England* became not any where to bee the

OF THE DANES AND THE NORMANNES, ETC. 181
the peoples language, only it left in our English
tounge a mixture of diuers French woords.

Moreouer many of the English nobillitie and
gentry that now came into *Scotland*, were by the be-
neuolence of the king so preferred in one condition
or other, that they there setting themselves their of-
spring hath since spred it self into iundry very noble
families, which are yet vnto this day there remaynig,
and by their surnames to be discerned. And whereas
the Scottish Gētlemen were not then surnamed after
their proper Signiories, Lordships or places which
they possessed, but after the old manner of *Ireland*,
each with the name of his father, and the addition
of *Mac*, which signifieth *Sonne*, now imitating the
English manner they changed that custome, and be-
gan to surname themselves after such places as they
properly possessed.

English no-
billitie and
gētrie plan-
ted and pre-
ferred in
Scotland.

Change of
surnames in
Scotland.

Prince *Edgar* afterward embracing the freindship
of the conqueror came into *England*, and from thence
in employment and charge in warr went into *Italie*,
but in fine died without issue, *Christian* his yonger
sister became a nonne & dyed in monastical lyf in the
Abbey of *Rumsey*. But by Queen *Margaret*, king
Malcolme had eight children, six sonnes and two
daughters, the elder of which whose name was *Ma-
thild*, was afterward maryed vnto *Henry* sonne vnto
William the Conqueror, and the first king of *En-
gland* of that name, and so by her was the English
blood royal brought in againe, to the enioying of the
English crown.

Mathild the
daughter of
Q. *Margaret*
marieth
with the
sonne of the
conqueror.

But whereas for the tyme, espetially in the begin-
ing of the conquerors raigne, when the Normannes

Englishmen
contemptibly
used by the
Normannes.

A begining
of reuiual of
Englishmen's
credit.

(as men in prosperitie are wont to do) began to forget themselves, yea to grow so insolent, in their esteem of our nation that it seemed almoste a reproche to bee called an Englishman, insomuch as it made some of the more light conceyted of the English to seek to better their esteem by imitating the Normannes, both in apparel & language, which among the grauer sorte bred the prouerb, that *Iack would be a gentleman yf hee could speak french*. Yet by the experience of a litle tyme, the Normannes were taught to carrie a more honorable opinion of the English, for impossible was it that such contemptible vsage could last any longer, then vntil the smarte of the rod of hardest fortune was but a litle aswaged. And the Conqueror after hee was once settled had no reason by stil depressing the English to prouoke them to break all bounds of obedience, considering what tytle king *Malcolme of Scotland* in the right of his wyf, had vnto the English crown, as also the feare of inuasions of the Danes, from the which hee found hee was not free. Nor yet out of danger of rebellions in his own countrey of *Normandie*, whereof hee formerly had had experience. Wherefore the English soon began to grow in credit, and vnder this Conqueror himself to haue employments, charges, captainships and offices, and no doubt to begin by litle and litle to possesse liberties, lands and lyuings. Yea the children borne in *England*, of such Normannes as there had seated themselves, reiected the name of Normannes and were accompted and called Englishmen, and spake the English tounge: wherein a man may say that they altered not themselves, but returned

OF THE DANES AND THE NORMANNES, ETC. 183
 turned again vnto themfelues, for the Normānes whē
 first they came into *France*, and during the tyme of
Rollo or *Robert* the first Duke of *Normandie* of that Normannes
 race, did all speake their own ancient language, which somtyme
 in effect was all one with our old english tounge; as spake lyke
 the Danes also spake: & in the tyme from the end of language to
 the raigne of the said *Robert* (yf so soon they began to the english.
 leaue their language) vnto the tyme of their coming
 into *England*, which conteyned but about one hun-
 dreth and fiftie yeares, they lost their own ancient
 language and learned the tounge which the french-
 men then spake: moreouer in that space they also had
 (according to the french manner) appropriated vnto
 themfelues the surnames of such lordships, places or
 signiories as in *Normandie* they possessed.

The which surnames they brought with them
 into *England*, where they continewed in such fa-
 milies of them, as there then settled themfelues.

The raigne of the Conqueror lasted about twentie
 yeares, howbeit in litle tyme of quietnesse either in
England or *Normandie*. In *England* by reason of the
 inuasions somtyme of the Danes, somtyme of the
 Scots, and somtymes by the English peoples resisting
 his tyrannising Normannes. In *Normandie* by reason
 of appeasing rebellions, besyde some bickering that he
 had with the French. Neither did he resyde in *En-
 gland* those 20. yeares continually, but was some
 tymes absent in *Normandie* a long whyle together,
 where he lastly dyed; as did his wyf before him; and
 was buried (as shee also was) in the Abbay of S. *Ste-
 phen* in *Can*, which himself had founded.

In whose tombe when by the Bishop of *Bayeux*,

it was opened, in the yeare of our Lord 1542. their was found a gilded plate of brasſe, whereon was engrauen this Epitaphe.

Epitaphe of
the con-
queror.

*Qui rexit rigidos Northmanos atque Britannos,
Audacter vicit, fortiter obrinuit,
Et Cenomenses virtute coercuit enses,
Imperijq; sui legibus applicuit,
Rex magnus parua iacet hac Guillelmus in vrna:
Sufficit & magno parua domus domino.
Ter septem gradibus se voluerat atque duobus,
Virginis in gremio Phœbus & hic obijt.*

Englished thus,

The latin
poet hath set
Britans in
steed of
English.

Hee that the sturdie Normannes rul'd, and ouer English reign'd,
And stoutly yvonne, and strongly kept, vvhat so hee had obtayn'd,
And did the svvoords of those of Mains, by force bring vnder avv,
And made them vnder his comaund, liue subiect to his lavv,
This great king VVilliam lieth heer, entomb'd in litle graue,
So great a Lord; so smalle a horvs, sufficeith him to haue
VVhen Phœbus in the virgins lap, his circled course apply'd,
And tvventie-three degrees had past, eu'n at that tyme hee dy'd.

The Con-
querers bo-
nes thrown
out of his
toomb.

Afterward in the yeare of our Lord 1562, cer-
taine French soldiers beeing cōsorted with some En-
glish, that vnder the conduct of the Chastillion took
the citie of Cane, & there fel to spoiling of Churches;
did break down and deface the monument of this
king, taking foorth and throwing away his bones.

Vnto this deceased Conqueror succeeded next in
the kingdome of England, his sonne William Rufus,
so called for the rednes of the colour of his haire,
whose raigne endured about thirteen yeares: and he
dying without issue, Henrie his brother the yonger
sonne of the aforesaid Conqueror, succeeded him.

This

OF THE DANES AND THE NORMANNES, ETC. 183

This Prince was borne in *England*, & spake the English toung, and was the last of the Conquerors issue male that there raigned, he married as before hath bin noted, with *Matilda* the daughter of Queen *Margaret* wyf vnto *Malcolme* king of *Scotland*, which *Margaret* was elder sister vnto *Edgar Etheling*, daughter vnto *Edward* the outlaw and grand-child vnto king *Edmund Ironsyde*.

The Conquerors issue male, ended in his own sonnes.

This king as is aforesaid, beeing borne in *England*, and the Queen of English blood royall, was occasion that the depressed English nation was raised againe vnto honor and credit: and the Normannes resyding in *England*, that but a litle before held the name of an Englishman reprochefull, must now bee contented that their race and posteritie there planted, should wholly relinquish the name of Normannes, & become English both in name and nation. And I haue seen in *Normandie* it self, the inscriptions or epitaphes, vpon the toombs of honorable persons there buried some few yeares after (who perhaps were borne in *England*) written in the English toung (which they somuch before contemned) and not in french. And as the Normannes beeing first seated in *Normandie* in *France*, did there by litle and litle become French, and so were called as wel as Normannes, as wee may perceaue by the stile of the Conquerors mandates when hee was in *England*, which comonly began; *To all his French & English people*. So in lyke maner (the lesser parte alwayes yeilding to the greater) such of these Normannes as came to plant themselues in *England* did there grow to the name of Englishmen, yea and that with the vtter losse and relin-

Englishmen restored to credit and honor.

A a quishment

THE HISTORY OF THE INVASIONS,

Normannes
in England
very few in
respect of
the English.

quishment of the name of *Normannes*, as in *France*, they neuer did. And by this occasion of the *Normannes* becoming English the great hart-burning that els might haue remained betwée them & the English for the conquering of the countrey was taken away, and so lasted not as it is known to haue donne between the Britans otherwise called welshmen, and our Saxo anceters: and between the Danes and the said Saxons. And albeit it pleased God for the chastisement of the English people to permit the *Normannes* to haue the victorie in the battaile in *Sussex*, yet were they but a handfull in regard of the whole English people which by the continuance of diuers ages and descents were become the vniuersal inhabitants ouer all the land, and in that battail the number of the *Normannes* was diminished by six thousand, beydes those that were drowned: albeit the losse of Englishmen was in the said battail farr greater.

Moreouer of the three or fowre hundreth gentlemen, that came in with the Conqueror whose surnames are registred, in the cattalogue of *Battail Abbey*, hauing had for the moste parte lands giuen vnto them in *England*, yet is it not to bee thought that all of them continued there to the planting of somany families, for that (as lyke enough it is) some were more willing to make money of their land and returne there-with to lue in their own countrey of *Normandie*, as vnto the place moste naturall vnto them. Others might dy without issue: and the issues of some others now and then take end in monasteries, a thing in thole ages vsuall. And thus by one meanes or other may they haue bin somuch worne away

away and diminished, that I think the one half of them, yf it were obserued (as by their surnames it best might bee) would not bee found to haue remayned two ages after, and scarce the one quarter of them to bee remayning at this present.

The moſte
parte of the
gentlemen
of Norman
race extin-
guished.

And as for the comon soldiers, wee are not to think that many of them could in *England* settle themselves and marrie, the Conqueror hauing continuall employment for such kynd of men in his warres and garnisons both in *England* and in *Normandie*. And in *Normandie* vpon such occasions hee carried many of them back againe, and for lyke cause he transported thether sundry troops also of English.

Thus haue I made it plainly appeer (for that some haue inconsiderately believed the contrarie) that the maine corps and body of the realme, notwithstanding the Norman conquest and the former inuasions of the Danes, hath stil consisted of the ancient English-Saxon people, wherein euen vnto this day it doth yet consist. And heervnto accordeth the name of Saiffon, which the Welsh and Irish nations haue continued to call vs by, notwithstanding the irruptions of the Danes and the Normannes.

And whereas some do call vs a mixed nation by reason of these Danes and Normannes coming in among vs, I answere (as formerly I haue noted) that the Danes and the Normannes were once one same people with the Germans, as were also the Saxons; & wee not to bee accompted mixed by hauing only some such ioyned vnto vs againe, as somtyme had one same language and one same originall with vs.

Englishmen
not such a
mixed na-
tion as some
suppose.

OF THE GREAT ANTIQUITIE OF OUR ANCIENT ENGLISH TOUNG;

and of the proprietie, woorthynes and am-
plytude thereof. VVith an explanation
of sundry our moſte ancient En-
gliſh words.

The ſeauenth Chapter.

The grownd
of our En-
gliſh is the
Teutonic
tounge.

OUR ancient Engliſh-Saxon language is
to bee accompted the Teutonic tounge,
& albeit wee haue in later ages mixed
it with many borrowed words, eſpe-
cially out of the Latin and French; yet
remaineth the Teutonic vnto this day the grownd of
our ſpeech, for no other offſpring hath our language
originally had then that.

This language vndoubtedly is that which at the
confuſion of *Babel*, the Teutonic people (thoſe I
mean that were conducted by *Tuſſe*) did ſpeak. And
as the people took their name after their conductor,
ſo the language conſequently took name of the
people.

That this language is indeed ſo ancient, is (be-
ſydes that no antiquitie can tel any other begining
thereof) prooued by a tradipon in theſaid tounge im-
mediately cauſed at the towre of *Babel*, and euer ſince
therein continued euen vnto this day, beeing dayly
with vs in uſe, as alſo with others whoſe language
hath dependance on theſaid tounge. It is this, when it
hapneth

hapneth that any one chanceth to speak confusedly or vainely, without sence or from the purpose, wee say vnto him what Babel poue or by mispronou-
 tion, what bable poue which beeing by our first an-
 ceters brought in vie, vpon the said confusion, whyle yet it remayned among them fresh in memorie, was as
 much among them to say, as what confuse you, or
 what do you imitating them of such a place where
 such confusion was? And whereas I said that this tra-
 dition remaineth stil in such languages as depend on
 the Teutonic tongue, some may obiekt that the woord
 Babel, is also found in the moderne French, which
 dependeth on the Latin: I am not ignorant that so it
 is, but I haue shewed in the foregoing Chapter, that
 the true and ancient French language was also the
 Teutonic-tongue, & that thereof there yet remaineth
 in the now named French, many Teutonic woords,
 as the relykes of their first oldest and right French
 language, and among the rest, the woords Babel and
 Babelar, and in the same sence that the Teutonic
 hath it.

A note of
 the moste
 great anti-
 quitie of our
 language.

This our ancient language consisted moste at the
 first of woords of monosyllable, each hauing his own
 proper signification, as by instinct of God and nature
 they first were receaued and vnderstood, but heerof
 grew this benefit, that by apt ioyning together of two
 or three of these woords of one syllable, new woords
 of more diuersitie of sence and signification were stil
 made and composed, according as the vse of them for
 the more full and perfect expresseing of the composers
 meanings did requyre. By which meanes it grew vnto
 that copiousnes and perfection, that diuers beeing

Our lan-
 guage at the
 first moste
 of monosyl-
 lables.

280 THE ANTIQVITIE AND PROPRIETIE,
very wel learned in other tounge, haue much admy-
red this, when they haue not bin able to fynde any
one vsuall woord in any language, for the which they
could not giue the lyke in this, in thesame very true
nature and sence.

*Becanus his
paradox.*

Among others that haue had great speculation
heerin, *Ioannes Goropius Becanus*, a man very learned
and phisitian vnto the Lady *Marie* Queen of *Hun-
garie*, Regent of the *Netherlands* and syster vnto the
Emperor *Charles the fift*; fel theirby into such a con-
ceyt that he letted not to maintaine it to bee the first
and moſte ancient language of the world; yea the-
same that *Adam* spake in *Paradiſe*. In conference one
day with *Abraham Ortelius* (who had bin acquainted
with *Becanus*) I asked him yf hee thought that *Beca-
nus* himſelf beeing ſo learned as hee was, did in deed
believe this language to bee the firſt of all languages
of the world, to wit, that which was ſpoke by *Adam*:
he told mee that hee verely thought *Becanus* did ſo
believe: and added further, that many learned men
might peradventure laugh at that which hee had
written, but that none would bee able to confute it:
whereby I geſſed that *Ortelius* did much encline
vnto *Becanus* his conceyt. But for myne own parte
albeit I do not think but that *Becanus* his opinion ex-
ceeded his proofs, and that his paradox muſt not pre-
vail againſt a number of the moſt learned of the
world, yet wil it not bee much impertinent to my
purpoſe to alleage ſome few of ſuch things, as hee &
ſuch others after him as incline vnto his conceyt, (&
in ſome points haue found further light and reaſon
then he) do alleage, to ſhew thereby vnto the curious
reader,

reader, what may haue moued them thus to bee conceyted.

They first then making it very doubtfull that the Hebrew was the first language of the world, do by the reasons ensuying, go about to proote the Teutonic to bee it. And first they say that how doubtfull soeuer it may bee, what language it was that *Adam* spake, yet haue not the proper names of *Adam*, *Eue*, *Cain*, *Abel*, *Seth*, &c. bin subiect to change or mistaking, & moſte lykely it is that God would giue vnto those his first creatures such names, as were moſte fit and proper vnto such persons as were themſelues. Whereupon they bring into conſideration, whether in the Hebrew or any language els, those names do more properly betoken such persons as they were, then in the Teutonic tounge they do.

As for exāple, *Adam* in this tounge ſigniſieth liuing breath, the breath of man beeing therein ſo called, which agreeth as wel ſay they, to bee the name of him that beeing formed of clay receaued lyf by the breathing thereon of Almighty God, as earthly, or red-clay, as ſome out of the Hebrew interpret it.

Eue, is in the Teutonic as much to ſay as *conſimilis euen-theſame*, for our woord *euen*, cometh from the Teutonic woord *eue*, and lykwiſe from their *eue-ſo*; cometh our *euen-ſo*, and ſhee was *euen-theſame*, as was *Adam* her husband.

Cain written in old Tentonic ortography *Kain* (for that C and K, are therein vied indifferently) is otherwiſe written *Quain*, & ſigniſieth wrathful, angry or ſhrewd, and ſuch was that vnnatural wicked wretche vnto his good brother *Abel*.

Abel, signifieth one that is sufficient, an *Abelman* for able in Teutonic is written *abel*, & in this first bearer of that name, rightly signifieth a man enabled vnto the seruice of God: for so was in deed this protomartyr of the world.

Seth, in Teutonic alwayes pronounced *Set*, is as much to say as *Positus*, that is, set or placed in the roome or steed of another, to wit, of his righteous brother *Abel*, whome *Cain* slew.

Enoch, albeit of some so written, yet is it pronounced *Enoch*: *E*, signifyeth *Law* or *equitie*, *noth* is as much to say as *yet againe*: so as in this name seemeth to bee expressed and foretold a tyme of equitie or iustice which was yet to come. The bearer heerof walking (whyle heer hee lyued) in equitie before God, was by him accordingly rewarded, by beeing extraordinarily taken away from this vnrighteous world.

But notwithstanding that these and fundry the lyke names, thus found in the Teutonic tounge, are very apt and proper to the persons by them intended, yet may this rather serue to shew the efficacie of this tounge, that is able to yeild as fit and proper significations for these moeste ancient names, as the very Hebrew it self; then that therefore it should challenge place of the Hebrew, which yeildeth not only apt and proper significations for them also, but hath in all reuerend antiquitie caried the reputation & credit of beeing the first language of the world. It may therefore vnto vs suffise, that yf the Teutonic bee not taken for the first language of the world, it cannot bee denied to bee one of the moeste ancientest of the world.

world. And so vndoubtedly taking it to bee, let vs look a litle further into the woorthynesse and propriete thereof.

The name of the Almighty maker and creator of all things, is generally in all this great and spacious tounge called *God*; and from the woord *God*, is deriued the woord *good*. See now how aptly this accordeth, & how the signification of this woord doth also shew the coherence thereof vnto the chiefeft *good*; for that in deed all good cometh from God. But the lyke deriuation and proper coherence is not found in the Latin between *Deus* and *bonus*.

God and good.

In lyke sorte, the malignant enemie of God and all goodnes, is in this tounge called *Deuil*; and whatsoever is of no vertue or goodnes, is called *euil*; see now how *euil*, adhereth to *deuil*; who is in deed the chief substantiue to which this adiectiue belongeth.

Deuil & euil
anciently
deofel and
cofel.

The name of *Heauen*, albeit it was of our anceters written *Hrofen*, yet caried it lyke sence or signification as now it doth, beeing as much to say as *heauen*; or *heaued vp*; to wit, the place that is eleuated.

Hell, beeing opposit and contrarie thereunto hath lyke apt appellation, as beeing *helled ouer*; that is to say, hidden or couered in low obscuritie.

The name of *Man* in Teutonic, is in Latin *Homo*, the female of which creature wee call *woman*; and the latins call her *Mulier*, howbeit the name of *Mulier* hath no depédance in sound with the name of *Homo*, as our name of woman hath with man. It should in deed be written *womb-man*, for so is it of antiquitie and rightly, the b. for easynesse & redynesse of sound beeing in the pronountiation left out; and how apt a

Vir not
beeing so
general.

Man and
woman.

194 THE ANTIQVITIE AND PROPRIETIE,
 composed woord this is, is plainly seen. And as *Homo*
 in Latin doth signifie both man and woman, so in our
 tounge the feminyne creature also hath as wee see, the
 name of man, but more aptly in that it is for due
 distinction composed with womb, shee beeing that
 kynde of man that is wombed, or hath the womb of
 conceptiō, which the man of the male kynd hath not.

VVomā why
 so called.

Sundry other the lyke examples I could giue of
 the woorthynesse of our tounge, but these may heer
 suffice, & the rather for that the explanation of many
 of our old English woords do in this chapter ensue.

Rodericus
 Tolertanus.
 Iustus Lip-
 sius in his
 epistles.

The Teutonic tounge beeing as before is shewed,
 one of the mooste ancient languages of the world,
 was also of very great amplytude; for as *Rodericus*
Tolertanus witnesseth, and *Iustus Lipsius* also affir-
 meth, all *Highduitsch-land*, *East-land*, and *Nether-*
land, as also the kingdomes of *Denmark*, *Norway*,
Sweden, and *England*, did all speak this language,
 and heervnto they might haue added *Thule*, other-
 wise called *Island*, yf not the rest of the northern Iles
 beyond it.

But as all things vnder heauen do in length of
 tyme enclyne vnto alteration and varietie, so do the
 languages also, yea such as are not mixed with others
 that vnto them are strange and extrauagant, but euen
 within themselues do these differences grow and en-
 creasse: the experience heerof is seen in this our now
 spoken-of Teutonic-tounge, the high-duitsch differeth
 from the low, though neither do borrow from any
 extrauagant language: yf any in speaking or writing
 in any of these touns do chance heer and there to
 thrust in a borrowed Latin or French woord, it is
 more

more then hee needeth to do (seeing the Teutonic is moſte copious) and more alſo then is tolerable; ſuch bringing in of borrowed woords beeing held abſurd and friuolous. The *Daniſh*, *Norwegian* and *Swediſh*, do again differ from theſe, and ſome litle each from other, & the *Iſland* ſpeech alſo: and yet none of them borrowing ought from any extrauagant language that originaly is not of that nature. This is a thing that eaſely may happen in ſo ſpacious a tounge as this, it beeing ſpoken in ſo many different countries and regions, when wee ſee that in ſome ſeuerall partes of *England* it ſelf, both the names of things and pronouciations of woords are ſomewhat different, and that among the countrey people that neuer borrow any woords out of the Latin or French, and of this different pronouciation one example in ſteed of many ſhal ſuffiſe, as this: for pronouncing according as one would ſay at *London*. *I would eat more cheeſe yf I had it*; the northern man ſaith, *Iy ſud cat mare cheeſe gin ay hadet*; and the weſterne man ſaith: *Chud cat more cheeſe an chad it*. Lo heer three different pronouciations in our own countrey in one thing, & heerof many the lyke examples might be alleaged.

Theſe differēces in one ſame language do comōly grow among the comon people; & ſomtymes vpon the parents imitating the il pronouciation of their yong children, and of il pronouciation laſtly enſuyeth il wryting. Other languages no doubt are ſubiect vnto the lyke, yea thoſe three that are grown from the Latin, as the *Italian*, *Spaniſh*, and *French*, which to auoyd other examples may appeer in the name in Latin, of *Iacobus*; which in *Italian* is grown

196 THE ANTIQVITIE AND PROPRIETIE
to bee *Giacomo*, in Spanish *Diego*, & in French *Iaques*.

The Nether-
land & East
land speech
draweth
neerer to the
old Teuto-
nic then the
Highduitsch.

A question mee thinks may heer bee moued, that seeing the Teutonic is so far spred and also varied, which then it is that wee may hold for the more ancient, or the rightest & least varied frō the first originall, that is, whether the High-duitsch, Low-duitsch, or Eastlādish-duitsch bee it? To this I answere, that as the maritime partes of countries were inhabited before the inlandes that ly furthest from the sea; the ancient language was their first planted, and is lyke to haue bin moste varied by such as went afterward to dwel more higher and disperfed abroad in the countrey, and therefore I hold the East-landish and Low-duitsch, to draw more neerer the true original then the High-duitsch. And for further proof heerof it is to bee noted, that all such writings as are found in the old Teutonic, do more neerer agree to the speech of these partes, then to the High-duitsch. And as for the more varied Teutonic of *Denmark*, *Norway*, and *Sweden*, it is to bee vnderstood that these countries were not peopled so soon as *Germanie*, but afterward when *Germanie* so abounded with people, that they were cōstreyned to seek habitations more northerly, where the Germans at the first by reason of the greater cold and barrenesse of the soile, would not chuse sooner then in *Germanie* to make their dwelling places.

And whereas some may further obiekt that as wee fynd the written Teutonic of some ages past, to bee varied from that which now modernly is vsed, so peraduenture was that Teutonic that wee fynd so anciently written, much varied from that which was vsed some ages before.

To

To this I answered, that I am not of that opinion for diuers reasons, and chiefly because people in former ages were nothing so curious or delighted with varying their speech, as of late ages they are grown to bee, but kept their old language as they did their old fassion of apparel; in both which the world hath of later ages more then in former tymes bin delighted; and in this age of ours much more then euer: in-
 somuch as the Germans themselves, who haue bin especially noted in former tymes not to bee delighted in changing their long continued manner of apparel, are now also falne to the change thereof: some of them imitating the fassion of the Italians, others of the French, and others of the Spanish; all which may argue this age of ours more giuen to change, then any other former tyme whatsoeuer.

This age
 more giuen
 to varietie
 then any
 other.

Furthermore whereas it may bee obiected, that seeing there is such varietie found in the speeches of somany sundry prouinces, as do now speak the Moderne Teutonic tounge, each beeing in length of tyme grown to some difference in woords and pronou-
 tiations from other, and to haue framed some woords in peculier vse to it self: how then may a man fynde out, where and which bee the woords which are in deed of the ancient and very Teutonic tounge? To
 answered this in brief and at once; they are infallibly all those woords which do stil remain in generall vse throughout all the countries where any kynd of Teu-
 tonic is spoken, & those also that remain in vse in the mooste parte of those prouinces, though the rest may haue left or forgotten them: for albeit as is aforesaid,
 euery countrey may haue some difference in it self,

198 THE ANTIQVITIE AND PROPRIETIE
yet an infinit number of woords do remain so dispersed among all, or comon to all or the moſte parte, that howſoeuer the ortography may heer and there perhaps through different pronountiation happen to bee varied (and ſo of ſome not diſcerned for ſuch as they truly bee) yet are ſuch woords truly all one, and vndoubtedly of the firſt and moſte ancient Teutonic-toung.

And as touching our Engliſh toung, which is more ſwarued from the original Teutonic then the other languages thereon alſo depending: this is the leſſe to bee marueled at, becauſe wee are by the ſea ſequeſtered from the main continent where moſte it is in uſe: an example heerof wee may note in our Corniſhmen, who beeing ſequeſtered from the Welſhmen, but by a litle arme of the ſea do alſo varie from them in their language, though not ſo much as the Britans in *France*, who are yet more ſeperated: and yet was the language of theſe three originally one, which their ſpeeches albeit ſomewhat differing, do yet ſufficiently witnes.

And notwithstanding the ſomuch ſwaruing of our toung from the original, I durſt for a trial of the great dependance which yet it holdeth with that which beeing iſſued from theſame root is ſpoken in the continent, wryte an Epiſtle of choſen-out woords yet uſed among the people of ſundry ſhyres of *England*, as alſo of the people of *VVeſtphalia*, *Frieſland*, and *Flanders*, and the countries lying between them, that ſhould wel bee vnderſtood both of Engliſhmen and Duytſhmen, ſo great is the neernes of our vnmixed Engliſh with their yet uſed Duytſh. It is not lōg ſince that

An example
of the neer-
nes of our
language to
the Duytſh.

that an Englishman traailing by wagon in *VWest-Flanders*, and hearing the wagoner to call vnto his man and say, *De string is losse/ bind de string aen de waegen vast.* presently vnderstood him as yf hee had said, *The string is loose/ bynd the string on the wagon fast/* and weening the follow to haue bin some English clown, spake vnto him in English. I haue diuers tymes in noting the neernes of that and our language, obserued certaine of our old countrey rymes to accord with theirs, both in self ryme and self sence, which is a very great argument, of the ancient neernes of our and their language.

As for example.

Wee say,	{	<i>Winters thunder is somers wunder.</i>
They say,	{	<i>Winters donder is somers wonder.</i>
Wee say,	{	<i>An apple in May is as good as an ey.</i>
They say,	{	<i>En apple in Mey is so goet als en ey.</i>

Our particular language albeit it could not by the Normannes be changed, but that both the noble name of Englishmen, and their English speech did stil remaine, yet became it by their coming among them to bee much mixed with French: & heer concerning this language which now beareth the name of *Frēch*, I hold it not amisse to take occasiō, to giue the reader some knowlege more then is vulgar. The countrey of *Gallia*, now called *France*, was anciently inhabited of the Gaules, but what language the Gaules did speak is now in some question, *Ceasar* saith in the begining of his comentaries, that they had amōg them three languages, but I should rather think that they only differed as the *High-duitch*, *Low-duitch*,

200 THE ANTIQVITIE AND PROPRIETIE,
and Eastlandish-duitsch, then that they were three
strange and distinct languages.

How France
and spaine
came to
speak broken
Latin.

VVhēce the
name of Ro
mānces, or
Romant co-
meth.

The Romans hauing brought the countrey of
Gallia vnder their subiection, did seek to bring the
people to speak the Latin or Roman tounge, and to
that end did set forth all their edicts proclamations
& publyke writings in Latin: the lyke whereof they
also practized in *Spaine*, where the Cantabrian or Bis-
cain tounge was before generally spoken, but by this
meanes the comon people both of *Gallia* & *Spaine*,
were within a whyle brought from their old lan-
guages to speak a broken kynd of Latin; each nation
apprehending and pronouncing it after his manner;
& either calling it the Roman tounge. The Spagniards
calling to this day such verses as they make in their
language, by the name of Romances; and so did the
French also, as may appeer by the tytle of the poesie
written in French by *Iohn Clopinel* alias *Meung*, by
him entituled, *le Romant de la Rose*, and afterward
translated into English by *Geffrey Chaucer*, with the
tytle of *The Romant of the Rose*. Moreouer a straāger
trauailing in the countrey of *Liege*, and not speaking
the countrey language, shal somtymes heare the pe-
sants say vnto him, *parlé Romain*, that is, *speak Romā*,
meaning the language which themselves do speak,
which beeing anciently taken from the Romans as
aforesaid, remaineth by tradition among the countrey
people with the name of the Roman tounge.

The *Gaules* thus hauing lost their ancient lan-
guage, & learned a broken or corrupt kynd of Latin;
Faramōd after this coming out of *Germanie*, with his
Francks or French people anciently of that countrey,
and

and entring into *Gallia* (much about the tyme, as I haue noted before, that *Hingistus* with the Saxons who were neighbours in *Germanie* to the Franks, entred into *Britaine*) both hee and his people spake their own Frankish or French tounge, to wit, a kynd of Teutonic, which after the speakers thereof had gotten this other name. This lāguage there cōtinued the raignes of *Faramond*, *Clodion*, *Merouee*, *Chilperic*, *Clouis*, *Childebert*, & *Clothaire*, vnto the tyme of *Cherebert*, who was the eight French king and as saith *Venantius Fortunatus* which *Papirius Mafonius* also affirmeth, spake both his own natural Frankish or French tounge, and the language which the Gaules then spake, and was the first of the French kings saith this ancient author *Venantius*, that spake Latin, meaning the corrupted Latin language which the Gaules then vsed : the which hee also brought in vse among his people. And the Gaules now mixing themselves with the Franks, and with them becoming one nation they were cōtent to lose their ancient name of Gaules, and with them to beare the name of Franch or Franchmen, and because the name of Franch or French was now made generall, the broken Latin language vsed of the Gaules, became within a whyle to bee called after the people which now generallie spake it, and so caried as vntil now it doth, the name of the French tounge, and generally extinguished the ancient and true French tounge in deed, leauing notwithstanding many woords thereof mingled with this later, which therein do yet remain.

*Venantius
Fortunatus
libro 6.*

*See Girard
Du Haillan.*

And because the aforesaid old and true French, was in effect all one with our ancient English, I wil

202 THE ANTIQVITIE AND PROPRIETIE,

to satisfy the curious reader giue him heer a taste thereof in these few ensuying verses, which I haue taken out of *Otfridus* his preface to the fowre gospels by him translated about eight hundreth yeares past, out of Latin into old-french ryme. Thus they are.

*Otfridus in
prefat. Euā.*

Old French.

*Nu wil ih scriban vnser heil/
Now wil I wryte our health,
saluation.*

*Euangeliono deil/
Of the Gospel the deal,
the parte.*

*So ist nu hiar begunun/
So is it now heer begun,
In Frankisga tungun/
In the French tounge.*

Heerby may appeer to such as are any whit acquainted with our old English tounge, what great neernes was between that and this ancient French. Howbeit the author beeing a scholer hath framed two of these his woords from the Latin, which in deed do not properly belong to his own language, that is, *scriban* and *Euangeliono*.

*willeramus
Abbas Mers-
burgensis.*

After him *VVilleramus* Abbot of *Mersburge*, translated lykwise out of Latin into old-french, *Canticum Canticorum*, wherevpon hee made his learned paraphrasis. One of his chapters among the rest hee beginneth thus.

*Stand vph Friundinna myn/ Ilego.
Stand vp shee-freind myn, speedely,
Myn Doua/ myn scona/ and ham.
My Doue, my faire, and come.*

Such

Such lyke language is all the rest, and heerby it may bee seen, that the old-French and the old-English had then as great affinitie together, as our northerne and southerne English haue at this day.

The French as is said hauing left this language and entertayned another vnder thesame name, the Normannes coming afterward to setle among them, brought with them an ancient lāguage of their own; which yf they had stil kept & brought into *England*, Englishmen and they had not seemed so great strangers one to another, neither had they made any more alteration in our tounge then did the Danes, because it was in deed thesame language, and in effect all one with ours. But they did in the tyme of their beeing in *France*, proue so good schollers, that as the French forgot their ancient Teutonic tounge, and learned the language, which the Gaules in steed of their own ancient lost language did then speak, so they also learned thesame: and lost their own, and that in the space as in the foregoing chapter hath bin said, of one hundreth, and fiftie yeares. And now coming therewith to our countrey, they could not conquere the English language as they did the land, howbeit as alredy I haue noted, they much mingled and tempred it with their French.

Some few ages after came the poet *Geffrey Chaucer*, who writing his poesies in English, is of some called the first illuminator of the English tounge: of their opinion I am not (though I reuerence *Chaucer* as an excellent poet for his tyme) He was in deed a great mingler of English with French, vnto which language by lyke for that hee was descended of

Chaucer
mingled our
English
tounge with
French.

French or rather wallon race, hee caryed a great affection.

Since the tyme of *Chaucer*, more Latin & French, hath bin mingled with our tounge then left out of it, but of late wee haue falne to such borrowing of woords from, Latin, French, and other touns, that it had bin beyond all stay and limit, which albeit some of vs do lyke wel and think our tounge thereby much bettred, yet do strangers therefore carry the farre lesse opinion thereof, some saying that it is of it self no language at all, but the scum of many languages, others that it is most barren, and that wee are dayly faine to borrow woords for it (as though it yet lacked making) out of other languages to patche it vp withall, and that yf wee were put to repay our borrowed speech back again, to the languages that may lay claime vnto it; wee should bee left litle better then dumb, or scarfly able to speak any thing that should bee fensible.

Our tounge
discredited
by our lan-
guage-bor-
rowing.

For myne own parte I hold them deceaued that think our speech bettered by the aboundance of our dayly borrowed woords, for they beeing of an other nature and not originally belonging to our language, do not neither can they in our tounge, beare their natural and true deryuations: and therefore as wel may we fetch woords fro the Ethiopians, or East or West Indians, and thrust them into our language and baptise all by the name of English, as those which wee dayly take from the Latin, or languages thereon depending: and heer-hence it cometh (as by often experience is found) that some Englishmen discoursing together, others beeing present and of our own nation,

OF THE ANCIENT ENGLISH TOUNG. 207
tion, and that naturally speak the English tounge, are
not able to vnderstand what the others say, notwith-
standing they call it English that they speak.

And heer among choise of many, to shew one ex-
ample of the inuillitie of this kynde of speech wil
not bee need lesse. So fell it out not many yeares past,
that a principal courtier wryting from *London* to a
personage of authoritie in the north partes, touching
the training of men and prouyding furniture for
warre, willed him among other things to *equippe* his
horses, the receauer of the letter with some labor
came at the last to the vnderstanding of it all, except
equippe, whereof in no sorte hee could conceaue the
meaning: in the end hee consulted about it with di-
uers gentlemen in the countrey thereabouts, but none
could resolue him. It was among them remembred
that wee vsed in our language the woord quipping,
and the woord whipping, the first not proper for
horses, but somtymes vsed to men, the later not fit for
gentlemennes horses, but for carters iades. In fyne,
none of them all beeing able to fynde in all the En-
glish they had, what *equippe* might meane, a messen-
ger was sent of purpose to the court at *London* to
learne the meaning thereof of the wryter of the
letter.

Equipping
of horses.

I wil not cloy the reader with other such examples
nor with the repeating of such lyke discourses as hee
vsed, that told how as hee itinerated hee obuiated a
rurall person, and interrogating him concerning the
transitation of the tyme, and the demonstration of the
passage, found him a meer simplician, whereas yf in
his true speech he had asked him, what was the clock

206 THE ANTIQVITIE AND PROPRIETIE,
and which had bin his way, his ignorance might of
the simplician haue bin enformed in both.

Such examples (how euer wee delight in strange
language-borrowing) do when wee heare them,
found very sportefull in our own eares: and therefore
giue more libertie to strangers to bee in this case
merrie with vs, seeing they may say they haue nought
els for the loan of their woords. But doubtlesse yf
our selues pleased to vse the treasure of our own
tounge, wee should as litle need to borrow woords,
from any language, extranagant from ours, as any
such borroweth from vs: our tounge in it self beeing
sufficient and copious enough, without this dayly
borrowing from somany as take scorne to borrow
any from vs.

Our tounge
is moſte co-
pious yf we
pleaſe to
make our
moſte vſe
thercof.

And now fearing leaſt wading further heerin I
might become offeſſiue where I endeour to pleaſe,
I wil heer ſeek to content the curious reader by Al-
phabeticall explaining a number of our moſte an-
cient Engliſh woords, ſome by their moderne orto-
graphy, others by ſhewing, (with the ſignification of
them) what French woords wee haue taken in ſteed
of them, as alſo ſuch as wee haue not left of, but ſtil vſe
for choiſe, though wee haue borrowed woords in
French to lyke ſence.

3bocen/

A

Abogen. *Bovved*. Heerof a bow taketh name because it is made to bee abogen or *bovved* when therewith wee shoot, a Bowgh of a tree is also so called for beeing apt to bee abogen or *bovved*, and *bowes* at the very first inuention of them were made of *bowghs*, of trees & so accordingly in our ancient language took that name.

Acenned, or *Akenned*. For that c. and k. are in our ancient language pronounced alyke; signifieth *Brought-foorth* or *borne*, we yet say of certaine beasts, that they haue kenled when they haue brought foorth their yong ones.

Acyrred, or *kyred*. We vse for this the French woord *Turned*.

Adle. *Il*, or diseased. Wee yet vse to call egges adle when they are corrupt and il.

Adruncen or *fordruncen*. *Drovrned*, heerof cometh also our woord drunken, heer that is drunk, beeing as it were inwardly drowned.

Acker, or *Aeker*. A *cornfeild* or *corneland*, wee now vse the woord *Aker*, for a certaine space or measure of grownd.

Ahta, *Ehta* or *Ehta*. *Inheritances*, or owned possessions.

Aelt or *Aelk*. We haue since made it *Each*.

Aelstwe. wee now write and pronounce it *Also*.

Aethelbozen-man or *Ethelbozen-man*. A *nobleborne-man*, a *nobleman-borne*, also a gentleman by birth.

Aethryne. We vse for this the French woord *Touche*.

Aethryned, or *Athryned*. We vse in steed heerof, *Toucehd*.

Aetpud. *Appeered*.

Afed. *Fed*, or after the French, *nowrished*.

Afgod. An *Idol*. *Afgodnes* *Idolatrie*.

Agene, or *Eagen*. *Ovvn*, proper.

Agilt. *Recompence*.

Agoten. *Povvred-out*, goters otherwise gutters are accordingly so called.

Ahild. *Hidden*, we also deriue for this from the French, the woord *couered*.

Alder, signifieth Of all, and seemeth as abridged of the woords, Of all that are, and vsed in the superlatiue degree, as for example.

Alder=best. *Best of all.*

Alder=earst. *First of all,*

Alder=lest. *Last of all.*

Alder=liest. *Belouedst of all.*

Alder=meast. *Moste of all.*

Alder=sconest, or **Alder=farest**. *Moste beautifull of all.*

Alder=eldest. *Oldest of all, and so forth of a great number the lyke.*

Alcats. *Euery-vvay, or how-euer-it-bee, &c.*

Alpsed. *Alorved, licenced.*

Alpse. *Release. Alpsed. Released.*

Alpsednes. *Releasing, ransome, redemption.*

Alna. *Only, or alone.*

Andede. *Confessed. Andeding. Confesing.*

Ansycnes. *A Resemblance, also an Image.*

Ansycn. *Lyuelyhood, substance, comodities.*

Ansyna. or **Ansune**. *On-seen, or a thing looked on, we vse for this the French woord Face.*

Anweald. *Authoritie, power.*

Anwprd. or **Anwzrd**. *An ansvere, or a reply.*

Areared. *Set vp, erected, edified.*

Arndraga. *An Erandbearer, a Messenger, and somtymes an ambassador.*

Aspnder. *A sunder, seperate.*

Astige. or **stzhe**. *To ascend, or mount vp.*

Astieging. or **stieging**. *Ascending.*

Astiegnung. For this after the Latin wee say *Ascension*. From astige, wee deryue many woords of mounting vpwards, as **stigh-ropes**, which wee now pronounce **stizrops**, beeing first deuised with cords or ropes before they were made with leather and Iron fastned to it. Also **stighel**, now of vs pronounced **style**, **steghers**, now **stayers**, and the lyke.

Astpred. *Stirred, moued.*

Athyened.

Sthened. *Extended, stretched out.*

Stugon, or Atogon Dravve.

Swritten *VVriuen.*

Swarpen, or Awurpen. *Throvvyn or cast.*

V Vee call in some partes of *England*, a molle, a mouldvvarp, which is asmuch to say as a *cast-earth*, and when plancks or boords are awry wee say they cast, or they vvarp. *And-vvarp*, anciently *Hand-warp*, took that name, as is said, of hands beeing their cut or and cast into the riuer of *Skeld*.

Awyld, or Aweld. *VVelded.* Or menaged by strength.

Awyrgud. *Accursed*, also strangled or throtled, whereof we yet haue the woord *VVurried*.

B

B ald. *Bold*, it also signifieth swift or suddaine.

B earne. A chyld, *Bearna/ Chyldren.*

Berne. A barne, for the keeping of corne.

Bebode, or gebode, or beod. *Bidden or comaunded.*

Bebodun. *Comaundements.*

Bebpyged. *Buried.* See **Bpyrig.**

Beclypt *Embraced.*

Bead or Gebcad. *Prayer.* **Gebcadun.** *prayers.* Heerof cometh the name of beades (they beeing made to pray on) as also of Beadsman.

Bcad=faring. *Going on pilgrimage.*

Begcond. *Beyond.*

Bist *Bee-ist*, as, thow bist, for, thow arte.

Bleawd. *Betrayed.* V Vee yet call a noughty person a leawd fellow, which by the right signification of the woord, is asmuch to say as a trothlesse, or perfidious fellow.

Beloken, or Belocud. *Locked, or fast-shut*

Bendun. *Bandes.*

Beheht, or Beheght. *Promis.*

Beom. A tree, wee vse the name now for the tree when, it is squared out, calling it a beam of timber, whereby is ment a tree for buylding, for timbring in our old English, is buylding.

210 THE ANTIQVITIE AND PROPRIETIE,
Berg or **Beorg**. Metaphorically a *mountain*. See further
heerof in **B**rig.

Bergun, **Beorgun**, and **Bergena**. *Mountaines*. See further
of this in **B**rig.

Besceawud. *Ouerlooked*, suruiewed or beheld. We say yet
sometymes that one lookes a sceaw.

Bescyldiged. *Accused*, of default or cryme.

Besmit. *Besmudded*, made fowle or defyled.

Beswpc. *Deceat*. **Beswpcen**. *Deceaued*.

Beswpcer. A *deceauer*, wee now though moste impro-
perly, and with a farr streyned sence, call a deceauer a
cosener.

Beswungen. *Beswringed*, scourged.

Betpned. *Hedged-about*. Wee vse yet in some partes of En-
gland, to say tyning for hedging.

Beward. *VVound-up*, or wrapped vp.

Beweddud. *VVedded*, or espoused.

Bewendud or **Bewended**. *Turned about*.

Bpgen and **spellen**. *Buying* and *selling*.

Bigspe or **Byspe**. A *parable*, a *by-woord*, a *prouerb* or
phraise of speech.

Biltthe or **Bilda**. An *Image*.

Binne. A *manger*.

Birt. or **Beorth**, or **Gebirt**. *Birth*.

Bismoz or **Bysmer**. *Blasphemy*.

Blead. *Frute*.

Bletsud. *Blessed*.

Busse. *Ioy*. **Blissing**. *Reioysing* or *ioying*.

Blith or **Blp**, or **Blyde**. *Ioyfull*, *glad*.

Blode. *Blood*.

Bocstane or **Buokstaf**. A *character* or letter for a book.

Bode. A *messenger*, a *tyding-bringer*.

Bodiung. *Preaching*. **Bodud**. *Preached*. To **Bodige**. To
preach.

Bogas. *Boughes of trees*.

Bot wee now wryte it **Boot**. It is a *yeilding of amen-*
des, or *suplying a defect*.

Booz

Bourn. A vvater springing out of the earth, also the brook issuing thereof. **Bourn** is somtymes taken for water it self, and in *Brabant* a wel is called a **Bournpit**.

Breod. Bread.

Bridas. Birdes, properly yong fowles.

Brothoz or **Brodoz.** A brother.

Brydguman. It is abreuiated of *Brydgo dman* the goodman of the bryde.

Brydgrome. The groome of the *Bryd*, because on the mariage day he serueth and waiteth on the table of the bryde.

Buhfomnesse or **Bughfomnesse.** *Plyablenesse* or bowfomnesse, to wit, humbly itooing or bowing down in signe of obedience. *Chaucer* wrytes it **Burfomnesse**.

Burg or **Buruh.** Whereof wee yet say *Bourough* or *Bourrow*. It metaphorically signifieth a town hauing a walle or some kynd of closure about it: also a castle. All places that in old tyme had among our anceters the name of *Bourough*, were places one way or other fensed or fortified.

Burgun or **Burgen.** *Bouroughes*.

Bprigc or **Birighe** signifieth moſte properly *To hyd*, and also to *burie*, which accordeth with theſame ſence, for that burying is a hyding of the dead body in the earth.

Birgen. Hidden, also a graue.

Bprgenum. Graues.

It was a thing vſual amōg our old Saxon anceters, as by *Tacitus* it also ſeemeth to haue bin among the other Germans, that the dead bodies of ſuch as were flaine in the feild were not laid in graues; but lying vpon the grownd were couered ouer with turues or cloddes of earth. And the more in reputation the perſons had bin, the greater and higher were the turues raiſed vp ouer their bodies. This ſome vſed to call *Bprigting*, ſome *Bgeorging*, and ſome *Buriging*.

212 THE ANTIQVITIE AND PROPRIETIE
of the dead all beeing one thing though differently
pronounced, & from whence we yet retaine our speech
of *burying of the dead*, that is hyding of the dead.
Now because these *Byrighs* or *Beorighs*, &c. (beeing
as much to say as hyding-places) seemed as hilles; the
name of *Byrigh* or *Beorigh* (now *Bergh*) became
(though metaphorically) all *Germanie* ouer, to bee
the general name of a mountaine, more then the name
of *hit* or *duun* there formerly vsed. I am the more wil-
ling to shew the originall meaning of this woord,
because of the number of places in *England* which
end in *bery*, *bury*, and *borow*, originally all one: and
properly signifying to shrowd or to hyde, which may
also appeer by our calling in some partes of *En-
gland*, the places made for conies to hyde and shrowd
themselues in, *Conte-beries* or *Conte-buries*, & in other
partes of *England* *Conte-burrowes*. The name also of
Burgh or *Burrough*, now comonly wryten *Burrow*,
which wee giue to some townes, is from hence ori-
ginally deryued: places first so called hauing bin
with walles of turf or clods of earth fensed about for
men to bee shrowded in, as in fortes or castles. And
where the woord *burie*, is the termination of a citie
as *Canterburie*, *Salisburie*, and the lyke, it metaphori-
cally signifieth a high or chief place.

Bery Bury
Burrou,
whence de-
ryued.

Byrthin. A Burthen.

Bysinered. Oprobriously vsed in speech, or deryded.

Bysne. An example.

The

C or K.

The reader is to obserue that the letter C, was with our anceters taken and sounded as K, moreouer when somtymes a single or dooble v followed next vnto the C. then was it pronounced as Q.

Caster. This is no ancient Saxon woord, though often found in old Saxon wryting, it is rather borrowed from the Latin woord *Castrum*, betokening a *Castle* or *fortrefse*, *caster*, *cafter*, *chester*, and *ceter*, beeing the terminations of the names of manie places in *England*, do (as I take it) signifie all one thing, and that the places hauing such terminations had castles or fortresses buylt by the Romans before our English-Saxon anceters came into *Britaine*.

Ceage. *A key. Clauis.*

Ceapman. For this, wee now say *chapman*, which is as much to say as a *marchant* or cope-man.

Cemp or kemp. Properly one that *fighteth hand to hand*, wherevnto the name in Teutonic of kempfight accordeth, and in French of Combat.

Certaine among the ancient Germans made profession of beeing Campfighters or kempfighters for all is one: and among the Danes and *Swedens*, were the lyke as, *Starcater*, *Arngrim*, *Arnerod*, *Haldan*, and fundry others. They were also called *kempanas*, whereof is deryued our name of *Campion*, which after the French ortography some pronounce *Champion*.

A Cemp or kemp. Is somtymes also taken for a *soldier*, in regard that his profession is to fight.

Ceoþle. Now written *Churle*, anciently vnderstood

214 THE ANTIQVITIE AND PROPRIETIE,
for a sturdy fellow.

Cidde. *Chid*, rebuked.

Cist. *Kist*, or kissed.

Clath. *Cloth.* **Clething.** *Clothes*, garments.

Clough. A kynd of breach down along the syde of a hil.

Clyf. A rock, on the sea syd seeming cleft or broken of.

Clypud. *Called*, wee do yet somtymes say clepid, and yclepid, for called.

Cnapa. A boy, lad or lackey, heer-hence cometh our name of knaue.

Encozisse. A generation.

Con varied into **Coon.** *Stout*, or valliant.

Cnht. Now *Knight*. See the signification thereof, among the names of dignities.

Cop. A head, also the top of a thing standing in height.

Costnung or **Costning.** *Temptation*.

Costud or **Costed.** *Tempted*.

Cote. A litle slightly built countrey hovvs, also a place for sheep.

Creast. A handicraft, or occupation.

Culfra. Whereof in some partes of *England*, we yet retaine the name of *Culuer*, otherwise we vse the borrowed French name of *Pigeon*.

Cunne or **Kenne.** *To descerne*, or to know.

Cunne. Also signifieth *thankfulnes*, or gratitude.

Cuth. *Known*, acquainted familiar, as contrariwise *uncuth* is *vnknown*, *vnusuall*, &c.

Cweller, wee now wryte **Queller.** A troobler, also a tormenter or punisher of men, it was also anciently somtymes taken for a hangman.

Cwene Now written *Queen*. See the last chapter.

Cwerterne. A kynd of prison.

Cweth. Now *Quoth*, as when wee say Quoth I, or quoth hee.

Cwyrne. A *quearne*, otherwise a mill.

Cwyth. A *vvil*, a testament heerof remaineth yet our woord bequeath.

Cyld

Cyld. *Chyld.* **Cyldheyd.** *Chyldheyd.*

Cyn. *Kynde,* nature also generation or offspring.

Cyne. *Naturall.*

Cyne-helme. It should bee **Cyntings-helme**, but by abreu-
uiation it is become **Cyne-helme**.

It is as much to say as a *Kings crown*, wheerby it may appeer that the crownes of the most ancient English-Saxon kings, were worne and vsed by them for their helmets in warre; & it may bee that the crownes of all kings were at the first intended for their helmets; and made of different fasion from other helmets for the more ornament of their princely persons that wore them, who were by them to bee known respected and reuerenced, &c.

Cyntng. By abreuuiation of the two sillables into one is become *Kyng*: the name in our toung of foueraigne dignitie. For the etymologie, whereof look in the last chapter.

Cyningdome or **Cyningryc**, do both answere to the Latin woord *Regnum*. **Cyningdome** is by abreuuiation become *Kingdome*, the additions of *dome* and *ryc*, signifying both one thing, to wit, the *iurisdiction* or *dominion*, belonging to some one publyk person.

And whereas wee say a kingdome, they say in *Germanie* a *Kiningryc*. But whereas wee say a *Bishopdom*, they say a *Bishopdome*. Coningryc
Bishopdom,

Cyric by abreuuiation *kyrk*, and by thrusting in *ch*. in steed of *C.* or *K.* it was first alienated to *Chyrche*, and since further of by the making of it *Churche*.

Cyste or **Byst.** *A chest.*

D

Dead=boot. Offices or seruice donne for the dead. It is som-
tymes also vsed for pennance,

Daeges=fare A dayes=fare. A dayes iourney.

Deale. A Deal, a parte or portion.

Deald. Deuyded, parted delt out.

Dene or den. Somtymes written deane, and somtymes

denu. A valey, also a caue or hollow place in the earth.

Deare. Grief, harme, or dolor.

Deman. A Deputie, a substitute.

Deorweorth. Deervorth, pretious.

Dihht. or **Dight.** Meeter or ryme, heerof cometh our name
of ditties for things that bee dighted or made in meeter.

Dighting or **indighting** is also prose, set foorth in exact
order.

Dome. Iudgement. **Dome=stle.** A iudgement seat a tribunal.

Domes=man. A Iudge.

Duna also **dusa.** A Doue.

Dugud or **dought.** Vertue, wee yet somtymes call a man of
strength and valour, a doughtie man.

It is also written **thugud**, whereof they vse in some
partes of *England*, the woord thewghes or thewes,
to wit, vertues good qualities or partes of the mynd.
They say yet in the north when a thing hath lost his
force or vertue, that it dowes not.

Drhten or **Drighthen** / taken for the name of
Lord, was by our anceters only atributed to *God*;
as **Drihten** *God*, for *Lord God*; which signifying
as it should seem, the righteous *God*, was vnto
Almightie God, who is moſte righteous rightly
appropriated: the name otherwise of *Lord*, hauing
with our anceters bin *Laford*.

Dune a *hil*, comonly that stretcheth or extendeth it
ſelf out in length. They call in *Holland* the ſand banks
which

which ly vpon the sea syde, the dunes. The town of *Dunkerke*, rightly in English *Dunchurche*, hath had that appellation by beeing situate in the Dunes, or Sandbanks. Wee yet in some partes of *England*, call hilles, downes.

Dure or *durh* Now a *door*, it is as much to say as through, and not improper because it is a *durh-fare* or thorow-passage.

Dure-weard. A *doorwarder*, a doorkeeper a porter.

Dwas-licht. That which wee otherwise call the *Foolish-fyre*.

Dwolma. A *gulf*, otherwise in Teutonic an *Inham*.

Dwyned, also *for-dwyned*. Vanished away,

Dyble or *dyghle*. *Secret*. *Dyhlenesse*. *Secresie*.

Dyrstelyc. *Boldly*, or as wee might say durstingly, of one daring to do a thing of hazard or difficultie.

Dysge. *Foolish*. *Dysega*. A *fool*.

E

E 1. As also *E* *lavy*, right or equitie.

Ead or *Eath* or *Ed*. An *Oth*, also a plighted promise or couenant.

Eadthe. *Happy*. *Eadthnesse*. *Happynesse*.

Eadmode. *Humble*. *Eadmodnesse*. *Humillitie*.

Ea, an. *Eyen*, eyes, now in the Netherlands *Oghen*.

Ealder. An *elder*, a senior.

Eldran or *pldran*. *Elders* (*seniores*) also *anceters*.

Ealderfcty *Eldership*, *senioritie*.

Ear. *Honor*. *Earmoethe*. *Honor-vvorthie*, *honorable*.

Earme. In the Netherlands *arme*: wee haue borrowed in place thereof the French woord *poore*.

Earmnesse. *Pouertie*.

Earand. An *errand*, a message.

Earna. An *eagle*. *Earnas*. *Eagles*.

Earst. *First*.

Eatfagt. *Periured*, also *vnlaide* or *denyed*.

E e

Ethel

Ethel or **Aethel**. Noble or gentle.

Eathelyc. Easely, possible. **Ethe**. Easy **vneth**. Vneasy,

Ece, Eternal. **Ecnesse**. Eternitie.

Eft. Againe. **Eftsona**. Eftsoones, forthwith, or again.

Eltheodisc-men. Aliens outlanders, men borne in other countries.

Eorþbifung/or **Earthbluing**. An earth-trembling, an earthquake.

Eorþanstrifung An Earth-stiring, an earth-mouing or earthquake as before.

Eow You. **Eower**. Your.

Erene or **Ereue**. Heritage, or inheritance.

F

F **Ange**. To take or apprehend, **fengon**. Taken, **fangonesse**, imprisonment; also a prison.

Fare. Passage, **farewel** *pas-vvel*, a wel wishing to ones proceeding, mistaken for diet when wee call meat, fare.

farud or **fared**. Passed.

feader. Father.

feawa. Fevv. **feala**. Many, or much, the which woord *muhe*, wee haue borrowed from the Spanish.

fel. Fiers, or cruel. **fel** is also a *Skin*.

fenne. Clay. **Clay** is also of our ancient language.

feoh. Money, wee were wont to say gold and fee, also officers requyre their fees, to wit the mony due vnto them.

feoh or **feoght**. Heerof wee yet retaine the woord *Fight*.

feozme or **ferme**. A *farme*.

feind or **fiaud**. Wee haue for this borrowed the *Fréch* woord *enimy*. Yet wee somtymes call the Deuil the feynd of hel, which is asmuch to say as the enemy of hel.

feyndas Enimyes.

flaxon A flagon, a bottle.

fleasc Flesh.

flod. Flud. **flowung**. Flowring.

folamote. A folk-meeting, an assemblie of people.

for

for.

As it is vsed as a præposition, for the which they yet vse in the Netherlands **voz**/ and somtymes **vor**/ though not **voz**/ as when they vse it for abreuiation of **van=der**/ but in steed of **vor**. This præposition **for**/ in many woords wee yet retayn, though in nothing so many as our ancestors did.

Forbeacu. A signe, heerof we haue yet the name of beakon.

Forbearned. Burnt, or burned.

Forbere. To forbear, or endure with patience.

Forcozfen. Cut of. **Forðid**. Destroyed.

Forðemed or **Forðomed**. Condemned.

Forgyne. To transgresse. **Forgymed**. Transgressed.

Forletten. Left, abaundoned.

For=read. A preface.

For=scrunkn. Shrun=vp, as members withered or dried vp.

For=legon. Omitting the article **for**. Wee haue of *Slegon*, made *Slaine*.

For=spild or **For=spilled**. Marred, destroyed.

For=spreak. A speaker for one, an aduocate, or mediator.

Forth=ferd. Departed, or gon forward.

Foetige or **Foeteo**. A shevving foorth, a faire or a market, where things are set to open view.

Forwort or **Forwrought**. Forsaited.

For=wreged. Accursed, anciently also for-banned.

For=wurth. To vnbecome, to declyne, to perish.

Franc. Free, at libertie, not vnder bond.

Freat. Eaten, also denowred.

Frid/ **frede** or **Wred**. Our woord Frid, frede or Vred, for all is one, beeing long since left; wee vse in steed thereof our borrowed French woord *peace*, which the French take from the Latin woord *pax*.

Fremt or **Fremd**. Strange. **Fremtling** or **Frédling**. A stranger.

Freund or **Freond** or **Frund**. We write now *friend*.

Freundine or **Freundina**. A vvoman=friend, a shee=friend by omitting this and other lyke ancient woords, our language is grown defectiue as for example.

If one say that hee met or spake with a freind of his, it appeereth not whether it were with a man or a woman, where as we might in our language aswel distinguish the masculyne from the feminyne, as others in other languages do.

Fuglas Fowles, in the Netherlands they say voghels.
Fulfremed. Perfect *Fulfremednesse* Perfection.

G.

Gast or *Gcast*. A *Ghoste*, wee haue also from the Latin the woord, spirit.

Gasol. Tribute, tax or custome.

Geal. Gyle or guyle, fraud or begyling.

Gear. *Yeare*. It is heer to bee noted as in sundry the lyke woords, that our anceters vsed indifferently somtymes *Ge*, in steed of *Ye*, as heer in *Gear* for yeare, in *Geman* for *Yeman* also giuen for yeuen, &c.

Ge

This preposition was of our anceters much vsed & it is yet exceedingly vsed in the low-duith, where according to their vsuall manner of pronouncing with aspiration, they vse to put an h to it and so make it ghe. Wee haue since altered it from *ge* to *y* which yet wee sildome vse in prose, but somtymes in poetrie for the encreasing of sillables as when wee say ywritten, ydoluen, ycleped, ylearned ybroken & the lyke.

Gebead. prayer, *Gebcadun*. prayers, our woord prayer wee haue from the French woord *prier*.

Gebletsud or *Gebletsed* / blessed.

Gebode. Bidden, comaunded. *Gehodung*. A comaundement.

Geboren. Borne. In poetrie we yet somtymes in steed of *Geboren* say *yborne*.

Gecend Brough-forth, See acenned, *Gecynd*, kindred.

Gecorena or *Gecoren*. Chosen, elected, a prince elector is in
 the

- the hyghduitsh called a **Coze-furft**.
Geclyppod. *Ycleped, cleped or called.*
Gecyrred, *Turned. See acyrred or kyred.*
Gedon. *Donne ended. or after the french, finished.*
Gedoluen. *Doluen or ydoluen.*
Gedreffe. *Offence scandall.*
Gedreht or **Gedreght**. *Vexed troobled, also menaced.*
Gedwolen. *Strayed or gon a stray.*
Gefcan or **fcan**. *Gladnes, we yet say glad and faine.*
Gefengon. *A prisoner. Gefengonesse A prison.*
Gefeoh or **Gefeoght**. *Fighting.*
Geferan. *Fellovves or equalles, we yet somtymes say seeres.*
Gefrefrid. *Comforted, also pacified.*
Gefullod. *Baptised. Gefullung. Baptising.*
Gegearwod. *Prepared, made redy.*
Geheal, *VVhole, or more rightly, hole, sound, entyre.*
Gehealud. *Healed, cured.*
Gehend. *At hand, or nigh aproching.*
Geheartud. *Harted, encowraged.*
Gehyrd. *Heard.*
Gelathe or **Gelade**. *To enuyte. Gelathud. Enuyted.*
Gelæf. *Belief, faith.*
Gemang. *Among, In the north they yet say ymang or amang.*
Gemearun or **Gemearcun**. *Limits, consynes, partings or separations of one mannes land from another.*
Gemen. *Heerof hauing turned the ge to pe / as before is said wee haue made it yemen / the woord Gemen signifieth comon / so as a yroman signifieth a commoner of the realme.*
Gemengud. *Mingled, together.*
Gemund. *Mynded, ouer-thought reuolued in memorie.*
Gemote. *To meet. Gemotun. A meeting.*
Genealeathe. *To aproche. Genealeathud. Aproched.*
Genemed. *Named, or nominated.*
Geneofud. *Vifited, also cured.*
Genetherud. *Nethered, brought low, debased.*

222 THE ANTIQVITIE AND PROPRIETIE,

Genoh or **Genogh**. *Enough, or ynough.*

Geornlyce or **Geornlyke**. *VVillingly, deilyrouslly.*

Geplantud. *Plamed.*

Gerichtwisud. *Made-righteous, iustefyed.*

Gerefa. *A reue, an officer hauing charge vnder an other.*

Gesamund. *Asssembled.* **Gesamung**. *An assembling, a congregating.*

Gesceaf. *A thing shaped, or created.*

Gesceafung *A shaping, or creation.* Whereas wee now say in our English, crede creator or maker of heauen, and earth, our old-English christian anceters said sceaper of heofen and eorth, of the woord sceap, wee haue deryued our woord shape, which wee now only take for the forme or falsion, whereas it anciently signified making or creation.

Gescyrd. *Arrayed, appareled or garnished.*

Geseald. *Deliuered, or giuen.* Wee say now sold, when ought is giuen in recompence of the vallue thereof.

Gesetnesse. *An insetting, an institution.*

Gestrangod. *Strengthened, made strong.*

Gesawe. *Sylence.* **Gesawud**. *Sylenced.* **Suwigh** is abreuia-
ted **Swyge** / and is imperatiuely, *bee silent*, our now vsed phrase is improper to wil one to hold his peace, when wee would haue him silent, for holding of peace is ceasing from stryf, or from fighting, &c.

Get 1. *Number.* **Getcald**. *Numbred.*

Gethed. *Language, or an externe speech.*

Gethenc or **Gethenk** *Thought.* **Gethencung**. *Thinking.*

Getholod or **Getholpd**. *Suffred, or endured.*

Gethyld or **Gethuld**. *Patience.*

Getrywe. *True, trusty.*

Getimbrung *Buylding.* Wee now call the wood prepared for buylding, *Timber.*

Gewacit or **Geweald**. *Force or violence, heerof wee yet say To vveald or menage.*

Gewend. *VVended array, turned-from.*

Geweng.

Geweng. *The cheke or wang.* Heerof the syd-teeth are called wang teeth. Before the vse of scales was in *England*, diuers writings had the wax of them bitten with the wang tooth of him that passed them; which was also therein mentioned in ryme, as thus.

In witnes of the sothe/

Ich han biten this wax with my wang tothe.

Gewispece or Gewispeke. *Assured or assuredly.*

Gewitnesse. *VVitnesse.*

Gewrit. *A vvriting, an inscription.*

Gewun. *A vvunted manner, a custome.*

Gifurh. *A gift.*

Godsib. now pronounced *Gossip.* Our christian ancestors vnderstanding a spirituall affinitie to grow between the parents & such as vndertook for the chylde at Baptisme, called each other by the name of *Godsib*, which is as much to say as that they were sib together, that is, of kin together through God. And the chylde in lyke manner called such, his Godfathers or Godmothers. &c.

Godspel. Now *Gospel*, the name in our ancient language of the sacred wrytings of the fowre euangelists. A *spel* is as much to say as a *mistical speech*, an oracle, or hidden knowlege.

Gold-hord. *Treasure, to wit, gold-horded vp together.*

Goman. It should bee *Goodman*, the *d* for easynesse of sound beeing omitted. It intends a married man, a howseholder.

Gram. *Angry.* **Gramscpp.** *Anger.*

Grundweal or Grownwall. *A foundation.*

Gyf If.

Gyfta. This was our ancient woord for *Mariage*.

The woord *mariage* wee borrow fro the French: **Gyfta** is not vnfit for that the one party is giuen to the other.

Gysu or Gysse. *Grace.*

324 THE ANTIQVITIE AND PROPRIETIE,

Gyld. *A confrery, or brotherheyd.*

The gildes or confreries were comonly made of the richer sorte of citizens.

Gyld-brother. *A confrater, one that is a brother or confrere of the Gyld.*

Gylt. *A fault, or cryme. Gyltas. Faults.*

Gyt. *Yet.*

H

Hafoc. *A hawk, Hafocas. Hawkes.*

Haltge or Haligne. Hence we haue yet our woord Holy.

Hana. *A cock. Henne. A hen. Cykenum. Chickins.*

Handser. *A fauchin.*

Handwroht Handwroght. *Made vvith hand, artificial.*

Haet or Hatle. *Safe, wel-in-helth, fastie, also saluation.*

Our anceters vsed it in steed of *Aue*, as a woord of mooste wel wishing, as when they said *Haile Marie* &c. I fynd the name of our Lord Iesus, to bee in our ancient English translated *Helende*, that is to say, *Sauior* or *Saluator*.

Heafad. This by abreuitating of two sillables into one, is now become head.

Heafod-pan. *A scul, a headpan.*

Heasting. *A captiue.*

Healle. *A halke, also a manner hows.*

Heathen. *A heathen-man, a pagan.*

Hecine. *A helmet, also a crown.*

Heo. *Shée*, in some places of England, they yet say heo or hoo in steed of shee.

Heord. *A Herd of cattel.*

Here. *An army. Heretoga. A leader or conductor of an army.*

Hereberga. *The loging place of the army. It is since in the Netherlands, become the name of an Inne offerie or victualing hows.*

Heym, *A conuerture, or couered place a throwding place, metapho-*

metaphorically a hows or residence.

Thi or **Thys**. They.

Thred. A lineage, a familie.

Thwe. Colour.

Thwears or **Theswears**. A hows-keeper, pater-familias.

Thund. A hound, a dog. **Thund** or **Thundin**. Dogges.

Thille or **Thille**. A hil.

Thrde or **Thrda**. An herdsman.

Thrdas. Herdsmen, shepherds or keepers of beasts.

Thrsun. Obedient. **Thrsunnesse**. Dutifullnesse, Obedience.

I

I or **Ich**. wee now say **I**. as *I my self*, and for affirmation of a thing wee also say **I**. as *I in deed*. which confoundeth, the two woords *Ego* and *Ita*. whereas. **I** when it is to betoken the first person should bee distinguished from **I** when it standeth for *I forsoth* or *I in deed*. Our anceters pronounced the **Ich** not as now some of our westcountrie men do, but as wee should do yf it were writtē Igh. whereby it hath some aspiration, as it also hath beeing writtē **Ih**. as it lykewise was. But **I** for an affirmatiue is very bad, for it alwayes ought to be written *yea*, and neuer **I**. as *yea forsooth*, and *yea in deed* &c.

Ichl. Idle, vaine. **Iclacs**. Vanitie.

Inne or **Ingeat**. An inne, a hows of comen in-going an osterie.

Inlathe. To enuyte. **Inlathud**. Inuited.

Innoth. The inuward parte of the belly, or vvomb.

Iungling. A *jungling*, a youth, the reader is to note that **I**. before any voyvel vvas sounded as *y*, and *Iungling*, as *jungling*: iuyv also in some teutonic as *yovv*, and the lyke.

K

The letter. C. as before hath bin said our anceters vsed for K. or indifferently the one for the other: & therefore woords that begin with K. are to bee sought before in the letter. C.

L

L *Ly.* A song, it is somtymes written *Lev* and somtymes *Lepd*. Of this cometh the name of *Ballad* which is asmuch in signification as a song of an act or deed don. *Laf* or *Blaf*, for so was it moſte written, was with our anceters their moſte vsuall name for *Bread* though they had alſo the woord *Bread* from whence wee haue now our name of *Bread*.

Laſord. Written *Blaford* by abreuating of the two ſilables into one, it is become *Lord*. See more heerof in the laſt chapter.

Lage pronounced as *Laghe*. A vsual cuſtome, a law, alſo a tradition.

Landboltun. Rulers that weald or menage the publyke affaires of the countrey.

Langſum. Long ſome, tedious. *Longſommeſſe*. *Tediouſneſſe*.

Lare. Heerof wee haue our woord *Lore*, which is asmuch to ſay as learning or doctrine.

Lareow. A *maſter*, our ancient woord *Lareow* is as yf it were to ſay a *Learne-yow*, a *maſter*, that teacheth ſome arte or ſcience.

Leaſdan or *Pleaſdan*. Heerof by abreuiation cometh our name of *Lady*. See more of this in the laſt chapter.

Leard. *Learned*.

Leaſe. *Fals*. *Leaſunga*. A *leaſing*, a *ly*.

Leaſe-gewittneſſe. *Falſſe-wittneſſe*. *Leaſe-witegaſſe*. *Falſe-propheteſſe*.

Leaſe. To gather together, wee yet ſay leaſing of corne.

Leod / *Lud* / and *Lud*. For all is one though the orthography

graphy differ, is folk, or according to our French woord, people.

Leof or **Lief**. *Deer*, or beloved. **Leofesta**. *Lieft*, belovedst.

Leoh or **Leohht**. *Light*, properly the ayre.

Leorning-cniht or **Learning-knight**. *A disciple*.

Lic or **Lich**. *A dead corps*. Whereof the repured vn lucky night-rauens are called *Lich-fowles*, *Lich-seild*, in *Staford-shyre*, hath that name of the *Liches* (more rightly to bee pronounced *Lighes*) to wit, dead bodyes of such as were there slaine.

Licham or **Lichama**. *A body*, a corps.

Leac or **Leich**. *A surgion*, an apt name for him whose arte and study apertayneth to the body of man.

Locas. *Lockes*, of haire, and somtymes taken for haire.

Lofsang. *Loffong*. *Lof* is in our ancient language praise & lof-song, as much to say as *a song of praise-giving*.

Lufe. *Loue*.

Lyfte-hade. *Lyely-heyd*, meanes to maintaine lyf.

Lyfan. *Bruie*, or fame.

M

Mage or **Maghe**. *A coofin*. **Magas**. *Coofins*, or kinsfolk.

Magascyp. *Kindred*, or Coofinage, the woord coofinage is fondly and improperly now of late vsed for deceyt.

Manega. *Mary*.

Manger or **Monger**. This was our ancient name for a *Marchant*, now only an addition to diuers marchantable trades, as *Ironmonger*, *Fishmanger*, and the lyke, the woord marchant we haue from the French.

Maffere. *A marchant*, such an one as keepeth a shop of mercerie or smalle wares.

Manfpyhte. *Manflaughter*.

Meaden. *A mayden*.

Meadet sometymes written **Meder**. *Mother*.

Maeg or **Maeh** *To may* or can.

228 THE ANTIQVITIE AND PROPRIETIE,

Meagtha. A tribe, or a family.

Mealtide. The tyme of eating, as noon-meal or euen-meal, for which wee vse our borrowed French woords of dinner and supper.

Meare or Meere. More.

Meered. Wee say now merfed or amerfed. It is rightly marked or quoted: as what one is to pay.

Meerseth. More then ordinarily known, famoused, or magnified.

Meere. Reward, recompence. **Meerewife.** A woman of meere or merit, deseruing recompence.

Mensca or mensca. Plurally **Menscan.**

This woord mensca or mensca, & somtymes mensce, was with our anceters asmuch to say as a *humaine creature* in general, to wit, either man woman or chyld, the high and lowduith haue it stil, though a litle different in pronountiation. It is a woord of necessarie vse as for example, a man beholding some lyuing thing a farr of in the feild, not wel decerning what it is, wil say it is either a man or a beast, now it may be a woman or a chyld, and so not a man, and therefore hee should speak more properly in saying it is either a *mensce* or a *beast*, &c.

Meore. Dung, heerof the name of *mixen* is yet vsed in some partes of England, for a *Dung-beap*.

Meere. A lake, a pool.

Mikel or Mikel. Wee vse for it in the south partes of England, the Spanish woord *much*.

Mikel-meere. Great-reward.

Mid or Mit. *VVith.*

Midden. The middle or middest.

Middesay. Midday, noon.

Mightige. Mightie.

Mithle. Mightly. within might, possible.

Mild. **Mildnesse.** **Mildnesse.** It is anciently vsed for *mercie*.

Mildheartnesse. **Mildheartednesse,** *mercie* or *compassion*.

Mild

Mouth also **Mund**. *A mouth.*

Murcen. *Murmuring, grudging.*

N

Our anceters vsed fundrie negative abreuiactions
as.

N *Nothing*. For, *Not any thing, or nothing.*

Nath. For, *not bath*. **Nit**. For, *Not to vil, or to bee vn-*
willing. **Nyst**. for, *Not vvisst, or wist not*. **Nst**. *Not vould,*
or would not.

Neddere. *An adder*. **Neddren**. *Adders, or serpents.*

Nestre or **Nestre**. *Neuer.*

Neburtas. After later orthography **Neighbour**.

Such as wee call husbandmen or clownes, they do in
high *Germanie*, and in the *Netherlands* call boures, as
wee also did in former tyme, though now wee vse
not this woord boure for a clown, but composed,
with neigh, to betoken *proximus*, a neigh or next
dweller.

Ntm. *Take*. **Ntmtng**. *Taking.*

Nydded. *Compelled, constreyned.*

O

O *Forgetwrit*. *An ouerwriting a superscription.*

Ofermode or **Ouermode**. *Pryd, or insolencie.*

Oferscadewud. *Ouershadorved.*

Officad. *Slaine, killed*. **Stean**. is also *Slaine*.

Ofrung. *An offering, an oblation.*

Ohter. *Otherwise* **Wohet**. *Vsurie.*

Ourope or **On-roop**. That is a calling-on or vrging by
crying or calling vpon one.

Omegang or **Omegang**. *An about-going, a procesion.*

Ondread. *Dread, feare.*

Oufenge or **Oufen**. *To receaue, ought.*

Ougan. *Began.*

Ougen. *Against.*

Oucen or **Ouken**. *Disconered, discerned.*

230 THE ANTIQVITIE AND PROPRIETIE,
 Outyned. Enclosed, or vnlosed.
 Ordeal or Ordaill. Iudgement see more heerof in the third
 chapter.

P

Piga. Agerle, a litle wenche. It is so yet vsed in the Da-
 nish, heerof cometh our northerne name of Peg, mis-
 ment for *Margaret*.

Q

Quena otherwise also written Quinde. A wyf, also
 a woman.

R

Rethe. Early, also soone or speedy.
Resaf. A cote, or kynd of garment anciently vsed.
Read. Counsel, aduise, discours. **R**eads-men. Counselers.
Reapting. An insurrection, or tumultuous disorder.
Resna also Rasan. A rauen.
Reste-deag. A rest-day (*Sabathum*)
Rithwise. Righteous, Iust.
Rithwisnes. Righteousnes, Iustice.
Rithwisud. Made-righteous, iustified.
Rode or Rood. A crosse.
Row or Ro, also written Ro. Rest, repose, quietnes.
Ryc. A countrey or prouince vnder one absolute co-
 maund or iurisdiction. See more heerof in the letter C.
Ryc. Wee now by adding h, vnto it pronounce **R**ych,
 and so of **R**ycman/ haue made **R**ich-man.
Rychente or **R**yches. Richesse.

S

Sira. Sorow. Sarige. To bee sorie.
Sawle Soule, the soule of man (*Anima*)
Scath. Damage. **S**cathlic. Damageable. **S**ceatha. A robber.
Scead. Shade, Shadovv.

Sceapafato.

Sheepfold. A sheepfold. **Sheepheard.** A sheepheard.

Shewe. To behold or view, also to shew.

Shew-place. A theater, a Shew-place, a beholding-place.

Shaft. A shaft. **Shastan** or **Shestas.** Shafts, arrowes.

Shende. To hurt, or impaire. **Shendus.** Hurt impayred or blamed, wee yet vse the woord Shent, for blame or rebuke.

Shona. Beautifull, faire.

Scrimbre or **Scitmbre.** a Fenser **Scitrmung** Fensing or defending: our woord **Scirmish** which wee haue from the French cometh originally heerhence.

Scryn. A bryne, anciently a chest or cofer.

Scyld. Default or debt. **Scyldige.** Indebted.

Scyp. Now Ship. **Scypman.** Now after the French, **Mariner.**

Shb. Peace. **Shb. Kin.** **Shb. scip.** Kindred.

Shge or **Shghe.** Victorie.

He. Hee. **Hee** is also a woord of our own.

Seor. Sick. **Seorneffe.** Sicknes.

Slapigraua. (*Sepulchru.*) A sleep-graue, because the dead body may bee accompted as beeing a sleep.

Shmead. A dispute, an arguing a moueing of a question.

Shmyred. Annoynted.

Smith. To smyte, heerof cometh our name of a Smith, because hee smitheth or smiteth with a hammer. Before we had the name of Carpenter from the French, a Carpenter was in our language also called a Smith, for that hee smiteth both with his hamer and his ax, and for distinction the one was a Wood-Smith, and the other an Iron-Smith, which is nothing improper. And the lyke is seen in Latin, where the name of **Faber**, serueth both for the Smith, & for the Carpenter, thee one beeing **Faber ferrarius**, and the other **Faber lignarius**.

Shnys. Snowy.

Shyde. To cutte. **Shyde.** A cutter it was our ancient name

332 THE ANTIQVITY AND PROPRIETIE,
 name for a Tailor, before we had the name of Tailor
 from the french, it beeing also as much to say as, *seuter*.
Both. True. **Bothie.** Truly. **Bothfast.** Southfast. Verita-
 ble **Bothfastnesse** Trueth, veritie.
Boyl. See *Godspel*.
Bpreace. To *speake*. **Bpreacing.** Speaking. Speech.
Staffweard. A *Staffvoord*, a short speare or iaveling the
 iron whereof was long and somewhat after the manner of
 a blade, a *framea*.
Stana. A Stone. **Stanasweorp.** A stones cast.
Stedinesse or **Stedfastnes.** *Stabillitie*, constancie.
Stefn or **Stefna.** A voyce.
Steale. To steal.
Steopchild. A stepchild. **Steopfeader.** A stepfather.
Stow. Place. **Stowung.** stovving, placing or disposing.
Stihtan or **Stightan.** To set vpon, to erect or edifie.
Stinc. Sauor or smel. It is now taken for il sent or sauer,
 but anciently it was not so.
Strand. A shore along by the watersyde.
Strong. Strong. **Strengre.** Stronger.
Stunte. A fool. **Stunscip** or **Stunship.** folly. The *voords* fool
 and folly we haue from the french.
Stylness. Stillnes, quietnes.
Stype. A high towre, hecrof wee yet retaine the name
 of steeple.
Swefas. or **Swenca.** A *Dream*, the woord *dream* is also
 of our ancient language.
Swelt. Dead, it seemeth to bee ment of beeing dead by
 violence. Wee say yet when one taketh excessiue paynes
 that hee wil swelt out his hart.
Swyta. A beguylor, we aske at cardes yf one wil swig,
 that is, whether he will beguile or bee beguyled.
Swytrous. A False trick, or euil-pranck.
Swyke. Now in the Netherlands *Sult*, in english such.
Swyrc. Labor, we say yet *svinc* and *svreat*.
Swythan. The right hand, or rightsyde, *dextera*.
Wysperan the contrarie, beeing the *sinister* or left syde.

Wyle

Syle or **Siale**. To pay or to give. Syling, paying or giving.
Wee now vse the woord selling, for ought that is giuen
or deliuered for the value thereof.

Symle. *Alwayes, (semper)*

Synderlic. After our now ortography, *Sunderly, parti-
cularly.*

Sythan. *Sithence, or since-that-tyme.*

T

Tbert. Anciently a short gown that reached no fur-
ther then to the mid-leg, it remaineth for the name
of a gown in *Germanie* and in the *Netherlands*, and in *Eng-
land* it is now the name only of a *beralds cote*.

Tale. *Speech, language, discours.* Wee somtymes straine the
fence, as though a tale were a fable or a ly, because vn-
truthes are told as wel as truthes.

Thanonsoorth. *Thenceforth.*

Theah. or **Theeh**. In later English *Thee*, it were more
rightly for distinction *theeh*, because by our woord *thee*,
we speak to the second person, *theeh* is asmuch to say as
so thriue, or to prosper, and so is also *bethed* and *brithed*,
for hauing prospered,

Theaw. *A manner, a falsion.*

Theod or **Thiad**. *A strange nation.*

Theoda or **Thiada**. *Nations.*

Thegn or **Thryn**. A chief or very free seruant, Heer of co-
meth *thene* or *thiane*, to *serue*, and *thened* for *serued*.

The prince of *Wales*, the king of *Englands* eldest
sonne, is wont to vse for his poesie (after our ancient
English speech) the woords, *Je dien*, for *Th thien*, that
is, *I serue*, where the reader is to remember that *d.*
and *th.* was in our ancient language indifferently vsed.

Thearf. *Need, distresse.* **Thearfasse**. *Distressednesse.*

Thearfan. *The distressed.*

Theow. *A seruant, in the moste ordinarie accompt.*

Theowad. *Servants.* **Theodome**. *Servitude.*

Theomines or **Thianins** or **Thianina**. A maid-servant (*Angilla*)

Tholte. To suffer. **Tholpd** also **Tholed**. Suffred.

Thorp. Our ancient woord for which wee haue borrowed and now vse the French woord *Village*.

Thread. A rebuke, or a threat.

Threagan. To threaten.

Thystrum. Darknes.

Todal. Denision, stryf. **Todcalud**. Seperated, deuyded.

Togedere. Together.

Todysene. Driuen away, disperfed.

Tuge or **Toge**. To drayv out, or to lead.

Treo or **Treow**. A tree.

Tumbe. To dance. **Tumbod**. Danced, heerof wee yet call a wenche that skippeth or leapeth lyke a boy, a *Tomboy*, our name also of tumbling cometh heerhence.

Tungan. A tounge, and sometymes **Tungun**.

Tun: A tovvyn. **Tunas**. Tovvnes.

Twyfeald or **Twefeald**. Too-fold doubtfull (*anceps*)

Twyling or **Tweling**. A tvyne.

Twynod. Doubted.

Twyrednesse. Gainsaying, contention.

V

V **Abberend**. Barren, steril.

Uncuth. *Vnknown*, it also somtymes signifieth a stranger.

Underfenge. To vnderlake. **Underfengud**. **Vndertaken**, enterprised.

Underheld. Supported, vnderholden.

Undercyning. An *Vnder-king*, a viceroy.

Underntpde. The afternoon towards the evening.

Underftan. Subiects, vassalles.

Underthead. A subiected or subdued people.

Underthian. An inferior servant.

Unearth or **Uneth**. *Vneasy*, difficil.

Unhold or **Unheld**. Malice.

Unlesful.

Unleasul. *Vnbelieuing, vnfaithfull.*
Unleasulnesse. *Vnfaithfulness, Infidellitie.*
Unnpt. *Vnneedful, not necessarie.*
Unnouthtyc. (now rather vnmightly) *Vnposible.*
Unrith-hamed. *Borne in adulterie.*
Unrithwisnes. *Vnrightheousnes, inequitie.*
Unscyldegh. *Vnfaulcie, also vn-indebted.*
Unscyrred. *Vnclothed.*
Untrum. *Infirme. Vntrumnesse. Infirmitie.*
Untyming. *Barren.*
Unwether. *A storme, a tempest.*
Unwisdome. *Madnesse, folly.*
Upstigan or Vpstegan. and **Ætherstigan.** *Mounting vp, and dismounting, to wit, ascending and descending.*
Utgang. *Out-going, departure.*
Ut awurpen. *Out-cast.*

W

W **Wana.** *VWant, defect or lac.* Wee yet say the want of the moon.

Wanhætel. *VWanting-helth, infirme or maymed.*

Wanhope. *Dispaire.* It groweth through want of hope.

Wantrust. *Distrust, suspicion.*

Warp or Weorþ. See A Warpen.

Wald, Weald, or Wold, all these differing in vowel, yet signify one thing, to wit, a forest, Of the first **VValdham-forest** (more rightly then **waltham-forest**) retayneth yet that name.

Of the second, *the weald of kent*, that is, the forest parte of *kent*.

Of the third which is **wold** the **l**, and the highnes of the sound of **o** beeing omitted, is become in the *Netherlands wout*, and in *England wood*.

And whereas *Yorks-wold* and *Cott-wold*, do yet retaine those names, and are not forests, I am fully of opinion, that they haue heertofore bin woodie places, and thereof had such names and that the woods haue afterward bin destroyed, and yet their names notwithstanding left stil vnto them.

Wapen/Weapon or Weapun. All is one, and betokeneth as wel our *vveapōs*, wherewith wee fight, as the marks of honor borne in sheilds, which now after the French wee call, *armes*.

Wearbode otherwise *Warbode.* A messenger of *vvarre* or one to be sent about the affaires of the camp.

Waeftmes. *Frutes*, *hearbes*, or *graine*, or the lyke, *vvaixing* or *grovving*, out of the earth.

Weastin. *Frute.*

Wester. *VVater.*

Ward or Ward. A keeper. *Weardas.* *Keepers.*

Megas. *VVeyes.*

Wel. This (as wee vnderstand it for *bene*) wee retaine yet without any change as very many other woords.

Welega. A welthy-man (*Diuus*)

Weofode. An alter, our anceters vsed also *Theofode* for an alter; belyke they were alters for different sacrifices in the tyme of their paganisme, and therefore so distinguished.

mere/ our anceters vsed somtyme in steed of *man*; yet should it seeme that *mere* was moſte comonly taken for a married man. But the name of *man* is now more known and more generally vsed in the whole Teutonic tounge then the name of *more*.

Were-wulf. This name remaineth stil known in the Teutonic; & is as much to say as *man-wolf*; the greeks expreſſing the very lyke, in *Lycanthropus*.

Ortelius not knowing what *mere* ſignified, becauſe in the *Netherlandes* it is now cleane out of vſe, except

cept thus composed with ~~wolf~~, doth mis-interprete it according to his fancie.

The ~~were-wolues~~ are certaine forcerers, who ha-
uing annoynted their bodyes, with an oymntment
which they make by the instinct of the deuill; and
putting on a certaine enchanted girdel, do not only
vnto the view of others seeme as wolues, but to their
own thinking haue both the shape and nature of
wolues, so long as they weare thesaid girdel. And
they do dispose theselues as very wolues, in wurring
and killing, and moſte of humaine creatures.

Of ſuch ſundry haue bin taken and excuted in
ſundry partes of *Germanie*, and the *Netherlands*. One
Peeter Stump for beeing a ~~were-wolf~~, and hauing kil-
led thirteen children, two women, and one man; was
at *Bedbur* not far from *Cullen* in the yeare 1589. put
vnto a very terrible death. The fleſh of diuers partes
of his body was pulled out with hot iron tongs, his
armes thighes & legges broke on a wheel, & his body
laſtly burnt. He dyed with very great remorse, deſy-
ring that his body might not be ſpared from any tor-
ment, ſo his ſoule might be ſaued. The ~~were-wolf~~ (ſo
called in *Germanie*) is in *France*, called *Loup-garou*.
Weorthige. *VVoorthy*. *Wyrthe*. *VVeorthe*.

Werpg. *VVery*.

Weſten or *Wiſten*. A deſert or wyld woodie place.

Whetle or *Whitl*. *VVhich*. In the north of *England* they yet
ſay *ghuilk*.

Wiſ. *VVyſ*. (*Vxor*).

Wiſed or *Wied*. Sacred, vvee ſay yet halorved for halih-
wied, alſo wee heereof retaine the name of *whiſſonday*,
which more rightly ſhould bee writte *wied-ſonday*,
that is, Sacred-ſonday, ſo called by reaſon of the deſ-

238 THE ANTIQVITIE AND PROPRIETIE
cending down of the holy Ghoste, &c.

Wildernes. A *vvildernes*, for which wee somtymes vse our borrowed name of *desert*.

Wild=deorun. *VVild-deer*. It signifieth in the Teutonic (*Pecora Campi*) the beasts of the feild in generall, and not that kynd only which wee now call deer, although wee take our name of deer also from hence.

Winberian or Wymbertian. *VVynberries, grapes.*

Wingearde or Wyngeard. A *vvyn-garden*, a vinyard.

Wisduam or Wisdom. *VVisdome, sapience.*

Wistleras. *VVhislers, pypers.*

Witega or Wyttega. A prophet, a foreteller of things to come.

Witegode. *Prophesied, foretold.*

Witherwin. An *aduersarie*.

Withsaid. *Denied.* **Withstnod.** *VVithstood, resisted.*

Wirta or Wurta. *VVoortes*, for which wee now vse the French name of *herbes*. The citie in Germanie of *VVirisberge*, in Latin *Herbipolis*, had that name by reason of the abundance of wurts or herbes, which grew about the hill sydes by that town.

Wod. *Furious or Mad.* Wee yet retaine in some partes of England, the word *wodnes* for furiousnes or madnes.

Wolc. A *clowd*. **Welken.** *Clowdes*, wee yet vse the woord *welken*, but take it for the aire.

Wondorlyc. *VVonderly, wonderful admirable.*

Worlde. *VVorld.*

Wrec. *VVreake, reuenge.*

Wrphta or Wprphta. Heerhence wee haue our name of *wright* which signifieth properly a labouring man, though wee now take it for a Carpenter, or hee that vseth some trade thereon depending.

Wulbre or Wuldoz. *Glorie.*

Wunn. *Dryel.* **Wunstede or Wunningstew.** A *dryelling place.*

Wcozth or Wcozd. A kynd of peninsula or land enuyroned

ned almost about with water, not in the sea, but in some riuer or between two riuers. It is in moderne Teutonic written *wert*. It seemes, that our *wert* or water-stops do heerof also take their name.

Weortscpp or *Wurthscpp*. *VVoerth-ship* or *VVoorthynesse*, *Wee* now pronounce it *vvoorship*.

Wurtrum or *Wyrtrum*. *Rootes*.

Wpc. A fenced place, a place of refuge.

Wpdmear. Fame, reporte spred wyde or far abroad.

Wpl. A wel, otherwise a bourn-pit.

Wpsum. According to our now ortography *vvin-some*, that is, easy to be wonne or obtayned.

Wpse. *VVoors*.

Wpte. Blame, reproche.

Y

Y *ican* or *ptic*. The same, somtymes it is taken for each.

yde. Age, oldnes.

yldrens. Fore-elders, anceters.

ymb or *ymbe*. About.

yse. An heritage. *yse-weard*. An heyre.

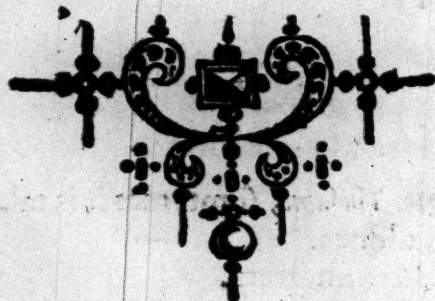
yrling. A hyreling.

yrlingas. Hyrelings.

I could heerin haue enlarged my self very much, and peraduenture haue much pleasured some of our English poets, with great choise of our own ancient woords, which as occasion requyred they might, with more reason renew and bring in vse again (by som-what facillitating yf need were the ortographie) then to become the borrowers and perpetual debtors of such languages as wil not bee beholding to vs for somuch as a woord,

240 THE ANTIQVITY AND PROPRIETY,
and when wee have gotten from them as many
woords as wee wil, they can neuer carry a true co-
respondence vnto ours, they beeing of other nature
and originall.

These our ancient woords heer set down. I trust
wil for this tyme satisfy the reader, and the rather
for that I shal haue occasion to shew the etymo-
logies of sundry names and woords in the ensuing
chapters.



THE

THE ETYMOLOGIES OF THE ANCIENT

SAXON PROPER NAMES
of men and women.

The eight Chapter.



Yke enough it is, that the reader seeing the tytle of this chapter to promise the etymologies of the ancient Saxon proper names, wil expect some notife how to know which they bee, and which not: seeing so many sortes of proper names are become comon to all nations of Christendome. To giue him therefore satisfaction in this point, hee may please to vnderstand, that albeit it bee true that some names deryued from the Hebrew, some from the Greek, and some from the Latin, as also many of our ancient Saxon proper names, do now run generally in comon vse among all; yet when heed is giuen vnto them it is easely discerned vnto what languages each of these do appertaine. Such then as are anciently and properly our own, are meerly of the Teutonic toung, and not found in the Hebrew or in the Scriptures, nor yet among the ancient Greeks or Latins: and of these many do yet remain with vs in vse, and diuers are become vsuall also vnto other nations.

And surely of the sundry things of antiquitie, woorthy of note among our Saxon anceters their proper denominations of humain creatures (which also was comon vnto the other Germans) was not of least re-

H h

gard

To decerne
the Saxon
proper na-
mes.

gard, and albeit these names were giuen in chyldeheyd yet were they neuer but significāt. A thing very lawd-able and woorthy; an excellent note of moſte great antiquitie, and a iuſt enſuying of the uſe of reaſon, which almighty God had endued his reaſonable creatures withal, who accordingly would not giue one another any proper names in an vnintelligible and friuolous kynde of ſpeech. And yf ſome that may happen to read theſe etymologies ſhal accompt of them as of things ſtrayned or imaginarie, this his conceyt doth proceed of his own lack of knowlege in the proprietie of our ancient language, whereas yf therein hee were ſeen, hee would euen as manifeſtly decerne them to bee ſuch as heer they are ſhewed to be, as the etymologies of the ancient names of the patriarches are decerned by ſuch as are ſkilfull in the Hebrew tounge.

Our language as in the fore-going chapter I haue ſhewed, conſiſted in the beginning for the moſte parte of woords of monosyllable, & each woord beeing of one ſyllable had is own proper ſignification put into the myndes of ſuch as firſt receaued it (at the confuſion of *Babel*) by almighty God the author and founder thereof, but by ioyning two woords or more together, that were diſtinct monosyllables before, a new compoſed woord and therewithall a new ſence was at once framed: and therefore theſe proper names beeing made of compoſed woords (for ſcarſly fynde I any that is of one ſyllable) were purpoſely made and framed according to the mynde and purpoſe of the compoſers, thereby to expreſſe as it were, ſome precept, remembrance or encowragement for the enſueing

sueing of some kynd of vertue or noblenes which they wished their chyld should affect, or of some thing in one sorte or other of praise-woorthy memorie, at the birth-tyme or birth-place of the chyld, as in obseruing the ensueing exsamples wil manifestly appeer.

And heer before I proceed further, I hold it requisite to aduertise the courteous reader, that whereas *M. Islebius* wryting of these etymologies, wil needs haue *bert*, which is vsed for a termination to diuers names (as heer esueing wil appeer) to haue bin by our anceters met for *wert*, which woord wee now wryte and pronounce *woorth*. To this I answere, that yf hee had well perused the ancient Saxon tounge, hee should therein haue found that our old anceters vsed the woord *weorth*, which the Germans do now pronounce *wert*, and wee *woorth*, but *bert* in steed thereof they neither vsed or needed to vse. So as his making of *bert/wert*, grew only of his own supposall, because somtymes (although sildome) the *b* is found to haue bin vsed for the single *v*, though neuer for the dooble *v*, as hee would haue it: and yet *Franciscus Irenicus*, and diuers others, without searching any further do heerin follow him. *Pontus Heuterus* according to the doting of some others wil haue *bert*, to signifie beard, which in deed is more wyde from the mark then the suposall of *Islebius*. For as children when their names are first giuen can not bee praised for their woorth or woorthynes, because it can not in them so soon appeer, no more may they bee called after the colour of their beards when they haue none, as for example, mooste ridiculous it is to say as *Heute-*

Islebius refused.

rus, and other do, that *Robert* is to say *Red-beard*, as though the bearers in old tyme of that name, either had no names vntil they had beards, or els when they gat beards they gat new names according to the colour of them. Certaine it is that the terminations of *bert*/*frid*/*ryc*/ and such others as do serue for diuers names, must in due sence accord vnto all whereunto they are conioyed, which neither *wert* nor *bert*/ can do, as sundry absurd examples which thereon would ensue (yf it were woorth the whyle heer to shew them) could giue witnes.

One thing more I must note, & that is, that whereas many haue written of these etymologies, yet are all of them very scarce in shewing the reasons of many their interpretations, which I suppose to bee because they could more easely gesse that so or so they were ment, then shew by reason that so in deed the true meaning must bee, and therefore I haue therein taken the more paynes to giue the reader better satisfaction.

Adelstan/or *Eadelstan*/ or *Ethelstan*.

These three names are all one and for the *d* in the two former, the *th* as wel as in the later is indifferently vsed. *Adel*/*Eadel*/or *Edel*/ is our ancient woord for *Noble* or *Gentle*: the which noble and gentle, wee haue borrowed from the French, so as our names of Nobleman and Gentleman, are composed of two languages the substantiue beeing english, and the adiectiue French. Whereas anciently in meer english, it was *Adelman* or *Eadelman* &c. As in *Germanie* it is yet vsed: *stan*, is the termination of the superlatiue degree of comparison, which wee haue since varied
into

into *est*; as for moſte wiſe, wee ſay wiſeſt; for moſte great, greateſt; for moſte faire, faireſt; and the lyke: which after our old māner ſhould be wiſeſtan, greateſtan, faireſtan, &c. So as *Wdeſtan* is as much to ſay as *Nobleſt*, and therefore it is not found among our anceters to haue bin a name comon to all in generall but only for kings or princes and their peers as beeing the moſte noble.

Wdeſgund varied into *Wdegund*.

A name uſed for a woman. I haue alreedy ſhe-
wed that *Wdel*, *Wadel*, and *Wthel* is all one, and that the
d. ſtandeth indifferently for *th*. and now becauſe *Wdel*
or *Wthel* is more uſed of our anceters then *Wdel*, I re-
ferr the reader for the etymologie heerof vnto *Wthel*
gund at the letter E.

Wdelulph by abreuiaſion *Wdulph*.

For the etymologie heerof ſee *Wthelulph*.

Wlbert.

For the etymologie heerof ſee *Wthelbert*.

Wlcuine.

It ſhould bee *Wlcwine*; but by reaſon that latinifts
uſe not the *w*, it is become *Wlcuine*. It is alſo anciently
written *Walc-wine*; & ſomtymes *Wlwine*; *Walc* or *Wlc*
wee haue now varied to *each*; *wine* is as much to ſay
as beloued, ſo as *Alcuine* ſignifieth, *Of-each-beloued*,
& *Wlwine* according to the ſame ſence, *Beloued-of-all*.
Alcuinus an Engliſhman and the diſciple of *Venera-*
ble Bede, was preceptor vnto the Emperor *Charles the*
great; and the firſt beginner of the vniuerſitie of
Paris.

Wldread.

This ſeemeth at the firſt to haue bin a name only

imposed vpon princes or great noblemēnes children, for our anceters were regardfull that the woorthiest names, were to bee giuen to such as were of woorthiest expectation, and this name beeing so giuen was as a precept vnto them so to beare themselues as that they might bee dread vnto all or dreaded of all, for so the name importeth.

Alfred or Alured.

fred and **b**red is all one in signification for the v consonant doth oftentimes hold the place of f. **f**red or **b**red, as also **f**ris, all beeing one, is our ancient woord for *peace*, the woord *peace* beeing by vs borrowed from the French woord *pais*, which they haue fetched from the Latin woord *pax*, so as **Alfred** or **Alured**, is as much to say, as, *All-peace*.

Alfric.

I haue reason to think that this by corruption is grown from **Alfrid** to bee **Alfric**, some think that it should rightly bee **vlphric**, for **vlphric** see in the letter v.

Allen or Ellen.

By vulgar pronountiation the name of **Allen** is come from **Alwine**, which as before is said, is asmuch to say as *Beloued-of-all*.

Arnold.

For the etymologie thereof see **Ernhold**.

B

Baldwin.

Bald is varied into our woord **bold**, which also signifieth swift, for comonly with boldnes, there is some quicknes or swiftnes annexed. The reader is to note that

that *wine*, as is aforefaid signifieth *beloued*, but *win* to overcome or to get, as wee yet vse it, for winning by play or by battaile. *Baldwin* is then asmuch to say as *Cito vincens*, soon vanquishing or ouercoming.

Baldread.

It is sayd before, that of bald (in this sense) wee haue our word *bold/read* moste comonly signifieth counsel or aduice, it also signifieth redresse or remedie, *Chaucer* saith, *read wel thy self that others wel canst read*, wee vse it also for declaration when wee say read a riddle or read on a book, it also signifieth discours or speech. *Baldread*, is asmuch to say as *Bold* or *resolute in counsel* or vttrance, &c.

Bede.

The name of our first famous English wryter, who for his great vertue and learning was in his lyf tyme of such esteem throughout all Christendome that hee was honored with the title of venerable *Bede*, and for that it was not allowable to giue vnto any the name of saint hee beeing yet alieue: this reuered father hauing had the name of *venerable* in his lyf tyme imposed vpon him, it remained vnto him after his death, insomuch as hee is more called by the name of *Venerable Bede*, then of *saint Bede*. *Bede* signifieth prayer, a name as it should seeme, wherein his parents at the giuing thereof presaged his deuotion. Of *Bede* cometh the name of *Beadsman* and *Beads* to pray vpon. The lyke in signification vnto *Bede*, is the name of *Oratio* in Italian.

From *bede* proceedeth our woord *bid*, which through our heedlesnes in our language we make to serue vnto two contrarie senses, for when wee say

wee **bid** a freind vnto our hows, it signifieth to pray or desyre, and when wee say **bid** one to do this or that, it there signifieth to comaund: whereas **bede** or **bido** should bee rather vsed for praying or enuyting, and **bod** to signify comaund, and **boding** rather then bidding, comandement.

Barnard.

The true ortography heerof is **Bearn-hart**, touching the which and such lyke in these etymologies to ensue, the reader may please to note that our Saxō anceters whyle yet they were pagans, beeing a very valiant and warlyke people, would somtymes desyre to haue their children imitate some such properties of cowrage as they obserued to bee in some kynd of beasts, such I meane as they esteemed beasts of battaile, as is amongst others the beare.

Of which beast to haue the lyke harte or the lyke cowrage, the parents would somtyme giue vnto the chylde the name of **Bearn-hart**, that is, **Beares-hart**, for **n**, as wel as **s**, is in our ancient speech at the end of nownes the signe of the plural number, as we yet in diuers things do retaine it, as when wee say, **children**, **bretheren**, **Oxen**, and the lyke, as formerly I haue noted.

Bartulph or Bertulph.

It was anciently and rightly **Berht-ulph**, and is as much to say as a helper or *an assistant vnto aduise-ment*. It is of some written **Barthol**, and of some **Bardolph**.

Birtre or Birthre.

Ryc, wee now vse to wryt with adding an **h** to the **c**, and so make it **rych**, and some swaruing further from the originall wryte it **ritche**. Such as had this name

name seem to haue bin borne to welth or possessions,
beeing riche by birth or patrimonie.

Barthard.
This is more rightly **Barth-gard**, and anciently a
name of office, and therefore I referre the reader to
the names of offices in the last chapter.

Botolph.
Bot or after our now pronouniation **boot**, is
satisfaction or *amends*, we vse yet in the equalizing of
bargaines to requyre some help or aduantage to **boot**.
Ulp was anciently *help*, the one beeing deriued from
the other. **Bot**-**ulph**, is asmuch to say as a *help-to-
boot*, a helper or procturer of amends or satisfaction,
or as it were, a mediator.

C

Charles.

In the anciēt Teutonic frō whence this name taketh
original, it was first **Gar-edel**, whereof by abreuia-
tion it became **Caral**. Now in the moderne Teuto-
nic it is **Harle**. **Gar** in the old Teutonic signifieth *all*,
(as *all* in that tounge also doth) & by varying in pro-
nountiation, for **Gar** they somtymes vse **Car**, as for
exāple (as in the first chapter hath bin noted) in steed
of saying drink **Gar** *aus*, which is to say drink *all out*,
they wil say drink **Car**-*aus*, so that **Car** is vsed for **Gar**,
and signifieth *all*: *ed* is an abreuiation of *edel*, for it is
comon in the Teutonic to say **Calman** for **Edelman**,
Caral, which in Latin is written *Carolus*, and in mo-
derne English **Charles**, is asmuch to say, as, *All* or
wholy-noble.

Conrad.

Con beeing founded as **Coon**, signifieth stout for-
ward,

ward or valliant, *read*, as is afore said, is counsel or ad-
uice, also remedy or redresse; *Conread* may then wel
signify *resolute or forward in aduice or in redresse*.

Cunigund.

A name of a woman, and anciently *Cunigund*
of *Cuning*, also written *Cynig*, wee haue by abreuia-
tion made *king*, *gund* is asmuch to say as fauor, wee
haue since varied it to *cunne*, as when wee say wee
wil *cunne* one thanks, that is to say, shew him grati-
tude or fauor. *Cunigūd* is then in signification *Regis*
fauor, the fauor of the king, a name by lyke imposed
vpon the daughters of Princes.

Cuthbert.

Cuth is asmuch to say as *known acquainted or fami-
liar*, *bert* became so to bee by abreuiation, anciently
beeig *berih*, afterward *beright* or *bereight*, also by abre-
uiation *bright*, & somtymes *bright*, for so is it often
found, as in *Ethelberih*, *Ethelbright*, & *Ethelbreght*,
though moſte comonly *Ethelbert*: and so lykewiſe for
Egberih, *Egbright*, and *Egbieght*, though moſte of all
Egbert, and the lyke may be ſaid of all the reſt of our
names ending in *bert*. Some of *berih*, haue made it
beright or *berecht*, but the *ch* is to be ſounded as *gh*, as in
the Teutonic it alwayes is, & in the Scotiſh-Engliſh,
where as wee wryte *right*, they write *richt*, and yet
pronounce it as wee do. *Berih*, *beright*, or *bereight*,
beeing all one, is ample in ſignification. As to bee *be-
righted*, that is to bee *rightly* or *wel aduiſed*, *right-con-
ceyted*, *right-inſtructed*, *ſetled*, *diſpoſed*, or *perſwaded*
in the right. Of good *aduſement*, *vnderſtanding*, *know-
lege*, &c.

I am heerin the larger, both becauſe the abreuia-
tion

tion thereof which is ~~tert~~ is the termination of many of our proper names, as also for that it hath bin by others very much mistaken, which manifestly appeareth in that applying it as they do, it will not beare fencible construction to all names, wherevnto it belongeth, but yf in some it be strained to beare sence, vnto others it is moſte ridiculous and farr from all reason, whereas the true etymologie thereof muſt needs ſencibly and to the purpose agree with all names where-vnto it is composed.

Cuthbert importeth asmuch as *familiar vnto vnderstanding or acquainted with knowlege.*

Cuthread.

Acquainted with counſel or aduice, &c.

Cynhelme.

It ſhould rightly bee *Cyning-helme* / by which name our anceters called the *crown of a king.*

This ancient name *Cynhelme* is now become *kenelme.*

D

Dewhtic.

Dewght is our ancient proper woord for *vertue*, wee yet retaine heer-hence our woords *dowghty* and *dowghtyneſſe*, and they yet ſay in the north of *England* when a thing is nought and hath loſt his vertue, that it dowes not; and in ſome of our *Engliſh* poetrie wee ſomtymes fynd thewes vſed for vertues, or good partes.

Dewght-ric is as much to ſay as *vertue-rich*, or *rich in vertue*. It is now vulgarly in the *Netherlandes* written *Dieric* / & in *Latin* & after the *Latin* (I know not with what reaſon) made *Theodor* & *Theodoric*.

Dunstane.

A name given as it seemeth in recomendation of *Constancie* or *Stabillitie*. *Dun* is anciently a hil or mountaine, *stane* wee now prononnce *stone*, *Dunstane* is the mountaine-stone, or as wee might say the stone in the rock or mountaine, almost as much in signification as is in Hebrew the name of *Peeter*.

E**Eanswrd.**

Wee haue varied *eans* into *once*, *wyd* or *wyed*, is our own ancient woord for sacred, *Eanswrd* is as much to say as *once-sacred*.

Earmensfrid.

Earm is our ancient woord for *poor*, as *arm* in all *Germanie* yet is: our now vsed woord *poor*, wee haue from the French woord *paure*, which they haue fetched from the Latin woord *pauper*, *Earmensfrid* signifieth *The peace of the poor*.

Earmengard.

Gard is all one in our ancient language with *ward*, *Ermengard* signifieth, *A keeper or protector of the poor*.

Earmenhelt.

It should more rightly bee *Earmenhelt*, *helt* as also *healt* with our anceters beeing a champion: & so is *Earmenhealt*. *A champion for the poor*, or one that vndertaketh the cause and quarrel of the poor.

Edgar.

It was anciently *Eadgard*. Of *Ea* more rightly, *Ead* (now in the north of *England* pronounced *Eath*) we retain in the south-parts, *Othe*. *Eadgard* by short-

nes of speech become Edgar; is a *keeper of his oth* or faithfull conuenant.

Edmund.

Of **Ed** rightly **Ead**, I haue heer next before already spoken, **mund** is in our ancient language *mouth*, for as I fynd our anceters to haue vsed **Muth** for **Mouth**, so vsed they also **Mund**, as in all the *Netherlands*; It is yet vsed. **Eadmund** importeth as much, as *A mouth of troth-keeping* or loyaltie, for that an **Ead** or *each*, now modernly an *oth*, is an obligation vnto troth and loyaltie.

Eward.

This was anciently written **Eadward** and **Eadward**, and giuen as it appeereth in recomendation of loyaltie or faith-keeping, for **Eadward** is properly a *keeper of his oth*, vow, faithful promise or couenant. It is equiualent with **Edgar**, both importing one sence and meaning: **gar** and **ward**, *warders* and *gards*, beeing all one.

Wee haue had more kings of *England*, of this name then of any other, nyne in all, three before the conquest, and six after it. In *Portingall* they haue metamorphosed it from all sence and signification, and made it *Duarte*.

Edwine.

I haue formerly shewed how **Ed**, more rightly **Ead** standeth for *oth*, as also that **wine** signifieth *beloued*. It importeth that the oth couenant or faithful promise of the bearer of this name should of him bee beloued, that is, espetially esteemed & accompted of.

Egbert.

Anciently written **Egbert**, and by abreuiation

Eagbriht, as also abreuiaed to **Egbert**, **Eah** (now vulgarly in some places of *Saxonie* eght) signifieth *equitie* or *law*, also a *contract* or *matrimonie*, **Egbert** signifieth, *Aduised vnto equitie*, or of an *equitable aduisement*.

Egfrid.

It importeth *peace according to equitie*.

Engelbert.

Engel is the Teutonic name for an *Angel*, & composed with *bert*, may signifie, *Angelical aduisement*, or aduised to imitate an *Angel* in *purity*.

Eric.

Was anciently written **Earpe**, **Ea** is our true and ancient woord for *honor*. And so is **Eric** rightly interpreted, *Diues honoris*, that is, *Rich of honor*, or *rich in honor*.

Earcontwald.

More rightly **Earcontweald**. *A stout sustayner of honor*.

Earnold.

It is now written **Arnold**, but is rightly **Earn-hold**, one that doth *uphold* or *maintaine honor*.

Earnulph.

Beeing now become **Araultph**, is asmuch to say as (*Auxiliator honoris*) *The help or defence of honor*.

Ethelwald.

Noble stout, that is, *Noble and valliant*.

Ethelbert.

This was the name of the first Christned English king that euer was, entituled king of *Kent*, albeit his dominion stretched further, it signifieth *Nobly-conceyted or aduised*, or of noble conceyt or aduisement, whence

whence this termination **bert**, is abreuviated I haue already shewed. **Ethel** is also somtymes abreuviated to **Eat**, whereby **Ethelbert** doth come to be **Ealbert**, and also modernly **Albert**.

Ethelbilde.

Bilde is abreuviated of **bild**, our old woord for *Image*. **Ethelbild** is in effect asmuch to say as *the Image of Nobillitie*.

Ethelburg.

Burg is in our language anciently vnderstood for a fortified place or castle. **Ethelburg** doth in sense importe as much as *A noble-fortresse*.

It is lyke that it was among our anceters a name for some noble-woman, who in regard of maintaining her honor doth make her self *A noble fortresse*, for the defence thereof.

Ethelfrid.

This name composed of **Ethel** and **frid** (of both which is spoken before) is asmuch to say as *noble-peace*, by lyke a name giuen for memorie of some honorable peace that about the birth tyme of the chyld was concluded.

Ethelgund.

A name vsed for a woman, and of **Ethelgund**, it is become in pronouciation **Adelgund**, and varied into **Aldegund**, of **Adel** and **gund**. I haue sufficiently spoken before, both composed heer together, do importe *fauour-bearing vnto nobillitie*.

Ethelwulf.

I haue somtymes corruptly found it written **Ethelwulf**, Whereby it must consequently yeild so absurd a sense as *noble-wolf*. **Ethelwulf** is rightly *Noble-help*,

Wle-help, to win, to bee noble or honorable in helping. *Ethelwulf* also written *Adeulph* is by abreviation become *Adulph*.

Ethelwald.

It is rightly *Ethelwald*. An *upholder* or *sustainer* of honor.

Ethelward.

Corruptly written *Ethelard*. A *keeper* or *conseruer* of Nobilitie or noblenes.

Ethelwin.

This importeth as much as a *winner* of his nobilitie, one that by his deserts doth purchase his honor. And hee that purchaseth his honor by desert is not to bee accounted the lesse noble or honorable; but rather the more; because desert is the thing which is preferred in the sight of the moste high & equitable iudge; and in all earthly iustice ought to be of moste regard.

Euerard.

Euer and somtymes *Eber* is in our ancient language a wyld bore. I haue shewed before in the etymologie of *Bearn-hart* the reason why the ancient pagan Saxons imposed such lyke names vpon their children; to wit, that they should afterward imitate the courage which they decerned to bee in such lyke beasts of battail: as in this name of *Euerard* rightly *Euer-hart* is ment; the hauing of the *hart* or courage of the wyld bore.

F.

Faramund otherwise written *Pharamund*. *Fara* or *Fatra* and somtymes *Frata* is the original of our adiectiue *farr*; *mund* as before in the etymologie of

of Edmund, I haue shewed is *mouth*. *Faramund* was then a name giuen in regard of wel-speaking; our phrase heerin is now a litle changed, for wee vse to say *a faire tounge*, in steed of a faire-mouth.

Fildert or *Whildert*.

Fil is heer more rightly *Ful* and *Fildert*, *Del* or *fully-advysed*. Vnderstood as a precept, so to bee.

Franc.

The etymologie of this name though it now bee varied to *Francis*, doth yet remain with the mooste in vse and memorie, as when wee say *franc* and *free*. It seemeth to haue bin a name giuen in respect of bountie, liberalitie, or freedome.

Fredegode.

Frede or *peace* beeing both one, was before wee became debtors to the French for their woord *peace* (as before I haue noted) our own woord seruing to that sense, *gode* wee haue a litle varied in ortography and now wryte it good, *Fredegode* is then no other, then *Good-peace*.

Fredegund.

Gund as before is noted, is fauour affection or gratitude, and *Fredegund* extendeth to signify *a fauourer of peace*.

Frederic.

Frederic, beeing composed of *frede* and *ric*, is rightly interpreted *rich-peace* or *riche in peace*, and perhaps mooste properly ment in the peace or contentment of the mynde.

Fredefwode.

Wode, in more true ortographie *Wyde*, is as before hath bin said, our ancient woord for *sacred*. *Fredef-*

is as much to say as *Sacred by or through peace*.

G

Garb.

Anciently and rightly it is *Gar-hart*. *Gar*, as els where I haue shewed, is all one with the woord *All*, as in lyke manner *Omnis Totus*, as also *Cunctus* are of lyke signification in Latin, *Gar-hart* is then *All-hart*, to wit, altogether of hart or cowrage. The latinists haue made it *Gerardus*, and the Italians *Gerardino* and *Geraldino*.

German.

Now become *German* is *All or wholly a man*, to wit a man complete or entyre.

Gertrude otherwise Gertrude.

Ger as before is said, is as much as *All*, *trude* is truthe or trothe, for as I haue formerly shewed it was somtymes of our anceters indifferently vsed in stede of th. *Gertrude* or *Gertrude* is then as much to say as *All-troth*. A name wel imposed in regard of the fullnes of trothe and loyaltye which in a woman of honor or woorth is requir'd.

Gilbert.

Anciently *Gilberight*. There were of old tyme among our anceters certaine companies or confraries of men, called *Gildes*, first instituted for exercise of feates of armes (though after there were of other professions) and these had their appointed meeting places, and such as were admitted among them, were obliged to the exercises & orders which the rest obserued, and these were called *Gild-brotheren*: and for shortnes of speech a *Gild-brother* was also called a

Gild.

OF OUR SAXON PROPER NAMES.

Gub. The woord Gild in it self signifieth *free and bountiful*, Gubdrigh by abreviation become Gubert, is in effect one that is *liberally or bountifully disposed*.

Godfrid.

I have shewed before the etymologie of *fredegoda* which with *Godfrid* or *Godfred* is all one, only differing in the transposing of the sillables, both signifying *Good-peace*. It is much varied from the first original, as of *Godfrid* beeing made *Godfrey*, and from thence *Gauffrey*, by others againe *Geoffrey*, and not so let alone it is thence turned into *Ieffrey*, and in Latin to *Galsfridus*, albeit some more rightly make it *Godesfridus*.

Godhart.

The etymologie heerof wil easely apeer by that which is alredy said of *God* to bee now written *Good*, which sheweth it to bee *Good-hart*, intending *A hart enclyned to goodnes and vertue*. It is vulgarly become *Godard*.

Godetief.

It is a name for a woman, & after our moderne ortography *Godetief*, to wit, *Good-loue*, meanig *honest and true of loue*, for that is properly good-loue, some write it in Latin *Godulina*, others *Godula*.

Godric.

The etymologie is made plaine by that which hath bin alredy said of the two sillables whereof this name is composed, whereby it appeereth to bee, *Rich in good*, or *rich in goodnes*.

Godwin.

Awin-good, a gayner of welth; it may also be ment

of one that by trauail gaineth good partes or vertues vnto himself.

Godscalk.

Calk / is in our ancient language a seruant, as **Theron** also is &c. **Godscalk** is (*Seruus Dei*) the seruant of God.

Goswine.

It should rightly bee **Gode-wine**, wine as hath bin said signifieth beloued, and **Gode-wine** the beloued of God. It is now in the Netherlands vulgarly written **Gosen** as also **Goson**.

H

Harmen.

It should rightly bee **Hartman**, to wit, a man of harte or courage.

Heldebrand.

Held in ancient teutonic was written **Haelc**, and signifieth a stout or vaillant person, as a champion or such lyke, and because of the addition brand, it seemeth a name or title giuen for seruice vnto such as valiantly enuading their enemies had consumed and wasted their countrey by fyre. **Heldebrand** is in Italian become *Aldobrando*.

Henry or Henric.

Hen the first sillable heerof was anciently written **Han**, and so was anciently vsed for haue, as may appeer in diuers our old English wrytings, and to this day in some partes of England, they wil say, *Han you any?* for haue you any? **ric** signifieth not only rich, but also posselsion or iurisdiction, so as **Hanric**, which now wee wryte **Henry**, importeth as much as a haue-
of welsh

of welch, possession or iurisdiction, and so in lykely-
heyd a name giuen vnto such as were the heyres vnto
to some good estats or conditions of lyuing.

Heralt.

This beeing more viuall a name of office then a
proper name, I referre the reader for the etymologie
thereof vnto the names of offices and dignities.

Herbert.

Here was that in our ancient language that *exerci-*
tus is in Latin, to wit, an army. Of bert I haue spoken
before, in shewing the etymologie of *Cuthbert*/ *Her-*
bert/ is in effect as much to say, as *well seen or aduised*
in the state of an armie, a name giuen in lykelyheyd, as
a precept that so the bearer thereof should dispose
himself to bee.

Hereward.

This hauing bin a proper name grown from a
name of office I referre the reader for further know-
lege thereof vnto the last chapter.

Hewald rightly Ewald.

It signifieth a supporter or upholder of equitie.

Helperic oherwise **Huperic.**

It is found amōg the names of the ancient kings of
France, to bee written *Chūperic*, but this error by some
very iudicial antiquaries that had good skil in the old
French tounge (which as I haue shewed els where, was
very Teutonic and almost all one with our ancient
language) is discovered, for they fynding that as *Cy-*
ning was our ancient name of *seueraigne dignitie*,
whereof wee yet retayne our abreniated name of *King*
so was it also with the old French. And they setting
the letter *c*, in place and sound of *k*, to stand for *Cy-*

ning or king, as **C** **H**ilperic for Cyning **H**ilperic, **C** **L**othaire for Cyning **L**othaire, and the lyke, some afterward ignorantly ioyning the **C** vnto the other letters made of **C** **H**ilperic. **C**hilperic, and of **C** **L**othaire **C**lothaire, and so of others in lyke manner. **H**ilperic is as much to say as *A rich-helpe or one abounding in assistance.*

And whereas I haue said before that **h**lph was anciently **h**elp, and say heer that **h**lp was also **h**elp, this need not seem strange that in so ancient and spacious a tounge, one prouince may haue in pronountiation somuch differed from another, and of the lyke vnto this difference heer aforesaid, I could yf need were set down sundry examples.

Holdward.

An ancient and honorable name of office, for the etymologie whereof I referre the reader to the names of offices and dignities.

Hugh.

It is anciently also written **H**ughe, and alienated among strangers vnto *Hugo*. A feastual season they yet in the *Netherlands* vse to call **H**ughtye, that is to say, glad-tyde, for **h**ugh or **H**ughe both beeing one, signifieth *Ioy or gladnes.*

It may bee that our **H**oughtye now corruptly so pronounced, did first come of **H**ughtye.

Hughbert.

It is now become **H**ubert and **H**ubbert, and betokeneth *Disposed to ioy or gladnes.*

Hunfrey.

More anciently and rightly it is **H**unfrie, home is heer by shortnes of speech become **h**un, and **H**unfrie

OF OUR SAXON PROPER NAMES. 269
is *Home-peace*, or domestical quietnes.

K

Such names as I haue set down to begin with C may also begin with K, for that these two letters were vsed of our anteceters indifferently, as I haue shewed in diuers places.

L

Lambhart.

Rather in following the termination of some other names, then in true obseruing the right and original ortographie, it is written *Lambert* and *Lambars*.

It seemeth that in desyre of affecting meeknes and innocencie, this name was somtyme by the parents imposed vpon the child, who in that regard, called it *Lambhart*, that is, *The barre of a lamb*.

Lanfranc.

It should rightly bee *Lanfranc*, & seemeth first to haue bin a name of Naturalizing or makig the bearer thereof a free Denizen, whereby he became *Lanfranc*, to wit, free of the countrie.

Landulph.

This is asmuch to say as (*Regionis auxiliator*) *The help of the countrie*.

Lauther or Lothaire.

Both are one, and asmuch to say as *Pure or clean*.

Leofhold.

Leof is that anciently, from whence we now haue our woord *love*, the same in effect that wine is.

It seemeth to haue bin giuen for a precept of conseruatiō of amitie, as *To keep or hold love*. It is of *Leof*

been varied vnto **Leopold**, and was the name of the Duke of *Austria* that took our lion-harted king **Richard** prisoner.

Leofestan.

What **Leof** signifieth, I haue shewed heer next before, and **stan** or **estan** I haue before in the etymologie of **Arctstan**, shewed to bee the superlative degree of comparison for the which wee now in our language vse the termination **est**, so as **Leofestan** is *The beloued'st* or moſte beloued.

Leonhart now written **Leonard**.

Smalle change in the ortographie heereof doth plainly shew this name of **Leonhart**, to bee rightly interpreted **Lion-hart**, though modernly it be become **Leonard** and **Lenard**. I haue shewed before in the etymologie of **Bearn-hart** and **Euer-hart**, how our ancestors imposed vpon their children such names, to the end they should imitate the cowrage, of such beasts.

And vndoubtedly to the same end & signification, was first inuented and brought in vse the bearing of the images of those beasts in sheildes of armes, as were moſte cowragious and fiers, and therefore esteemed beasts of battail, as among others, the chief of all is the **Lion**, which of all other beasts is moſt, and in moſte different manner borne in armes.

Ludfris.

Lud and **Lupo**, anciently written also **Leu**, is all one in our old language with **folk**, for the which wee do now moſte comonly vse our borrowed French woord **people**. And I haue in sundry places before shewed to haue bin our ancient woord for **peace**: **Ludfris** is *Pax populi*, the peace of the people.

Ludgard.

Ludgard.

Of *Lud* I haue spoken heer last before, as also in the fyft chapter where I speak of *Ludgate*, and haue also shewed that *gard* and *ward* is in signification all one, *Ludgard* is then asmuch to say, as, *Conseruator populi*, A defender or conseruer of the people.

Ludwylph.

This is *Auxilium populi*. The help or assistance of the people.

Ludwyc.

These afore-going names that begin in *Lud*, do seem to haue bin imposed vpon such as were by their qualitie and condition lyke to beare sway in the common welth, beeing such as the welfare of the people, was to depend vpon. Of *Lap* sufficiently hath before bin spoken, *wyc* is a retreat or place of refuge. *Ludwyc* is *Refugium populi*. The refuge of the people. The Latynists haue made it *Lodonicus*. The French haue made it *Louis*, and wee haue now turned it to *Lewis*.

M

Maiden-hart.

The etymologie heerof is plaine enough. From *Maiden-hart* it is varied to *Manard* and *Manard*.

Maiden.

It was anciently *sparten-hart*, as much to say, as, A maiden champion. It doth appeer that in old tymes in case of necessitie, both mayds and women did manage armes, we now wryte and pronounce it *Maiden*.

Maiden-hart.

This name beeing written in moderne ortography is *Maiden-hart*, and seemeth to haue bin giuen in re-

comendation of a maidenly and modest mynde.

Mild-burg.

Being rightly written it is mild-burg; the woord myld wee have yet in vse, it anciently signified gracious, mercifull, and also bountifull, burg is heer taken for a walled town or fenced place, and so may Mild-burg bee asmuch to say as Gracious or bountifull to the town, or citie, &c.

Mild-read.

Of both the sillables, whereof this name is composed I have alredy spoken. It may wel importe Gracious or pleasing in speech or vttrance.

N

O

Onumber.

This seemeth to bee a name of aduice, that the beare thereof might endeavour to lue without cumber, and so bee vncumbred or vntroobled in the world.

Ofmund.

I fynd **Os** and **mus** in the old Teutonic to bee both now modernly with vs, **hows** and **muns** and **musch** (as I haue before shewed) to bee also both one, to wit, that which wee now call **mouth** **Ofmund** is then *The mouth of the bows*, the speaker for his familie.

Ofwald. *ma* beeing more rightly *meald* and composed with **Os** is *Gubernator domus*, A ruler or menager of the affaires of the bows.

Ofwin.

It

...to, 1000.5. de. ... **R** ...

R

[illegible]

Наберце.

1904

Madulpe now written Kaphe. ⁸ none read

other than

13. Signature

1. Explain the importance of the following factors in the development of a country's economy:

Revised:

0 12 11 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0

Deys-bari.

151

disione L1 2 A pure

in pure and clean hearts.

Byrnald written also Byrnald.

It should rightly bee *Byn-yealt*. A sincere champion; a champion vnblemished in honor, or without corruption.

Byrnblphe.

This by that which before hath bin said sheweth it self to signifie *Pure-help*, or sincere assistance, from *Byrnblphe*; it is now grown to bee *Bādolph & Bandal*.

Bychard.

Of our ancient woord *byc* we yet retaine our woord *rich* (as formerly I haue shewed) rich signifieth abundant, *Byc-hart* (for so anciently it is) is no other then *Rich-hart*, that is, *An abundant plentiful and liberal mynde*.

It is in *Germanie* pronounced *Bych-hart*; in the *Netherlands* *Wcart* or *Ricart*; in *Italian* and *Spanish* *Ricardo*, and in *Latin* it is written *Richardus*.

Robert.

Anciently written *Ruberht* and *Roubright*; is by abreuiation become *Robert*. *Rou* which is to bee pronounced as *Boo*; is our ancient woord for rest, repose or quietnes. *Robert* then signifieth, *Disposed or aduised vnto rest or quietnes*.

Rogart.

It was at first *Rogart* or *Rougard*; and after ward *Rugar*; & with vs lastly *Roger* or *Ru*; as is afore-said, is rest or quietnes, *gard* to keep or conferue. So as *Rogart* (now *Roger*) is *Akeeper or conseruer of rest or quietnes*.

It is in *Latin* made *Rogernus*; in *Italian* *Ruggiero*, and in *French* *Regier*. And it may bee that the *Frēch* prouerb

proverb or phrase of *Rogier bon temps*, which is to say, Roger good tyme, may haue some allusion to the original meaning of this name; for that good is the tyme which is conserued in rest and quietnes.

Rosamund.

The true etymologie heereof is *Rose-mouth*, & seemeth to haue bin giuen in regard of the *sweetnes* or *colour of the lippes*. Or it may haue bin giuen in recommendation of *sweetnes* and *eloquennes of speech*.

Of this name was a concubine vnto king *Henry the second*. In whose epitaphe a Latin poet, not vnderstanding the true etymologie of the name, makes *mund* which heere is *mouth* to bee *Mundus*, & so calles her the *rose of the world*. As thus:

*Hic iacet in tumba, Rosa mundi, non rosa munda,
Non redoler, sed oler, quæ redolere solet.*

Rowland.

Hauiing alreedy shewed that *Rou* signifieth rest, it appeereth that *Rowland* is in signification *The rest or repose of the countrie*. Wee now wryte it *Rowland*, in *Germanie* and *France* it is *Roland*, in the *Netherlands* *Roeland*, and in *Italian* *Orlando*.

Roward.

It is more rightly *Rou-ward*, *ward*, & *gard*, as I haue before diuers tymes said, are both one, this name hath the very same etymologie, which I haue shewed of *Roger*, to wit, *Conseruator quietis*.

S

Digebald or Dightbald.

Our moſte ancient word for *victorie* is *Dige*, pronounced *Dight*, and ſomtymes alſo ſo written :

bald, as before I haue shewed, is **bold** or **swift**. **Stigebald** or **Stigebald** (for both are one) is, **Bold** or **swift** in **victorie**, or as one might say, **speedie** in the prosecuting of **victorie**. It is of some for shortnes written **Sibald**, and of some **Schald**.

Sigebert or **Sigebert**.

It was anciently **Sigbert**, and by abreuiation it grew to bee **Sbright**, **Sbright**, and **Sebert**. It signifieth, **Righly-advised** for **victorie**, asmuch in effect to say, as of sound conceyt for the obtaining of **victorie**.

Sigher.

Vulgarly it is become **Segher** & **Seagar**: anciently it was in our language the same that **victor** is in Latin, to wit **A vanquisher** or **ouercomer**.

Sigetrina or **Sigetrina**.

Now vulgarly in the Netherlands **Segbertine** and **Segarina** (**victrix**) **A woman victor**.

Sigismund or **Sigismund**.

The mouth of victorie, belyke a relator of **victories** to the encowragement of others.

Sighward.

It is also written **Stward**, and signifieth **A conseruer** or **keeper of victorie**.

T

Theobald.

Anciently it was **Theobald** as also **Dewightbald**, the **th** (as oft before I haue said) hauing of our anceters indifferently bin somtymes vsed as **d**, and **d** againe as **th**. **Dewight** or **Thewht**, was heertofore our proper woord for vertue, as in **Dewhtye** I haue alreedy shewed. **Theobald** then beeing written according to the ancient

OF OUR SAXON PROPER NAMES. 271
ancient orthography thereof, is *Speedy in Vertue*.

Thewht-ryc.

For this see *Dewght-ryc.*

V

Ulfher.

Ulfh as before is said, is *help*, and therefore is *Ulfher*
A helper.

Ulfhfrid.

Aydfull to peace, an assistant vnto the maintenance of concord.

Ulfhfryc.

According to our now orthography it is *Help-riche*, that is to say, abundant in help-giuing. It is by abbreviation made *Ulfryc*, and in Latin *Vdalricus*, and some with reason do think that *Ulfhryc* otherwise written *Ulfryc*, should rightly bee *Ulfhryc*.

Ulfhstan.

Corruptly it hath bin accustomed to bee written *Wulfstan*, it signifieth *Moste help-full*.

W

Walburge.

Burg denoteth a fenced place, and *Walburge* expressing the wall of such a place, may metaphorically signify, *The safegard of the citie*. It is the name of a woman.

Walther or Walter.

For this, it beeing a name of office, I refer the reader to the names of offices.

Werburge.

More rightly were it, *Weardburge*, it is the name of
Ll 4 a woman

a woman, and is as much to say, as, *The keeper or conservuer of the burg, or town, &c.*

Willebrord or rather *Wilverord*.

Wero signifieth stirred or moved, *WVilberord*, is as much to say, as, *An active wil or mynd.*

WVillebrord an Englishman was the first Bishop of *Vireghe*, hee is called the Apostle of *Zealand*, for having there preached & planted the christian faith, as also in some of the prouinces next adioyning. His name by *Pope Sergius* (who made him Bishop) was changed to *Clement*.

Wifren.

Importeth. *A wil enctyned to peace, or a peaceable-mynd.*

Wittam.

This name was not anciently given vnto children in youth, but a name of dignitie imposed vpon men in regard of merit, but beeing since grown vnto a very ordinarie proper name, I thought good heer among these proper names to place it.

For the etymologie heerof the reader shal please to vnderstand, that the ancient Germans when they had warres with the Romans, were not armed as were they, but in a far more slight manner, having ordinarily swords, speares, shields of wood, holbards & the lyke, supplying the rest with their great strength and valour. Now when it so hapned that a German soldier was obserued to kil in the feild some captaine or charge-bearer among the Romans (such beeing wel armed and their helmets and headpeeces comonly gilded) the golden helmet of the slain Roman was (after the fight) taken and set vpon the head
of

of the soldier that hath slain him, and hee then honored with the name and tytle of *Gild-helme*, which should according to our now orthography be *Gilden* or *Golden-helmet*, which growing afterward vnto an ordinarie name, because diuers names began with *wil* (as before some are noted) this was easely by wrong pronountiatiō brought vnto the lyke, howbeit among the Franks it kept the name of *Guld-helme*, and with the french (of their offspring) it gat the name of *Guilheame*, and since came to bee *Guillaume*, and with the Latinists *Guilielmus*.

Winfrid.

An obtayner of concord, or a win-peace. *V*infrid an Englishman was by meanes of *Charles the great* vnto Pope *Gregorie the second*, made Archbishop of *Magunce*, and of the said Pope named *Boniface*, he is accompted an Apostle of *Germanie*, for his preaching and conuerting much people vnto the Christian faith in *Saxonie* and thereabouts. At *Doccum in Friesland*, hath bin reserued vnto our tyme, a book of the fowre Gospels all written with his own hand.

Winnefride or Winnefrida.

The name of a woman, and all one in signification with *winfrid*, to wit, *A winner or gayner of peace or concord, &c.*

Witekind.

A name giuen in regard of beautie, beeing according to our now vsed english, *whyte-chyld*.

Wulfang or Wolfeng.

Wang was our old woord signifying to take or to catch, *Wulfang* then hath no other signification then *Catch-wolf*. It was in old tyme very comendable to

M m

hunt

~ hunt and destroy this rauenous and cruel beast. It is somtymes corruptly written *wolfeg* / & somtymes *wolfey*.

Wyc-gard for easynesse of sound *wycard*.

It seemeth to haue bin a name of Office, *wyc* beeing (as is aforesaid) a place of retreat, and so *wyc-gard* the keeper of the *wyc* / It is since in *Germanie* grown to bee an ordinarie proper name, and by putting a *G* before the *v* / and *h* after the *c*, it is of strangers made *Gwichard* as also *Guichard*, and mounting ouer the *Alpes* into *Italie*, it is promoted to *Guicciardino*.

Wydmeare.

Wear is our ancient english woord for fame, so as *wyd-meare* / beeing for more redynesse in vttrance become *wymer* / is asmuch to say as *Far-famous* or *Wyde-renowned*.

Wyne or more rightly *Wine*.

Wyne (as hath bin said) did with our anceters signify *beloued*, and it may bee that in regard of the pleasant licor so called, and generally loued, they metaphorically vsed this woord.

I haue now curteous reader I trust, performed so-much as in the introduction to these etymologies I promised to make manifest; and therefore shal not need to bee further tedious in aleaging more of the lyke examples. But wel maiest thow bee assured that howsoeuer our ancient proper names may bee by vulgar corruption varied from the original, seeing so many of them haue come to bee frequent vnto strangers that neither knew nor could heed what they mēt, yet no one (albeit their bee very many) but it was vsed by our anceters with good significatiō & reason.

And

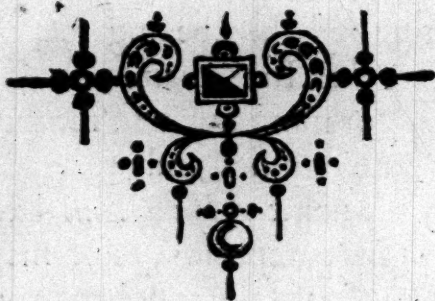
And for thy better notice of these heer aleaged it may please the to obserue, how *Noblenes, Honor, Honesty, Valor, Peace, Amitie, Quietnes, Charitie, Truth, Loyaltie* and all other vertues, were in their name-giuing recomended.

Wee are further to note that euen in their ancient tymes they not hauing the learning & experience, of so many foregoing flowrishing ages to the augmentation of their knowlege, as wee now haue, would not bee so vnheedful or vncurious as to be content lyke vnto parats to speak they knew not what, but they would and did know what in their denominations they vttred; framing and disposing them (as is afore noted) as a precept or obligation to the embracing or praise of some kynde of vertue.

Heerin the ancient and excellent custome of our old anceters was not inferior vnto that of the ancient Hebrewes, who obserued the lyke, as in the name of *Noe* to signifie *rest*; hee being reserued to repose after the raging flud. In the name of *Abraham* varied from *Abram*, for more apter signification, by God himself, was both signified and presaged *A father of a multitude*. By the name of *Isaac*, *Laughter*, in regard as it may seeme of his parents ioy, or of his mothers laughing when she heard the angel to promisse his vnlykely birth. By the name of *Iacob* *A supplāter*, which might wel bee for that he supplanted his brother *Esau*. By the name of *Dauid*, *Beloued*. By *Salomon*, *Peaceable*. By *Rachel*, *A sheep*, & by *Jonas*, *A doue*, both in regard of innocencie. By the holy name of *Iesus*, *A Saviour*. A name moſte fit for *Iesus Christ*, the moſte woorthy bearer thereof. And lastly to omit many

276 THE ETYMOLOG. OF OUR SAX. PRO. NAM.
others, the name of *Peeter*, his first name beeing put
away and this imposed and put vpon him in steed
thereof, by Christe himself, thereby to presage the
sure & firme foundatiō of his Church, against which
the gates of hel should not preuaile, for that *Peeter* is
as much to say as *A rock or stone*, and there can bee no
foundation more firme then that which is set vpon
a rock.

This may now suffice to shew not only the vtilitie
and woorthynesse of this moſte ancient custome, but
how it is confirmed in the obseruation thereof euen
by God himself, and was without all doubt through
God, euen by naturall reason put into the myndes of
our anceters, and such other of the moſte ancient na-
tions of the world, as haue obserued the lyke.



HOW

HOWV BY THE SVRNAMES OF THE FA-

milies of *England*, it may bee decerned from
whence they take their originalles, to wit,
whether from the ancient English-
Saxons, or from the Danes or
Normannes.

The nynth Chapter.

ALbeit Englishmen (anciently called
Saxons & otherwise English-Saxons)
may bee accompted to haue had one
original with the Danes and the Nor-
mannes, they all somtyme speaking in
effect all one language; yet coming to bee deuyled
vnder seuerall gouernments, and to vary in their lan-
guages, they thereby seemed seuerall people; and so
grew to bee accompted strangers the one vnto the
other: neuerthelesse it hath so falne out, that such of
these three natiōs, as haue hapned to become inhabi-
tants in our realme, haue their ioyned together againe
in one, whereby the posteritie of the Danes and the
Normannes (although but litle in respect of the En-
glish-Saxons) do all at this day remain without any
distinction vnder one generall and renowmed name
of Englishmen.

This notwithstanding, because men are naturally
desyrous to know somuch as they may, and are much
pleased to vnderstand of their own offspring, which
by their surnames may wel bee decerned, yf they bee
surnames of continuance, I haue heerin as neer as I

can, endeuoured my self to giue the curteous reader satisfaction. And do make choise according as the moste matter enduceth mee, both first to begin and longest to continew in shewing the families descended from the ancient English-Saxons, the which of the three heer named, are not only the farr greater number, as beeing and hauing remayned the corps or body of the realme; both before and since either Danes or Normannes entred in among them; but may also best bee reputed the ancientest and meerest Englishmen.

The reader is then to consider that after our ancestors the Saxons were come out of *Germanie*, and had placed themselues in *Britaine*, they did change the names (as in the fift chapter I haue shewed) of the cities, townes, castles, villages, passages, feildes, forests, waters, hilles, and dales, &c. Vnto the names of lyke places in *Germanie*, or vnto names otherwise intelligible and apt in their own tounge. And did also giue names (in lyke manner intelligible in their own language) to all such townes, castles, and manner howses, &c. as themselues buylt and erected.

Now as men haue alwayes first giuen names vnto places, so hath it afterward grown vsuall that men haue taken their names from places; I meane their surnames: and this custome albeit it was not of old tyme generally vsed of all, yet grew it afterward to bee vsed of all such or of the moste parte of such as grew vnto continued families; and first and espetially in such as were the owners of the places where themselues inhabited, for that was held as a thing of espetial credit and accompt, and such surnames did also remain

remain vnto those that were issued from such places though they possessed them not, as all in deed could not continew to do, by reason of the great increasse of posteritie. And this custome of taking surnames of places, grew in tyme more vsuall then the more ancient custome vsed before, which was of adding to a mannes proper name the proper name of his father, with putting sonne vnto it, expressing thereby whose sonne hee was, as in *VVales* and among the comon people of *Holland*, it is yet the vse.

Moreouer diuers of our anceters took their surnames by reason of their abode in or neer some place of note, where they settled themselves & planted their ensueing families, as within tunes (or fenced places) or at a *Wood*/ a *Hill*/ a *field*/ a *Green*/ a *Brook* a *Bourn*/ a *foord*/ a *great tree*/ and sundry the lyke. Whereby for example, *Robert* of or at the *Green*/ was so called because hee dwelt on or by a *Green*/ and afterward the preposition *of*/ became by vulgar hast. to bee *a*/ when of *Robert of Green*/ he was called *Robert a Green*/ and the *a* lastly quyte left out, hee remayned only *Robert Green*/ and the lyke may bee said of others in the lyke manner.

And now because our surnames are infinite, & that it were very tedious to note a multitude of them at length, I haue heer chosen out the moſte vsuall terminations, each whereof beeing as it were to serue for a generall rule, for all such as do so end. And that these families are of the ancient English race it wil easely appeer by reason that the deryuation & signification of such terminations are originally & meerly appertayning to our own ancient English-Saxon language.

Yet before I do heerin begin to proceed, it is requisite that I answere an obiection which (I fall into accompt) some one or other may bring against mee, and that is, that albeit these terminations are meerly English, and therefore the bearers of such names lyke to bee in deed of ancient English race, yet the *Norman Conqueror* hauing made hauoke of somany Englishmennes landes, by giuing them to his Normānes; the Normannes then became the possessors of such places as the Englishmen had before both the names and the possessions of; and so might now lose the one as wel as the other. To this I answere, that it is true that the Conqueror so did, but I haue not therefore found that euer he forced the Englishmen to leaue their surnames when hee made them lose their landes, but that they both then and euer since kept theirs.

Neither did his Normannes that had gotten the possession of Englishmennes howses and liuinges, leaue of their own surnames that they brought with them out of *Normādie*; but retayned stil their French names together with Englishmennes landes, as may appeer by the many families of Normā race, that with their French surnames afterward remained in *England*, whereof diuers are there yet remaining. Neither would they somuch appeer to bee English, as to assume vnto themselues that were conquerors, the surnames & consequently the esteem of such as were conquered. And seeing they held Englishmen in such contempt that it was for the tyme (in a forte) a shame to bee accompted an Englishman, it must needs follow that their pryde would not suffer them to leaue their

their French and to take English surnames.

And whereas soon after the conquest wee fynde that such as had meer English surnames, had the French article, *le*, which in English is, *the*, or the preposition, *de*, which in English is, *of*, set before them: as for example; yf the surname betokened some facultie or office; as *Reue*; it might bee written *le Reue*, or yf it had denomination from some place, as *Newton*; it might bee written *de Newton*, but it is not therefore to bee thought that these were Normannes with English surnames, but that it only was (as yet it is) the French manner of writing surnames both of their own and of strangers, with *le* and *de*. And this came afterward in *England* to bee omitted, when Englishmen and Englishmanners began to preuaile vnto the recouerie of decayed credit.

The lyke may bee said of such surnames as ended in sonne and were turned in bad French vnto fitz (instead of fils) whereby for example, *Arnoldsonne* was frenchified into *Fitz-Arnold*, *VValtersonne* into *Fitz-walter*, and sundry others the lyke, but of these surnames that are composed with *fitz* I shal take occasion to speak more when I come to speak of the surnames of the Normannes.

And heer in the mean tyme I wil proceed with such terminations of surnames as are woords meerly belonging to our own ancient language, that thereby our ancient English families from the aforementioned others, may the better & more cleerly bee decerned.

As.

All names ending in all or hall.

There are many of our surnames that end in all

N n

or

or *hall*, and albeit as all Englishmen know, the one in signification is different from the other, yet through our accustomed clipping of our woords they are in some surnames confounded, as for example, *woodhall* doth thereby become to bee *woodall*, &c. Some do rightly end in *all*, as *woorall*, which (as I take it) should more significatly bee *woorth-all*, many other of our surnames do lykewise end in *all* or *hall*, of which I shal not need to set down more examples, it suffiseth that I set down these terminations for such as anciently are our own, to wit, both English in found, and in signification, and therefore must rightly appertaine to Englishmen, and consequently declare such to bee of our ancient English families.

All ending in *Beke*.

There are diuers of our surnames that end in *beke*, as *vvelbeke*, *Bournbeke* and others. *Beke* is also a surname of it self. *Beke* is in the ancient Teutonic a smalle runing water that issueth from some *bourne* or *wellspring*, which in Latin is called *Torrents*, & otherwise in English a *brook*.

All ending in *Berie*.

Many of our surnames that end (as wee pronouce it) in *berie*, are comonly written *bury*, as *Thornbury*, *Bradbury* and the lyke, for the etymologie of this termination *berie*, or *burie*, look in the seauenth chapter at the letter *b*, in the explanation of our ancient English woords.

In *Burg*, *Burgh*, or *Borow*.

Of *burg* or *burghe*, cometh our now vsed name of *Borow*, which is also the termination of diuers surnames, as *Aldborrow*, *Newborow*, & the lyke. For the etymologie

etymologic heerof, look, at the letter b, in the explanation of our ancient English woords.

In Bourne.

Bourne cometh of our ancient woord *burna*, and is a termination vnto very many of our ancient English surnames as *Tichbourne*, *Milbourne*, *Syvanbourne*, and the lyke.

Bourne is properly such water as issueth or riseth vp by a spring out of the earth, & some smalle brooks occasioned thereby may also thereupou haue gotten the name of *bournes*. Some do think a *bourne* to bee only a suddaine breaking foorth of water out of the earth (as diuers tymes hath hapned) and after ceased againe, but I fynd it properly to bee spring-water; & a fountaine rising out of the earth is yet in some partes of *Friesland* called a *spring-bourne*. In *Brabant* a wel is called a *bourn-pit*, but in *Germanie* they haue varied it and call a wel a *brun*, calling also certaine tarte and medicinal waters which they haue there in diuers places, by the name of *Sowbrunneg*.

Syvanbourne is lyke to haue taken name of *Swānes* keeping about *bournes*, or about *bekes*, issuing from them. *Milbourne* of some mil that went by the issue of water from some *bourne*; *Langbourne*, may also haue had that name by reason of the length, and *Bradbourne* of the bredth, &c.

In Bryg.

Bryg was more anciently written *Bryeg*, and is now written *Bridge*, it is a termination vnto sundry our surnames, as *Burbridge* (which rather should bee *Burgh-bridge*) & others: & it is plurally the surname of a right honorable familie.

It is also in the north of *England* a surname of some of the yeomandry, and written and pronounced *Brigges*.

In *Brook*.

This beeing the termination of diuers names, as *Brabrook* (more rightly as I take it *Broadbrook*) &c. Is the surname of an honorable & of sundry woorthipfull families. A brook wee now take to bee a smalle runing water, but I fynd it in the Teutonic to bee that which *palus* is in Latin, a watrish or moorish grownd. The citie of *Bruxels* took name of the *brook-land* or morish grownd lying on the northsyde thereof.

In *By*.

In this termination many of our ancient surnames do end, as first for example *VVilloughby*, the surname of honorable & woorthipfull families, also *Kirkby*, *Holtby*, & many others: the particle, *by*, serving to expresse neer vnto what thing of note the residence of such a familie was, when this their surname first began; as beeing neer vnto some noted *willow tree*, or by a *Churche*, or by a *wood*, for *holt* in our language is otherwise *wood*, &c.

In *Caster*, *Ceaster*, and *Chester*, &c.

Wee haue sundry terminations of places and consequently of surnames of men (taken from those places) which end in *Caster*, *Ceaster*, *Cester*, *Chester*, and *Ceter*, all which do seem to mee to haue bin but one, and not anciently coming from any Teutonic or Saxon woord, but deryued from *Castrum* in Latin. And as wee need not to doubt that the Romans in the many yeares that they bore sway in *Britaine*, did there

there make diuers fortifications which they called *Castra*. So may wee think that our anceters the Saxons, fynding these fortifications of the Romans, did imitate though corruptly (as all strangers are wont) their appellation, which in tyme grew more & more to varrie, as first to become *Caster* & *Ceaſter*, and afterward the c to get an h vnto it, and ſo come to bee *Cheſter* (but this as I take it came through the orthography of the Normannes) & ſome omitting in pronountiation the h, as alſo the ſ, in the middeſt of a woord (as the French uſe to do) haue made it *Ceter*. Our Saxon anceters coming into *Britaine* after the Romans, & to bee the owners of ſuch places, ſo varied in denomination, they ſo came to bee their ſurnames.

In *Clif*.

A *Clif* is a kynd of rock on the ſea ſyde, and as it were cleſt or broken of: diuers of our ſurnames do therein end; as *Radclif* (the ſurname of a right honorable familie) alſo *Whitclif* and others. It may ſeem that *Radclif* was vnderſtood at the firſt for *Red-clif*, as *Whitclif* for *whyte-clif*, both denoting the colour, as other lyke names do the falſion or ſituation of their *Clifs*.

In *Clough*.

A *Clough* or *Clowgh* is a kynd of breach or valey down a ſlope from the ſyde of a hill, where comonly ſhraggess and trees do grow. It is the termination of *Colclowgh* or rather *Cold-clowgh*, and ſome other ſurnames.

In *Comb*.

Comb was with our anceters a feild of ſomewhat high or hilly grownd, and not low as a meddow. It is

the termination of some of our surnames as *Ashcomb*, *Varcomb*, and the lyke, *Ashcomb* may wel haue taken that appellation of such trees there growing, and *Varcomb* of war or fighting at such a place.

In *Cote*.

This termination serueth for *Heathcote*, so called of standing on a heath, and *Southcote* in regard of beeing south from another that was north from it, & so of the lyke. And albeit that a *Cote* in our language is a litle slight-built countrey habitation (such as after the French wee call a *cottage*) yet as all things begin litle, so that which first bore the name of a *cote*, might afterward come to bee the habitation of a woorthipfull family, and yet retaine the name of *cote* stil, which beeing no other originally in it self then is aforesaid, yet carrieth it honor in the antiquitie thereof.

Wee also vse this woord *cote*, for a garment, but it seemeth to haue bin at first metaphorically brought in vse, in regard of beeing shrowded therein, as in the litle hows or cote of the body, but anciently wee so vsed it not, for our ancient woord for a *cote* in this sence, was a *reaf*.

In *Croft*.

A *Croft*, wee esteem some litle plot of grownd, and both the name and the thing are yet in ordinarie knowlege. In *Croft* do end sundry surnames, as *Bancroft*, which is asmuch to say as the croft at or by a beaten path, or highway. *Holcroft* more rightly *Holtcroft*, because it consisted of wood.

In *Date*.

For our own English woord *Date*, wee somtymes vse the borrowed French woord *valley*: the signification

cation of *Dale* is yet vnto vs known. It is both a surname and the termination of sundry surnames, as *Green-dale*, *Dib-dale*, rather *Deep-dale*, and the lyke.

In *Day*.

Our now vsed woord *Day*/ our anceters wrote *Deaga*/ in the *Netherlands* they say *Daghe*. It is both a surname and a termination also, as of *Loueday*, *Holy-day*, and the lyke.

In *Dene* or *Den*.

It need not seem strange (sith it is diuers tymes found) that in one language there are feveral names for one thing, as heer in ours for present example, *Dene* or *Deane*/ which for shortnes is become *den*/ is all one with *Dale*. It is also otherwise a low place, and we now vse it for a caue in the earth, as the *denne* or lurking place of wyld beasts.

It is the termination of sundry of our surnames, as for example, of *Camden*, which I take anciently to haue bin *Campden*, and signifieth the *Dene* or *Dale*/ belonging to some *Camp* or *Camp-fighter* (for both is one) in our now vsed language called a *Champion*/ but in the Teutonic a *Campion*. A *Campdene* may also haue bin some place appointed for *Campions*, *Combatfighters*, or men of armes to encounter each other. And so the place become afterward to bee the surname of him and his familie that owned it, as others in lyke sorte haue donne. *Norden*, or rather *Northden*, is lyke so to haue bin called by reason of some opposite place therevnto in the south, &c.

In *Dish*.

Some of our surnames as *Cauandish* and *Standish*, &c. I remember to haue this termination and these

and the lyke names seem to haue come of some name of office, belonging to the seruing of some Prince or great man at his table. And whereas with vs a dish is the name of the vessel wherein the meat is serued to the table; in *Germanie* they do call the table it self the dish.

In Dun or Dune.

Dun or Dune/ was our ancient name for a mountaine, but (as I take it) for such kynde of mountaines, as do ly stretching out in length, and comonly on the sea syde as do the Dunes or sand-hilles, on the sea-coasts of *Holland*, the lyke whereof some call in *England* the downes/ Dune by our accustomed manner of varrying in ortography is somtymes written Don/ and is the termination of sundry surnames, as *Heydon*, which as it seemeth was anciēty *Highdun* or *Heathdun*, either a high or a heathy hil. As also of *Standon*, which may haue bin *Stane-dun*, that is, the stony-hil.

In *Ep* anciēty *Ea*.

As wee anciēty vsed the name of *wæter*/ whereof wee yet retaine the name of *water*/ so did wee also to thesame sence vse *ep* or *ea*. The French among other woords which they yet retaine of their old *Frākish* roūg (the which as originally ours was, was Teutonic) do giue vnto *water* the name of *eau*. Our name of *land*/ is anciēty *Eyland*, as yet in the *Netherlands* it is, and asmuch to say as *waterland*, beeing in deed land out of water. *Ep* is a termination of diuers of our surnames, and both honorable and woorshipfull, as *Sidney*, *Tilney*, and others, whose possessions whence their surnames were taken, were situate neer vnto waters.

In

In *feld*.

This beeing anciently *feld* and somtymes *bedd*, is but litle swarued from the originall. It is both a surname, and a termination also, as to *Bedingsfeild*, *Broomfeild*, *Bentsfeild*, and sundry others.

In *fleet*.

Such surnames as haue heerin their termination, did originally come from residences at some places where riuers or streames did ebbe & flow.

In *foord*.

Not only sundry of our ancient English surnames do heerin end, but some also so seem to do which are of French or Norman race, but this groweth, by the not rightly distinguishing betwee *foord* and *fort*, the first beeing a meer English termination, denoteth as yet wee retain in memorie, a foord or water-passage. The other coming from the Fréch, denoteth a place of strength by nature, as *Roche-fort*, the *strög rock*, &c.

The surname of *Rainford* now *Rainssford*, seemeth to haue risen by reason that the first of this name had his dwelling at a passage or ford caused through raine: and so in lyke manner that of *Swinford* of a dwelling at a foord resorted vnto through the muddynesse thereof, by swine.

In *foot*.

There are not many surnames that heerin do finish, yet such as there bee haue gotten such name of footmanship, as the surnames of *Harefoot*, *Rosfoot*, and the lyke, which were giuen for swittnes of running or going.

In *Gan*.

Some few of our terminations are in *gan*, as *Iar-*

O o

negan,

negan, *Hogan* and the lyke. It is a particle in our ancient language diuers tymes vsed, in expressing the endument of some qualitie.

In Gate.

It was anciently written *geat*, a through-passage, and is the termination of diuers of our ancient surnames, as *Hungate*, *Hargate*, and the lyke.

In Graue.

This termination expresseth the hauers of such surnames, as *Waldgraue*, *Musgraue*, *Sedgraue*, & the lyke, to haue borne office in the tyme of our English-Saxon anceters, whereby they haue bin honorable and woorshipfull so many ages past: for the etymologie of *graue* I referr the reader to the ensuing chapter of our ancient tytles of offices and dignities.

In Groue.

We vnderstand heerby a woodie place or thicket, howbeit more rightly a place for the nowrishing & growth of yong trees. It is both a name and a termination to sundry of our surnames.

In Ham.

It is in *Germanie* written *heym*, and importeth as much as *home* now doth with vs. *Ham* originally signifieth a couerture or place of shelter, and is thence grown to signifie ones *home* (as now vncomposed we pronounce it) that is to say ones birth-place or moſte proper habitation. It is one of our greatest terminations of surnames, as of *Denham*, for hauing his home or residence down in a valley. Of *Higham* for the situation of his *ham* or *home* vpon *high-ground*; and accordingly of many others, distinguished one from another in lyke manner vpon one or other cause.

In

In *Hil*.

As *High-hil* of his residence so situated, *Burghhil*, of hauing his burg or *Castel* on a hil, & so of the lyke.

In *Hold*.

As *Sterne-held*, first taken of hauing that charge in a ship.

In *Hows*.

As *Woodhows* so named as it seemeth, of his hows buylt of wood, or at a wood or forest.

In *Hurst*.

Hurst, is anciently also written *Hurst*. It signifieth a woodie place, and somtymes where the trees grow but low, and not so high as in other places by reason of the vnaptnesse of the soyle; as our surnames (among others) of *Stanihurst*, to wit *Stoni-hurst*, & *Sandhurst*, do in parte declare.

In *Ing* or *Ling*.

These terminations belonging to diuers of our surnames do expresse some indument of a quallitie. As *Harding* to haue bin so called for his *Hardynesse*. *Snelling* for his swiftnes. *Frankling* otherwise writtē *Franklin*, for his purchased freedome or libertie. I read that king *Alfrid* fynding a chyld in an Egles nest, named him *Nestling*. Of whose woorth the king afterward somuch esteemed that hee made him an Earle.

In *Kin* or *Kings*.

I mean to speak heerof anon, when I shall haue occasion to speak of surnames that are grown from proper names.

In *Land*.

Diuers of our ancient terminations end in *land*.

The owners and dwellers at such places hauing had their names for distinction sake according to the nature of the soile, as for example, *Bukland*, of the flore of beechtrees (anciētly called *buk*) thereon growing. *Leyland* of the lying *leg*h or empty thereof, to wit, vncultyued. *Driland*, of the drynesse thereof, &c.

In *Leg*h/ *Ley*/ or *Lea*.

How soeuer wee do now distinguish these terminations, I take them to haue bin anciently all one, & to signifie as is next before said; grownd that lieth vnmanured and wildly ouergrown, as diuers of our surnames therein ending do notefy, as for example, the honorable surname of *Barkley*, of birchtrees anciently called *berk*; *Bromley*, of the store of broom, and *Bramley*, of *ley* or *leg*h grownd bearing brambles. A combat beeing once foughten in *Scotland* between a gentleman of the familie of the *Lefleyes*, and a knight of *Hungarie*, wherein the Scottish gentleman was victor, in memorie thereof and of the place where it hapned, these ensuing verses, do in *Scotland* yet remaine.

*Between the lesse ley and the mare,
He slew the knight, and left him thare.*

In *Man*.

The surnames ending in *Man*, were vsuall (as it should seem) to expresse the bearers trade of lyf, as *Chapman* for that he was a marchāt. *Freeman*, through the amending of his estate from some former of lesse libertie, &c.

In

In *Oke*.

As *Bradoke*, rightly *broad-oke*, *Barn-oke*, of *A burnt or blasted oke*, &c.

In *Ot*.

As *Hariot*, for the which look among the names of offices, &c.

In *Port*.

As *Damporte*, *Newporte*, and the lyke: *Porte* in the Teutonic (from whence and not from the French wee anciently haue it) was somtyme vsed for a fenced or walled town. The chief magistrate of the citie of *London* before it had a *Mayer*, was called the *Portgreue*.

In *Pool*.

As *VValpool*, *Hampoole*, and such others. It anciently signifieth a standing water or pond.

In *Ryc*.

As *Goodryc*, wrong-written *Goodridge Kenryc*, & the lyke, *ryc* as els where I haue shewed, somtymes importeth welth, somtymes iurisdiction.

In *Roof*.

As *Woodroof* & some few others. *Roof*, anciently signifieth the couering of a hows, *reaf* the couerture of mannes body, as a cote or garment.

In *Shaw*.

As *Bradshaw*, *Scrimshaw* and the lyke, it cometh of a shade or shadow of trees, whereat they had their residences, *Bradshaw*, beeing asmuch in effect as *Broad-shadow*, *Scrimshaw*, *A shadow of defence, or shelter*.

In *Spear*.

As *Breakspear*, the surname of *Nicholas Break-*

spear an Englishman of a woorthipfull familie, the ancient residence whereof as some hold was about *S. Albons*. He was chosen Pope, and then bore the name of *Adrianus Quartus*. *Breakspear*. *Shakspear*, and the lyke, haue bin surnames imposed vpon the first bearers of them for *valour and feases of armes*.

In *Stal*.

This albeit in composition it bee become *stal*, yet should it rightly bee *deal*, which is asmuch to say as parte, as for example *Tunstal*, should bee *Town-deal*, *Bozstal*, *Bozodeal*, &c.

In *Steed* or *Stede*.

As *Barksteed*, *Bensteed*, and the lyke. *Stede* signifieth place (as *stow* also doth) and accordingly denoteth the place of residence of the bearers of such names.

In *Stock*.

As *Bostock*, and *Holstock* rightly *Holstock*, denoting the stock or trunc, of some tree whereby his residence was named and consequently himself. *Stock* is in the Teutonic also vnderstood for a staf, and it is said to be the proper & ancient surname of the great & Emperiall hows of *Austria*, in memorie whereof it beareth two ragged staues crossed sautrie-wise, as belonging to the armes thereof.

The ancient
surname of
the hows of
Austria.

In *Thorp*.

Before wee were acquainted with the French name of *village*, *thorp* in our own ancient language served the turne. It remaineth yet the termination of some of our surnames, the hauers of such were peradventure somtyme the Lords or owners of such *thorps*, as *Lang-thorp*, so called for the length thereof,
Col-thorp

In *Ton*.

This I take to bee one of the greatest terminations wee haue, and therefore of this and these ensuing others may bee said.

In *foord*/ in *ham*/ in *ley*/ and *tun*.

The moste of English surnames run.

Though the name of *hedge*, do anciently appertaine to our language, yet wee also vsed somtymes for the same thing, the name of *tun*. In the *Netherlands* they yet calle it a *tun*, and in some partes of *England*, they wil say hedging and tyning. Our anceters in tyme of warre to defend themselves from beeing spoyled, would (in steed of a palizado as now is vsed) cast a dytche and make a strong hedge about there howses: and the howses so enuyroned about with *tunes* or *hedges*, gat the names of *tunes* annexed vnto them. As *Cote-tun* now *Cotton*, for that his *Cote* or hows was fenced or tuned about. *North-tun* now *Norton*, in regard of the opposit situation thereof from *South-tun*, now *Sutton*.

Moreouer when necessitie, by reason of warres and troobles, caused whole thorps to bee with such *tunes* enuyroned about; those enclosed places did thereby take the name of *tunes*, afterward pronouced *townes*, and so gaue cause that all *Stodes*, now *Cities*, all *Thorps*, now *villages*, all *Burghs*, now *Burrovs*, and all places els, that conteyned but some number of tenements in a neernes together, gat the names of *townes*: as vulgarly wee yet vnto this day call them.

In *Tre*.

O o 4

As

How the
name of
town came
in so great
vse amōg vs.

As *Appletree*, *plumtree*, and the lyke.

In *ward*.

For this, it beeing the termination of a name of office, I wil referr the reader vnto the next chapter.

In *wel*.

Our anceters according to the different issue of waters, did differently terme them, and among other, that which rose bubling out of the earth they called *well-water*, as yf they had said, *bubling water*: but this name of *wel* grew afterward among vs to bee the name of the *bourn-pitt*, whereout the water is drawn. Sundry coming to possesse places, which were neer vnto *welles* of espetiall note, hauing gotten thereby the name of such or such a *wel*, became after them so to bee called.

As *Stanivvel*, of his dwelling at a *wel* so named, of the stonynesse thereof, *Mosvvel* of a *wel* where much mosse did grow, &c.

And heer by occasion of this termination I am to craue the readers patience for a litle digression, to relate a thing whereof it hath giuen mee remembrance. So fel it out of late yeares, that an English gentleman trauailing in *Palestine* not farr from *Ierusalem*, as hee passed through a countrie town, hee heard by chance a woman sitting at her door dandling her chyld, to sing; *Bothvvel bank thovv blumest faire*, the gentleman heer-at exceedingly wundred, & foorthwith in English saluted the woman, who ioyfully answered him, and said shee was right glad there to see a gentleman of our Ile, and told him that shee was a Scottish woman, and came first from *Scotland* to *Venice*, and from *Venice* thether, where her fortune was to bee the

the wyf of an officer vnder the Turke, who being at that instant absent, and very soon to returne, intreated the gentleman to stay there vntill his returne; the which hee did, and shee for countrie sake to shew her self the more kynd and bountifull vnto him, told her husband at his home coming that the gentleman was her kinsman; whereupon her husband entertained him very freindly, and at his departure gaue him diuers things of good value.

In *woorth*, as it is used for a termination of a place name, or a surname.

Heerein do end the surnames of *Southwoorth*, *Northwoorth*, and others. It signifieth not *woorth*, as wee now vse it for *value*, although it bee now so written, but anciently it was *weorth* and *weard*, whereof yet the name of *weir* remaineth in diuers places in *Germanie* as *Thonawer*, *Keyserwer*, *Bomelwer*, and the lyke, and in *England*, to the same sense and signification the names of *Tamrwoorth*, *Kenelmewoorth* and the lyke. A *weorth* or *werd* is a place situate between two riuers, or the nook of land where two waters passing by the two sydes thereof do enter the one into the other, such nooks of ground hauing of old tyme bin chosen out for places of sattle, where people might bee warded or defended in. It is also somtymes taken for an *Ile* or *peninsula*, not in the sea, but in fresh waters. Our name of *weares* in riuers, is also heere-
hence deryued.

In *wope* or *wep*, otherwise *wop*.

Because the *c* and *k*, are of lyke value in our ancient orthography *wyc* is also written *wyk*. *Wyc* properly signifieth *A place of refuge or retreat*. It remaineth

neeth yet the termination of *Slesfryk*, *Brunsfrye*, *Harderfrye*, and sundry other places in *Germanie*. And in *England* of *Warrvyk*, *Barvyk*, *Anrvyk*, and diuers other places, & through the Norman corruption of our language and ortography, the *t* hauing gotten an *h* put vnto it, it is in diuers names of places, of *wyc* become *wych*, as of *Sandfrye* or *Sandfryk*, *Sandfrych*. Of *Greenfrye*, *Greenfrych*, & such lyke.

It is the termination of fundrie our ancient surnames, as *Stragwrych*, coming belyke of *A strongwryc*, hold, or fortresse. *Frowyk* of *A glad-refuge* or place comfortable safty, &c.

Sundry other terminations wee haue that anciently are our own, and in our ancient language significant, but not so generall as that I can remember many surnames to end in them, as for example.

In *wode*, corruptly *wood*, and importing some qualitie as manhood, &c.

In *hope*, as *Stanhope*, first in lykelyhood taken from a place where there were heaps or quarreys of *stone*.

In *lace*, as *Lone-lace* peraduenture anciently *Lone-last*.

In *top*, as *Alfop*, *top* in the ancient Teutonic beeing all one with *top*, as the top of a hill or steeple.

In *way*, as *Greenway*, &c.

There are moreouer diuers of our ancient surnames that are of one fillable, some of them somtymes seruing for the terminations of other surnames. Some few also beeing of two fillables, and not vsed as terminations of other surnames.

OF OUR ANCIENT FAMILIES.

surnames. Of both which I wil heer set down
somaný as I can call to mynd, declaring with-
all, from whence (moste probably) they are
derýued.

As.

39. For hauing his dwelling near such a tree.

B

Bacon. Of the *Beechen-tree*, anciently called *Bucan*. And
whereas swynes-flesh is now called by the name of *Ba-*
con, grew only at the first vnto such as were fatted with
Bacon or *Beech-mast*.

Banck. Of his dwelling at some *banck* or *high ground*.

Barnes. Of a place so called of the *Barnes* there buylded.

Bil. Of the vse of that weapon, in warr or otherwise.

Bond. Of his not beeing free when that name was giuen
him.

Bott. Of the straightnes of his body.

Bowes. Of hauing charge in warre of *Bowes* or *Bowmen*.

Blont. Of the *bright-yellow* colour of his haire.

C

Cole. Of his *blacknes*.

Cope. Of *Marchandise*.

Crump. Of some defect of body as hauing some member
crooked or withered.

D

Dod. Of that thing anciently so called which groweth
in the sydes of waters among flagges, & is of boyes cal-
led a fox-taile.

Dreth or Dretwrie. Of *Sadnes*.

F

Fare. Of passage or dwelling at a *ferrie*.

G

Gomer. Of a certaine kynde of *cake* heertofore accustomed

Of the name of the bird, which we call a
speck.

Shecht. but according to our ancient language rightly pronounced *shecht* or *sheight*.

Stark or **Starkey**. Of his strength of body.

Stone. Of some cause concerning it.

Stow. Of some dwelling place or yroning place.

Styl. Of his house neer vnto a style, anciently *stihel*.

Thorne. Of some great thorne, or of a thorny place whereat hee dwelled.

Twyn. Of being a *Twyn* by birth.

Thweng or **Tweng**. Being as much to say as a *True-ing*, to wit *Geminus*, or a *Twyn* by birth, as *Twyn* before named.

Thwaytes. Of cutting or felling down wood.

Wade. Of his dwelling at a meddow.

Wake. Of wealthfullnes.

Wright. Of his living by labor and traualle.

Wong. Of his fewnes of years.

Sundry others there are of these names of one syllable, which would bee tedious to bee sought out and heer set down, but for a conclusion and also for a generall rule, the reader may please to note, that our surnames of families be they of one or more syllables, that haue in them either a *k* or a *w*, are all of them of the ancient English race, for that neither the *k* or *w* are vsed in the *Latin*, nor in any of the three languages thereon depending; which comymes causeth confusion in the writing of our names originally coming from the *Trubric* in the *Latin*, *Italian*, *French* or *Spanish* languages; whereof one example I wil here allege. Some get larger of our nation, calling

A generall rule for the knowing of English families.

Sir Iohn
Haukwood,
ignorantly
named Iohn
Sharp.

into *Italie*, and passing through *Florence*, there in the great Church beholding the monument and epitaph of the renowned English knight and most famous warrior of his tyme, there named *Ioannes Acutus*, haue wondred what *Iohn Sharp* this might bee, seeing in *England*, they neuer heard of any such; his name rightly written beeing in deed *Sir Iohn Haukwood*, but by omitting the h in Latin as friuolous, and the *k* and *w* as vnusuall, hee is heer from *Haukwood* turned vnto *Acutus*, and from *Acutus* returned in English againe, vnto *Sharp*.

Thus then (as is said) neither the *k* nor the *w* beeing in the Latin or in the French, they could not bee with the Normannes in vse, whose language then was French, as also all their own surnames.

And yf any should heer object against mee that in the list of surnames of such gentlemen as came in with the Norman Cōqueror, some are found to haue the *w*, and some the *k*, they may please to see my answer therevnto, where I speak of the surnames of such as came in with the said Conqueror.

OF SVCH SURNAMES AS WEE
may suppose to take their original from
the Danes.

IT remayneth as it were by tradition among some of our countrie people, that those whose surnames end in sonne, as *Iohnson*, *Tomson*, *Nicolson*, *Dauison*, *Saunderson*, and the lyke, are descended of Danish race. But this cannot so bee, for the Danes not hauing among them any such names, as *Iohn*, *Thomas*, *Nicholas*, *Dauid*, *Alexander*, or the lyke, as now with

vs end in sonne, such surnames could not frō them be deryued. It may wel be that they had such custome among them as the vulgar people of *Holland* yet vse, which is, to make the surname of the chyld, of the proper name of the father by adding sonne vnto it, but had such surnames of the Danes remayned amōg vs, they would haue bin more markable, because wee should then haue hard of *Canutson, Ericson, Gormoson, Hadingson, Haraldson, Rolfoson* and such lyke, according as their Danish names then were, but wee remember not any such among vs. And in deed as in the sixt chapter I haue alredy shewed, they had so litle tyme of quiet settling themselues in *England*, that they could leaue but few of their posteritie there.

And of all our names ending in sonne I cannot allow any to come from the Danes vnlesse they bee such as haue the termination sonne/ composed with some such name as hath among vs bin long tyme out of vse, as *Swanson/* rightly *Swenson/* and such lyke. Our surname of *knot/* beeing so made by abreuiation, some say should more rightly be *kant*. Lykwise *holme/* which accordeth in signification to our *ham/* and is both a surname and the termination vnto some of our surnames carrieth some apparence to bee Danish: and so appeereth more apparently the surname of *Dane/* which yet also remaineth among vs.

OF THE SVRNAMES COMING from the Normannes.

THe list or catalogue of the surnames of the gentlemen that came in with the Conqueror out of *Normandie*, is set foorth in diuers of our chronicles

in the which the surnames of diuers families of Norman race yet remaining in *England*, are to bee seen.

Wee haue moreouer some surnames of good families remayning in *England* at this day, which beeing French, are notwithstanding not found to bee in any list of such as came in with the Conqueror: and therefore may well bee thought to bee remayned of such gentlemen and others, as came into *England* out of *Henalt*, with Queen *Isabel* wyf vnto king *Edward the second*, which were almost the number of three thousand, whereof it is lyke diuers did there settle themselves. But the surnames of these beeing also French, they are to bee decerned euen as the surnames of those that came in with the Conqueror, the most vsual terminations of both these sortes of surnames beeing these heer following.

Some end in *age*.

As do *Henage*, *Sauage*, and the lyke.

Some in *ard*.

As *Giffard*, *Pynchard*, and the lyke.

Some in *champ*.

As *Longchamp*, *Barchamp*, and such lyke.

Some in *court*.

As *Dabridgecourt*, *Hare-court*, &c.

Some in *cy*.

As *Lacy*, *Darcy*, &c.

Some in *el*.

As *Arundell*, *Tirel*, &c.

Some in *ers*.

As *Coniers*, *Danuers*, &c.

Some

Some in *ux*.

As *Deureux, Mollineux, &c.*

Some in *er*.

As *Barret, Mallet, &c.*

Some in *lay*.

As *Cholmelay, Percelay, &c.*

Some in *nay*.

As *Courtenay, Fountenay, &c.*

Some in *or*.

As *Talbot, Pigot, &c.*

Some in *vile*.

As *Neuile, Turbeuile, &c.*

The rest are easely decerned of such as are curious to heed them, especially hauing some knowlege in the French tounge. But whereas some of our Norman names are found to end in *ley*, which seemeth to bee an English termination, this hath doubtlesse proceeded of wrong wryting, and should rather bee *lay*, and so may bee said of *ney* written for *nay*, of *foord* for *fort*, and the lyke, which error they easely haue falne into that vnderstood not the right difference between the English terminations of names, & those of the Normannes.

And now as for the surnames in our Norman Catalogue which haue in them the letters of *k* and *w*, whereof I spake before, and which the French do neuer vse: these are not to bee thought to haue bin Normannes, but of those gentlemen of *Flanders*, which *Baldwin* the Earle of that countrie and father-in-law vnto the Cōqueror did send to ayd him. Besydes these, sundry other surnames do appeer

to haue bin of the *Netherlands*, & not of *Normandie*, albeit they are without distinctiō set in the list among the Normannes. And I am of opinion that all the gentlemen whose surnames begin with *fix*, were also such, for that such surnames are altogether vnusuall and vnknown both in *Normandie*, and all *France* beyde, & so haue bin in former tymes; for in no French chronicles are such names hard of. But in the *Netherlands* it is often found that very many surnames end in *sonne*, as *Iohnson*, *williamson*, *philipson*, and the lyke, and such officers among the Normannes as registred the names of those that were in that seruice, could not make other of such surnames, wryting them in French, then *fix Iohn*, *fix william*, *fix philip*, and the lyke, which yf their ortographie had bin good, should haue bin *filz* and not *fix*, for *filz* in French is *sonne*, and not *fix*. If any such were of the Normans in deed, because *Taileur* in his chronicle of *Normandie* nameth one *Guillam fix-Osberne*, it followeth not that *fix-Osberne*, was therefore his surname (the Normans as I said before not hauing any such) but it should rather seeme that one *Osberne* beeing appointed to go in the voyage, sent his sonne in his steed, and so *william* was registred by the name of the sonne of *Osberne*, because *Osberne* the father himself went not. And heer I think sufficient to bee said of this matter: and whereas I said before in speaking of such as may yet remain in *England* of the race of the Danes, that they are not such as according to the vulgar opinion haue their surnames ending in *sonne*, I wil heer before I end this chapter endeuour to giue the curious reader satisfaction, how and by what occasion

casions, it then cometh, that some men do happen to haue such surnames, but first I wil shew their derivations.

Of the proper name of *Alexander*, cometh the surnames of *Saunders*, and *Saunderson*.

Of *Andrew*, cometh *Andrewes*, and *Anderson*.

Of *Barthelmew*, cometh *Bar*, *Bats*, and *Barson*.

Of *Christopher*, cometh *Kir*, *Kirs*, and *Kirson*.

Of *Dauid*, cometh *Davis*, *Dauison*, *Daves*, & *Dawso*.

Of *Edmund*, cometh *Edmunds*, and *Edmunson*.

Of *Gilbert*, cometh *Gibson*, and *Gibbons*.

Of *Henry*, cometh *Haris*, *Harison*, and as it seemeth *Harkins*.

Of *Iohn*, cometh *Iohnson*, *Iackson*, and *Ienkinson*.

Of *Lawrence*, cometh *Larkin*, and *Lawson*.

Of *Nicholas*, cometh *Nicols*, *Nicolson*, and *Nicson*.

Of *Peeter*, cometh *Piers*, *Pierston*, *Peterston*, *Perkins*, and *Perkinson*.

Of *Richard*, cometh *Richardson*, *Dicks*, *Dickson*, *Dickins*, and *Dickinson*.

Of *Robert*, cometh *Roberts*, *Robins*, *Robinson*, *Hobkins*, otherwise written *Hopkins*, and *Hobson*.

Of *Roger*, cometh *Hodges*, *Hodgeson*, *Hodgekins*, & *Hodgekinson*.

Of *Simon*, cometh *Simmes*, *Simpson*, *Simkins*, and *Simcocks*.

Of *Thomas*, cometh *Tomson*, *Tomkins*, & *Tomkinson*.

Of *William*, cometh *Williams*, *Williamson*, *Wilson*, *Wilkes*, *Wilkins*, *Wilkinson*, *Wilcocks*, & *Bilson*.

Of *Walter*, cometh *Wats*, *Watson*, *Watkins*, and *Watkinson*, & lyke it is that heerof also cometh *Atkins*, and *Atkinson*.

The moſte
ancient mā-
ner of ſur-
names.

To ſhew now how theſe beeing originally proper names, do happen to become ſurnames. The reader may pleaſe to note, that albeit it was the moſte ancient cuſtome of the world to call men after the proper names of their parents, and that long before they took their ſurnames from places, as wee may perceauē in the Bible it ſelf, where wee fynd *Saul*, the ſonne of *Cis*, *Dauid* the ſonne of *Ieſſe*, which is in effect, *Ciſſonne* and *Ieſſeſonne*, as is the lyke in the ſurnames of the prophets. Yet this cuſtome beeing in the moſte countries of theſe partes of the world long ſince left, where men moſte comonly haue taken for their ſurnames the names of places (in tyme paſt) poſſeſſed by the beginners of their families, and ſometimes alſo the names of the offices of honor and credit which in the comon welth they haue borne. Wee are to vnderſtand that the anceters of all ſuch, now a dayes in our couētrie, whoſe names do end in ſonne, or whoſe ſurnames come from proper names, haue had other ſurnames, and by ſome occaſion or other haue loſt them.

The greateſt & moſte generall cauſe of this loſſe & change, cometh as farr as I can conceaue thereof, by this meanes. Wee are wont ordinarilie to call yongmen rather by their own proper names then by their ſurnames, and ſuch chanceing to marrie, and perhaps from the place where they were borne, and within few yeares after to dy; their children where their fathers haue bin vſually called by their proper names, are ſtraightwayes accordingly ſurnamed, and beeing yong, and letting it ſo run on a while, their fathers ſurnames (perhaps to themſelues vtterly vn-
known)

known) are hardly euer after by them or their posteritie borne, yet hapneth it that some beeing more heedfull then others, do somtymes come to knowledge of their ancient surnames, & by ioyning an alias vnto the later, do of them by such meanes retaine memorie.

It hath also somtymes hapned, that diuers youthes coming out of the countrie to serue in the citie of *London*, haue not bin able to tell their own surnames, but beeing demaunded how they had heard their fathers called, could only tell that they had heard them called *Iohn*, or *Thomas*, or *William*, or the lyke, as their proper names might bee, or otherwise after our vulgar vse of clipping, *Iac*, *Tom*, or *wil*, wherevpō they came easely to bee surnamed, *Iohnson* or *Iackson*, or otherwise according as they said their fathers were called.

Some surnames coming of proper names do end as it were plurally in *s*, as *Williams*, *Edwards*, *Reynolds*, and such lyke, but this moste comonly proceedeth through abreuiation: the later letters to make it sonne beeing omitted, the *s* only is left in steed of them; as in *williams* for *williamsonne*, and so the others.

Some in lyke sorte grown from proper names do end in *kin* or *kins*, as *Perkin*, *Tomkin*, *wilkin*, &c. *kin* is anciently in our language our diminutive, signifying as much as *litle*, whereby *Perkin*, is asmuch to say as *litle-Peeter*, *Tomkin*, *litle-Thomas*, *wilkin*, *litle-william*, and so is to bee vnderstood of the lyke.

Touching such as haue their surnames of occupations, as *Smith*, *Taylor*, *Turner*, & such others, it is

not to bee doubted but their anceters haue first gotten them by vsing such trades, and the children of such parents beeing contented to take them vpon them, their after-coming posteritie could hardly auoyd them, and so in tyme cometh it rightly to bee said:

From whence came Smith, all be he knight or squire.

But from the Smith, that forgeth at the fyre.

And so in effect may bee said of the rest, neither can it bee disgracefull to any that now liue in very woorthfull estate & reputation, that their anceters in former ages, haue bin by their honest trades of lyf good and necessarie members in the comon welth, seeing all gentrie hath first taken issue from the commonalltie.

It hath of late yeares grown somewhat vsuall in *England*, to giue vnto children for their proper names, the surnames of their Godfathers; a custome neither comendable, nor any whit wel fitting; and sometymes very absurd and ridiculous, as if perhaps the chylde bee christned by the name of *Tailer*, and the own surname of the chylde bee *Smith*, then is the chylde very wisely named *Tailer Smith*, and coming afterward to bee of some trade as a *Draper* or *Grocer*, or the lyke, it may also bee added to the other occupations, as by calling him *Tailer Smith Draper*, &c. I could giue of the lyke vnto this some present examples, but I will omit them, as not willing to offend by noting any person in particular.

Some haue their surnames according to the colour of their haire or complexion: as *Whye*, *Bleak*,

Black,

Black, Brown, Grey, and Redish, and those in whose these names for such causes began, did their by lose their former denominations.

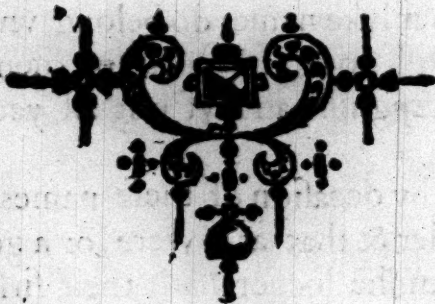
Some for their surnames haue the names of beasts: and as it should seem for one thing or other, wherein they represented some propertie of theirs, as *Lion, Wolf, Bull, Buck, Hart, Hynd, Ro, Fox, Hote, Lamb*, and the lyke. Others of Birdes, as *Cock, Peacock, Swan, Crane, Hearn, Partridge, Dove, Woodcock, Drake, Sparrow*, and such lyke. Others of fish, as *Salmon, Herring, Ling, Roche, Pilcher*, and the lyke. And albeit that the anceters of the bearers of these had in former tymes other surnames, yet because almost all these and other lyke names do belong vnto our own ancient English tongue, I do thinke them to bee of the ancient English, and yf not all yet the moste parte.

And heer by occasion of these names I must note vnto the reader & that as were for a generall rule, that what familie soeuer hath their first and chief cote of armes, corespondent vnto their surname, it is an euident signe, that it had that surname, before it had those armes.

Of the families of the *Camber-Britans*, otherwise called *welshmen*, or of such as beeing issued from *Wales*, do now remain in *England*, I shal not need to speak, considering their surnames are easely known, by beeing comonly according to their own moste ancient custome.

With this people it is not to bee doubted, but that during the space of about fyue hundreth yeares that they were subiect vnto the Romans, diuers of the Ro-

312 OF THE SVRNAMES, OF OVR ANC. FAMIL.
 mans settled and mixed themselves among them;
 whose posteritie hath since remained in accompt as
 beeing of the ancient families of wales, and I do fynd
 very probable reason to enduce mee to think that
 among others, the honorable famillie of the *Cecills*,
 beeing issued from *Wales*; is originally descended
 from the Romans. But not hauing intended to wryte
 of things belonging to the antiquities of the Britans,
 I referr the reader to their own comendable trauailles
 in that kynd.



OF

O
 other
 what
 both
 differ
 W
 and fo
 haue
 Cyn b
 ing as
 to exp
 etha
 ing is
 one th
 borne
 as one
 of the

OF OUR ANCIENT
ENGLISH TYTTLES OF
HONOR DIGNITIES, AND

offices, and what they signify.

Also the signification of our English names
of disgrace or contempt.

The tenth Chapter.

Of the name of *king*.

THIS chief name of moſte highe and ſoueraigne dignitie among our an-
ters, was generally in the ancient Teu-
tonic of two ſyllables, and by ſome
change of vowels (as both in this and
other our ancient appellations is often found) ſom-
what varying in ortography, as anciently written
both *Cuning* and *Cyning*/ the firſt letter *C*/ beeing in-
differently ſounded and uſed in ſteed of *K*.

Wee Engliſhmen haue abridged it into one ſyllable
and ſo made it *king*/ and the Danes and Swedians
haue made it *kong*. *Cun* though otherwiſe written
Cyn beeing both one, doth ſignify ſtout or valiant:
ing as alſo ſomtymes *ting*/ is a particle often added
to expreſſe the endumēt of a qualitie, as for example,
Ethe/ is in our ancient language *Noble*, and an *Ethe*-
ing is one that is endueth with nobillitie. A *yongting*
one that is in his youth. A *fremdting* one that is fremd
borne, a ſtranger, &c. *Cuning* is aſmuch in ſignification
as one eſpecially *valliant*, and this beeing the title
of the chief of all, expreſſeth him the moſte appa-

R r

rent

Olaus Mag-
nus libro 8.

rent in cowrage or valour. And certaine it is that the kings of moſte nations were in the begining elected and choſen by the people to raigne ouer them, in regard of the greatneſſe of their cowrage valour and ſtrength, as beeing therefore beſt able to defend and gouerne them. And as *Olaus Magnus* writeth, it was an ancient cuſtome in the ſeptentrionall regions, that ſuch yong noblemen or gentlemen as gaue greateſt proof of their ſingular valour, were by thoſe countrie kings adopted to bee their ſonnes; yea and to ſucceed in the crown after them, yf their own ſonnes were not thought to haue in them ſuch great valour as in thoſe tymes was expected: and the reaſon why they adopted ſuch ſonnes as aforeſaid, and thereby made them capable of ſucceeding them in their kingdomes was, for that (as they ſaid) they might in their own ſonnes bee deceaued when they ſaw not how they would proue, but in their adopted ſonnes they could not bee deceaued, becauſe they had ſeen of them ſufficient experience and triall alreedy.

Queen.

As *Cuning* (as is aforeſaid) was the maſculine name of chief dignitie, ſo was *Cuningina* in the ancient Teutonic the feminine, howbeit our name of *Queen* is alſo very ancient, and was vſed of our Saxon anceters though ſomewhat differing in ortography for they wrote it *Cwen*: and as *king* is an abreuiaſion of *Cuning* or *Cyning* ſo is *Cwen* now written *Queen*, an abreuiaſion of *Cuningtane* or *Cuningtina*. *Quinde* in the Daniſh tounge is a woman or a wyf, and ſo was anciently *Quena*.

Surist.

For *Princeps* in Latin, whereof the French and wee

wee f
Princ
name
ceps, b
Princ
or Du
ſay ch
ently

T
cond
long
Duke
Here
army
draw
toogh
toga.
T
of
wry

F
in ſte
ble o
com
to be
to ſa
T
Earl
chie
in D
wee

wee from them, haue taken our moderne name of *Prince*, our anceters vsed in their own language the name of *Furist*/ which answereth in value vnto *Prin-*
ceps, beeing as much to say, as a *first* or *chief*. The Princes electors of the Empyre are in the Teutonic or Duytsh tounge called *keur-vursten*/ *keur* beeing to say choise, and *vursten* in steed of *fursten*/ or as anciently it was, *Furistan*.

Hertoga.

This was our ancient appellation for the chief conductor or leader of an *army*, for the which wee long since haue vsed our borrowed French name of *Duke*, which the French fetched from *Dux* in Latin. *Here* is in the ancient Teutonic as much to say as an *army* (as els where I haue shewed) *toga* signifieth to draw or traine forward. Our yet vsed English woord *toogh*/ may seeme to haue had some deriuation from *toga*.

The Netherlanders for *Duke* do yet vse the name of *Hertogh*/ and the Germans or ouerlanders do now wryte it *Hertzog*.

Earle.

Before wee borrowed the woord *honor*, wee vsed in steed thereof our own ancient woord *ear*. For noble or gentle, wee vsed *Ethel*. *Ethel* was somtymes in composition abridged to *el* so as of *Car-ethel*/ it came to bee *Car-el*/ and by abreuiation to *Earl*/ it is asmuch to say as *Honor-noble*, or *noble of honor*.

The Danes wrote it *Coyle*/ and wee wryte it *Earle*/ and now vse it in the self sence that *Comes* is chiefly vsed in Latin, *Count* in French, and *Graue* now in Duytsh.

I fynd that our antetters vsed for **Lord**/ the name of **Lasford**/ which (as it should seem) for some aspiration in the pronouncing, they wrote **blasford**/ and **blasford**. Afterward it grew to bee written **Louerd**/ and by receauing lyke abridgement as other our ancient appellations haue donne, it is in one sillable become **Lord**.

To deliuer heerof the true etymologie, the reader shall vnderstand, that albeit wee haue our name of **bread** from **breed**/ as our anceters were wont to call it, yet vsed they also and that moſte comonly to call **bread** by the name of **blas**/ from whence wee now only retaine the name of the forme or faſſiō, wherein **bread** is vsually made, calling it a **loaf**/ whereas **loaf** coming of **blas** or **laf**/ is rightly also **bread** it ſelf, and was not of our anceters taken for the forme only, as now wee vſe it.

Now was it vsuall in long foregoing ages, that ſuch as were endued with great welth and meanes aboue others, were chiefly renowned (eſpetially in theſe northern regions) for their hows-keeping, and good hoſpitallitie, that is, for beeing able and vſing to feed and ſuſtaine many men, and therefore were they particularly honored with the name and tytyle of **blasford**/ which is aſmuch to ſay, as, *An aſorder of laſ*, that is, *A bread-giuer*, intending (as it ſeemeth) by **bread**/ the ſuſtenance of man; that beeing the ſubſtance of our food, the moſte agreeable to nature, and that which in our dayly prayers wee eſpetially deſyre at the handes of God.

And yf wee duely obſerue it, wee ſhal fynd that
our

our nobillitie of *England*, which generally do beare the name of *Lord* haue alwayes, and as it were of a successiue custome (rightly according vnto that honorable name) maintained and fed more people, to wit, of their seruants, retayners, dependants, tenants, as also the poor, then the nobillitie of any countrie in the continent, which surely is a thing very honorable, and lawdable; and moſte wel befitting noblemen, and right noble mynds.

Lady.

The name or tytle of *Lady*, our honorable appellation generally for all principall women, extendeth ſo farr, as that it not only mounteth vp from the wyf of the knight to the wyf of the king, but remaineth to ſome women whoſe husbands are no knights; ſuch as hauing bin Lord Mayers are afterward only called maſters, as namely the Ealdermen of *York*.

It was anciently written *bleafdtan* or *leafdtan*/ from whence it came to bee *laſdy* and laſtly *Lady*. I haue ſhewed heer laſt before how *hlaſ* or *laſ*/ was ſomtyme our name of *bread*/ as alſo the reaſon why our noble and principall men came to bee honored in the name of *laſord*/ which now is *lord*/ and euen the lyke in correſpondence of reaſon muſt appeer in this name of *leafdtan*/ the feminine of *laſord*: the firſt ſyllable whereof beeing anciently written *hleaſ* and not *hlaſ*/ muſt not therefore alienate it from the lyke nature and ſence, for that only ſeemeth to haue bin the feminine ſound, and wee ſee that of *leafdtan*/ wee haue not retayned *Lead*y but *Lady*. Wel then both *hlaſ* and *hleaſ*/ wee muſt heer vnderſtand to ſignify one thing, which is *bread*/ *dian* is aſmuch to ſay as *ſerue*, and ſo

is *Leasfoten*/ *A bread-seruer*. Whereby it appeereth that as the *Lasord*/ did allow food and sustenance, so the *Leasfoten* did see it serued and disposed to the guests. And our ancient & yet continewed custome, that our *Ladyes & Gentlewomen* do vse to carue and serue their guests at the table, which in other countries is altogether strange and vnusuall, doth for proof heerof wel accord, and correspond with this our ancient and honorable femynine appellation.

Knight.

This tytle of Right woorshipfull dignitie was heertofore of our anceters written *Knicht*/ and both in the high and low *Germanie* by the name of *knicht* (which a litle they varry in the ortograghy) is vnderstood a seruant, and I fynd that *leorning-knicht* was in our ancient language, a disciple, & in the *Netherlands* a *lear-knecht*/ is thesame that an apprentice is in French; that is to say, a learner.

A *knicht*/ as wee vnderstand it, is in the moderne Teutonic or Duytsh tounge, *Ryder*/ which is in deed all one in English with *Ryder*/ and answereth vnto the French woord *Cheuallier*, which may bee Englished a *hoyzman*/ & so agreeith with *Eques* in Latin.

By all which it may seem strange how our name of *knicht*/ beeing with vs in such esteem of woorship, should in the etymologie thereof, appeer no more then it doth. To resoluue which difficultie I can iudge no other, hauing no proof or pregnant reason otherwise to enduce mee, but that the name of *knicht*/ must haue begun to bee a name of honor among our anceters in such as were admitted for their mirits to bee *knights* to the king, that is, to bee his own seruants or

in son
with
yf not
may b
knicht
the pl
kept,
frery a
Londo
sert to

And
called
to hau
uant, f
ner/ a
is calle
name
then o

Mo
now
which
gard o
knicht
as the

As
place,
nesse o
Ste-w
which
that is,
Lieuten
wee ca

in some sorte his officers or retayners, and to ryde with him, & therefore it should seem some of them, yf not all, were anciently called ~~knicht-ryders~~, and it may bee that of them the street in *London*, called ~~knicht-ryder-street~~, did first take that name, as beeing the place where their residence or meeting might bee kept, or peradventure some lyke ~~knichtengild~~, or confrery as king *Edgar* established without *Ealdgate* of *London*, for thirteen ~~knichtes~~ or soldiers of good desert to him and the realme.

And albeit a seruant in *Germanie*, is (as is aforesaid) called a ~~knicht~~ or ~~kneght~~, yet seemeth it not anciently to haue bin the most comon and vsuall name for a seruant, for that such had, and yet haue, the name of ~~diener~~, as also other names. A soldier in *Germanie* is called a ~~lands-knegt~~, which is an argument that the name of ~~knicht~~ was wont there to bee of more esteem, then ordinarie for enery seruant.

Moreouer wee fynd that the name of ~~knicht~~ is not now of vs only vsed to stand for *Eques auratus*, which is ordinarily a ~~knicht~~, but is also borne in regard of bearing authoritie or office, as wee see in our ~~knichtes of the shyres~~, who yet are not properly ~~knichtes~~, as the name of ~~knicht~~ is otherwise vnderstood.

~~Steward~~, anciently ~~Stede-ward~~.

As in our ancient language ~~stow~~, is our woord for place, so is also ~~stede~~, and ~~Stede-ward~~ which for easynesse of sound the first ~~d~~, beeing omitted is become ~~Ste-ward~~, is asmuch to say as *The keeper of the place*, which in the moderne Teutonic is called ~~Stat-hower~~, that is, ~~Stede-holder~~ or place keeper: the same that *Lieutenant* is in French, which corruptly in English wee call *lifenant*. It

It is also the very same that *Prorex* is in Latin, to wit, a vice-roy, that is, hee that in the Kings absence supplyeth his place and beareth his person, as in England the Lord high *Steward* is wont to do: & more inferiorly it is a deputy or officer vnder some noble mā, &c. Kings & Princes are properly the *Stewards* of almighty God in their kingdomes, in which sence, the renowned surname of the Kings moste excellent maiestie, doth right wel besit his royall place & high dignitie.

Holdward.

This ancient and honorable name of office, hath receaved the iniury of tyme, which hath worne it out of vse and memorie.

The *i* and *o*, beeing for easynesse of sound omitted in the pronounciation (as in sundry other woords the lyke is seen) it became of *Holdward*, which signifieth, the governour or keeper of a castle fort or hold of warre, to bee *Howard*.

Which name of office albeit wee haue long since lost, yet retayneth our realme to the high honor and illustrious ornament thereof, the great & right noble familie vnto whome it is now the surname, and it is lyke that at first it so became to bee, vpon the bearing of such a warlyke honorable office and charge.

Heralt.

About this name of *Heralt* diuers haue diuersly bin conceyted, some would haue it *Herhaut*, some *Herhaught*, some *Herault*, and some *Herold*, and I wote not what.

Some decerning it to come from the Duytsh, can tel that *Here*, is now therein asmuch as *Lord*, and that

alt is old, and therevpon they ridiculously must conclude that *herald* signifieth *Old*-*lord*.

True it is, that *herald* is meerly a Teutonic or Duytsh woord, and in that tounge and no other, the true etymologie thereof is only to bee found.

To begin then with the first sillable thereof which is *here*, though in composition abridged to *her*, it is the true and ancient Teutonic woord for an *armie*, thesame as before I haue shewed, that *exercitus* is in Latin and in that sence is it yet vsed in *Germanie*. And whereas the Germans do now vse *here* also for *lord*, yet anciently they so vsed it not, and although the Teutonic bee not mixed with other strange languages, yet this woord *here*, as they vse it for *lord* or *master*, hath crept into their language from *Herus* in Latin, after that the Latin tounge became known vnto them, and perhaps some half a dozen woords more may haue donne the lyke.

A *healt* in the ancient Teutonic is A most *courageous person*. A *champion* or especial challenger to a fight or combat. Of the weapon that such somtyme most vsed, called a *healtbard* because it was borne by a *healt*, wee yet though corruptly retaine the name of *holbard*, and the Netherlanders make it *hellebard*.

Here-*healt* by abrenuiation *herald* as also *Herald*, doth rightly signify *The champion of the armie*. And growing to bee a name of office, *hee that in the armie hath the especiall charge to challenge vnto battaile or combat*: in which sence our name of *herald*, doth neereft approche vnto *Fecialis* in Latin.

Seauen Danish kings besydes some of *Norway* and *Sweden*, haue had for their proper appellation

In some pages of the 6. chapter, *Harald* is wrong printed *Harold*.

the name of *Harald* or *Harald* which is all one with *Heratt*. So honorable was it accompted of in old tyme that so many kings thereby were called, in regard as it appeereth, that themselves might bee honored and respected as the moste cowragious of the armie.

Here-ward.

In composition *Herward* was heer-tofore the name of office of him that in some sorte had some especial charge in the armie, I take it to haue bin such an office in effect, as is that which is now vsed, of Sergeant Major. It is no more a name of office, but therehence grown to bee a surname.

Heriot.

This at the first was of our anceters written *Herregeat*. A certaine payment was wont to bee made among the soldiers lyke vnto that which now is called succors, afterward it became the name of the office of prouyding furniture for the armie, and from a name of office it grew (though with some varietie frō the first ortographie) vnto the surname of *Heriot*.

Scyld-knape since after the French, named *Esquire*.

Of *Scyld* wee yet retain our name of *shield* in place whereof wee somtymes vse our borrowed French woord *scutchion*, *Cnape* is also in the Teutonic written *Cnabe* or *knabe*, as also *knape*, the c and k, as I haue often said beeing indifferently vsed; but the b, turned into a single u, as diuers tymes it is, hath caused that of *knabe* it is turned to *knaue*, and so according to our now ortographie it were *Shield-knaue*. The reader is to note that *knabe* from whence is deryued (as I haue shewed) our now vsed name of *knaue*, was

neuer

neuer
conter
as *val*
that in
of his
name
which
thesam
Esqui
hath f
gentle

Hee
Ioanne
who f
liued,
great,
beeing
ment o
a most
partly
in *Fra*
the *Er*
hundre
a very
God to
temper
It i
East-I
greater
certain
reporte
Spaine

neuer of our anceters vsed as a name of disgrace or contempt, but as the name of some kynd of seruant, as *valet* in French, or the lyke. *Septid-kanapa* was hee that in warre did bear the wapen or shield of armes, of his chief or superior: of which office the Latin name is *Armiger*; & our now vsed name of *Esquyre*, which wee borrow from the French, is not rightly thesame, neither is *Armiger* taken by the French for *Esquire*: an *Esquire* beeing among them one that hath some charge in the stable, or that teacheth yong gentlemen, or the pages of noblemen, to ryde.

Heer by the way I muste note vnto the reader that *Ioannes de temporibus*, that is to say, *John of the tymes*/ *Iohn of the* who so was called for the sundry tymes or ages hee *tymes*. liued, was *knowne* vnto the Emperor *Charles the great*, of whome hee also was made knight. This man beeing of great temperance, sobrietie, and contentment of mynd in his condition of lyf, but aboue all of a moste excellling constitution of nature, resyding partly in *Germanie* where hee was borne, and partly in *France*, liued vnto the nynth year of the raigne of the Emperor *Conrade*, and died at the age of three hundreth three score and one yeares, seeming thereby a very miracle of nature, and one in whome it pleased God to represent vnto later ages the long yeares and temperate lyues of the ancient patriarches.

It is said that their hath a man lately liued in the *East-Indies* (of some thought to bee yet lyuing) of greater age then this aforenamed *Iohn of tymes*, the certainty heerof I cannot affirme. But it is credibly reported that a woman lately liued at *Segouia* in *Spain* of an hundreth and threescore yeares of age:

A woman of
the age of
160. yeares.

Albuna
Marc.

324

OF OUR TITLES,

and *Franciscus Aluares* saith, that hee saw *Albuna Marc* chief bishop of *Ethiopia*, beeing of the age of an hundreth and fifty yeares.

Marscale now *Marshall*.

In the ancient Teutonic *mare* had somtyme the signification that *horse* generally now hath, and so serued for the appellation of that whole kynd, to wit, both male, female, and gelding, and so all went in generall by the name of *mare*, as now by the name of *horse*. *Scale* in our ancient language signifieth a kynd of seruant, as the name of *Scalco* (though a Teutonic denomination) in *Italie* yet doth.

Marscale, from which our now name of *Marshall* cometh, was with our anceters as also with the other Germans *Curator equorum*, that is, hee that had the charge of horses. The French who (as wee in *England*) very honorably esteeme of this name of office, do giue vnto some noblemen that beare it, the tytle of *Grād mareschal de France*. And yet notwithstanding they do no otherwise terme the Smith that cureth and shuweth horses, then by the name of *Mareschal*. Whereby wee may perceate how names grown to high dignitie, haue somtymes taken their originall from inferior vocations.

Mayer.

This honorable name of office in the chief and most famous citie of our realme, is diuers wayes written, some wryte it *Maier* some *Mayor*, and some *Maire*. And because *Maier* in Latin signifieth greater or bigger, some not looking any further wil needs from thence make it *Maier*, but seeing the names of *Shirif* & *Alderman*, cannot bee drawn from the La-

tin why should it bee thought that *Mayer* cometh from *maior*? Certaine it is, that as the other names of offices are not deryued from the Latin no more is this, but the name originally cometh from the Teutonic, as do the afore-noted others. It is in the *Netherlands* well known, where not only the chief magistrat of Louaine (the ancientest great town of *Brabant*) is called the *Meyer*, but almost euery countrie town hath an officer so called. As in lyke manner diuers of our countrie townes in *England*, as well as our cities haue.

So is it lykwise a name of office in the countrie townes of *France*, there now written *Maire*, and coming first to bee known among them by the German Francks, the anceters of French men. For the true etymologie thereof wee are to note, that as in our own English, to *may* signifieth to haue might or power, so a *May-er* is as much to say as *A haue of might, one that hath and may vse authoritie*.

Gerese, by abreuiation become *Gerene* or *Grane*,
as also *Reue*.

This was an ancient name of office of ample signification, but moſte properly it signifieth *A diſpoſer or director*. It was with our anceters an office or charge vnder the Prince or ſome principall perſon. The chief magiſtrates of *London* next vnto the Lord *Mayer*, are called *Shyreffes*, beeing anciēly & rightly *Shyre-reues*. So in lyke ſorte is the chief officer choſe for a ſhyre or county called the *Shyre-reue*, to wit, the reue of the ſhyre. It extendeth alſo to other charges, as to a *wald-gerene*, otherwiſe *waldgraue*, who had the rule or ouerſeeing of the *wald* or *foreſt*. To *wood-reue*,
which

which in effect is the lyke. To ~~hirk-reue~~ now called ~~Church-warden~~. To ~~sheep-reue~~ hee that ouerseeith the shepheards, &c. And as wee had this ancient name of office out of *Germanie*, so with the Germans hath it vntil this present remayned, for as they were wont to haue amōg them the name of ~~Port-graue~~ as wee had, so haue they yet the name of ~~Land-graue~~ / ~~Margraue~~ / ~~Burgraue~~ and such lyke. ~~Land-graue~~ beeing vnderstood for the ~~Land-ruler~~ / ~~Margraue~~ for ~~Markgraue~~ that is, the ruler of a marked or limited iurisdiction. ~~Burgraue~~ for the ruler of the ~~Burg~~ or town.

And this name of ~~Graue~~, first beeing and signifying a name of office, hath in continuance of tyme grown both among the higher and the lower Germans to a name of dignitie, infomuch that for *Comes* in Latin, which is *Earle* in English, they do now vse the name of ~~Graue~~.

~~Burgh-gard~~.

This name of office beeing long since worne out of memorie, seemeth to haue bin borne by such as had the keeping or charge of some kynd of ~~Burg~~, which according to our now pronountiation wee call a ~~Barrow~~.

~~Ealderman~~.

~~Ealder~~, so written in our ancient language, is properly an *Elder* or *Senior*, yet an ~~Ealderman~~, which wee now call an *Alderman* was such in effect among our anceters as was *Tribun⁹ Plebis* with the *Romās*, that is, one that had chief iurisdiction among the comons, as beeing a maintainer of their liberties and benefits.

~~Constable~~.

I do fynd this name of office anciently to haue
bin

bin *Cuningstable*, and I haue shewed before that *Cuning* and *Cyning* beeing both one, our now name of *King* is thereof deryued, and *Cunstable*, might accordingly more rightly bee *Kingstable*.

The etymologie thereof is *Columen Regis*. The support or stay of the King, to wit, one that hee especially depends vpon in the menaging of his moste waighty affaires. And albeit it be now in *England*, a name of office of ordinarie and vulgar vse, yet is it also a name very honorable, and somtymes borne by moste principall noblemen, by the name of *High Cunstable* of the realme:

Wardian now Warden.

I fynd it ordinary that aswel such names of offices as proper names of men anciently and meerly Teutonic, as do begin with dooble v, when they haue hapned to come among the French, Italians, or other, whose language depédeth one the Latin, they haue of the dooble v made a single v, because their alphabet hath no acquaintáce with the w at all, but then to mēd the matter, which they half empayred, they vse before the v to put a g, & so of *warden* or *wardian* do make *Guardian*, and of *ward* *Guard*. So in lyke manner for our English name of *warre*, the French haue made *Guerre*; and hence it riseth that wee call him that waighteth at the towre, one of the *ward* or a *warder*; and hee that in lyke liuerey waighteth at the court one of the *Guard* or *Gard*. *Ward* and *Guard* then is all one and a *wardian* or *warden* or *Guardian*, thesame that *Custos* or *præpositus* is in Latin, to wit, a keeper or attender to the saftie or conseruation of that which hee hath in charge.

Baillie.

A **Baillie** signifieth in our ancient language a *Tutor, protector, or defender*. A **Bailiwick** was so called in respect of the **Baillie** thereof, who had the office and charge, to look vnto the safetie of such as were vnder his ouersight. Wee yet retain heerof our phraze of putting in **bail**, to bee freed or protected (for the tyme) from prison.

Borow.

The etymologie heerof is apparent, and it should seem by the name, that when it was first in vse it was of some more importance then now it is: as that the bearer thereof was rather the head of the **Burg** or **Borow**, then a substitute vnder an other.

Of certaine names of office pertayning to forests or chases, afterward grown to bee the surnames of families, &c.

Foster.

This should rightly bee **forester**, it beeing deryued from the office of him that vnder the Prince or some nobleman had the chief charge of the *Forest* or *chase*. Wee also vse the name of **foster** for **foster-father**, but not rightly, for anciently it is **fodder-father**, or as wee now might wryte it, **foodster-father**, seeing it cometh of prouyding food and nowriture for such children as are vnder his and his wyues charge to bring vp, yet some to auoyd some confusion which they perceaued by this mistaking to grow, do wryte the former of these **foster**, intending thereby **forester**, and the latter **foster** in steed of **foodster**.

Warrenor.

This from the name of office of him that had the charge

charge or oversight of a *warren* is grown to a surname, wherein by abreuiation it is become *warner*.

Walter.

This in effect is as much to say as *forester* / *forest* & *walt* / somtymes also written *wald* / beeing all one, and ioyned in one in our name of *walt-ham-forest*. The *Hircinian forest* in *Germanie* beareth at this day among the Germans the name of *Swartz-walt* / that is, The black forest. For *walt* with the Germans, the Netherlands wryte and pronounce *wout* / and of their *wout* cometh also our name of *wood* / so as *forest* / *walt* or *wald* / as also *wcats* (for so in *Kent* it is called) and *wout* and *wood* / is all one. And *Walter* beeing the name of the officer or commaunder therein, is with vs become a proper name, as also in the *Netherlands*, where after *wout* / they write it *wouter*.

Of the name of *Gentleman*.

Our moderne name of *Gentleman* is not rightly either English or French, but composed and made vp of two distinct languages. For as els where I haue shewed, our ancient woord *Edel* / signifieth noble or gentle, and were it *Edelman* / it were a meer Teutonic woord, and anciently our own: and yf on the other-lyde it were *Gentilhomme* then were it French; but now wee take *gentle* from the French (though a litle altered) and ad vnto it *man* / which wee haue of our own; & so composing them together, make it *Gentleman*. This manner of speech-mixing hath hapned vpon the Norman conquest, & in some other woords now in our language is to bee found very absurd and ridiculous, but for breuitie and as beeing heer impertinent, I wil passe them ouer.

T t

And

And forasmuch as gentrie hath first risen out of yeomandrie, it wil not heer bee impertinent briefly to shew the manner of some mennes rising in the tyme of our Saxon anceters, which was thus.

The meanes
of rising to
gentrie of
some of our
anceters.

If it so hapned, that a **brozte** (otherwise one of the yeomandrie) did thrine so well through his honest trauaile, that hee atayned vnto fyue hydes of his own land, and was able to keep a good hows, allowing some stipend for the maintenance of diuine seruice in either Church or chapel, obtayned some office or imployment about the kings hows, or in some sorte to do him seruice: hee was thencefoorth reputed woorthy of the name and title of **Thegn** or **Theln**, which was then accompted as a free-seruant or as a kynd of retayner, or as it may seem a **Seruing-gentleman**, that is, a seruant not bound or subiect vnto any seruite office or labor.

And yf hee came so well forward in meanes and credit, that the king employed him, either on his errand or to ryde in his traine, and that himself was able to maintaine others vnder him, hee was woorthy to bee reputed a **Barford**. And continewng to augment his credit and meanes, hee might afterward come to bee an **Earle** with the tytle (as they then spake) of an **Earle right-woorthy**, which after our now vsed style may bee, a right honorable Earle. An example of rising from so mean or meaner estate may appeare in **Earle Godwin**, who beeing at the first but the sonne of a cowheard, came to be (as I take it) the greatest subiect that euer **England** had, for hee was Earle of **Kent**, **Sussex**, **Hamshyre**, **Dorsetshyre**, **Devonshyre**, and **Cornwall**, father-in-law vnto king

Edward

Edward
his dau
succee

If a
own m
forwar
ble of
scholle
in scho
not wa

Ge
Cemey
sundry
beeing
vs to b
phie it
one w
Commo
Such
as K; a
Th
now v
otherv

The
manie
the app
not to
still ren
not, as
then th
name c

Edward the Confessor, by the marriage of *Edgitha* his daughter, and father vnto King *Harald* that next succeeded the said king *Edward*.

If a marchant so thrived that hee was able by his own meanes thryce to crosse the seas, hee was thence forward reputed a right woorthie *Chen*, and capable of higher advancement; In lyke manner, yf a scholler so profited in learning that hee took degrees in schooles, and carryed himself vertuously, hee could not want the woorthship due vnto his condition.

Gemen now *pemen*

Gemen is now in the moderne Teutonic written *Gemen*, and it is asmuch to say as *Comon*, and as in sundry other ancient woords: so in this, the letter *g* beeing altered into *p*, it is of *Gemen* become among vs to bee *pemen*, and varying yet further in orthographie it is written *prouen*. And seeing that *Gemen* is all one with *Comen*, A *prouen* man is rightly understood a *Commoner*.

Such were also called *Ccozles*, the *C* beeing sounded as *K*; and somtymes also called *Boozes*.

The name of *Churle*, which comes of *Ccozle*, as now wee vse it, is rather in reprochful sence, then otherwise.

The name of *Bour* or *Booz*, which both in *Germanie* and the *Netherlands* is now generally vsed for the appellation of peysants or countymen, wee seem not to vse, and yet in composition the woord dothe stil remaine in our daylie speech, albeit wee heed it not, as when wee say *neighbour*; it is no other thing then the *Bour*, dwelling nigh vnto vs, for that this name of *neighbour*, began at the first among our an-

Churle
Boor.

ceters when they dwelt in the countrie, before they had buylded townes or cities to inhabite in, and coming afterward to dwel in townes, our name of neighbour hauing bin first vsed in the countrie, came to bee of vse in townes and cities, notwithstanding the people were not then Bourges, but Citizens.

In the Teutonic it is also written *Bower*, and to *bow*, signifieth to buyld, woork, or frame the grownd to ones proper vse and comoditie. And in our vulgar English wee call a manner of a hows bourishly built without, carpentrie, and with vnheuen timber, as most comonly with boughs of trees, *A green bower*.

Groom.

This beeing the name of a seruant that serueth in some inferior place, I fynde to haue bin in tymes past a name for youtnes, who albeit they serued, yet were they inferior vnto men seruants, and were somtymes vsed to bee sent on foot of errands seruing in such manner as lackyes now do.

The name of brydgroom (as els were is noted) was giuen to the new-married man, in regard that on the mariage day hee waighteth at the table, and serueth the bryde, and so is the groom of the bryde for that tyme.

THE

THE ETYMOLOGIES OF OUR
english names of contempt.

Having before shewed the etymologies of our names of dignities offices and qualities, I hold it not vnnecessary, for the further satisfactiō of the curious reader, to shew in lyke manner the true signification of our common names of contempt, such I meane as whereof the true etymologie is worne out of remembrance and scarce ordinarily knowne. Diuers of them beeing properly the names of some vile things, and in contempt and disgrace, full often and with great breach of charitie, iniuriously applied vnto men and women.

Baud.

This name of **Baud**/now giuen in our language to such as are the makers or furtherers of dishonest matches, was not at the first of any il signification, and therefore it is the lesse maruel, that it is the surname of a woorshipfull family in *England*, and of a marquis in *Germanie*, and albeit the Germans leaue the *u*/ and write it with *a*/ yet found they the *a*/ as wee do *au*/ & so to write it as they found it, it is no other then **Baud**/ the true meaning whereof both with them & in our moderne English, is **Bathe**/ and anciently was **Bade**/ where the reader is to note (as els where I haue shewed) that *d* was of our anceters vsed in composition as *th*. It is also written in our old Teutonic **Bad**-*houe*/ from whence wee deriued **Bath**-*stew* or **Bathing**-*stewes*/ where hence wee may perceauē that wee haue taken the names both of **Baud** and of *stewes*/ and wee do also yet vse the woord *stewing*/ when wee dresse

Tt 3

diuers

334 OF OUR NAMES OF CONTEMPT,
diuers things with hot licor or water.

Now did many of these **Baud-stewes**, or as wee since haue turned the name, **hot-houses**, come in lēgh of tyme to bee places of such dishonesty, that they grew into great contempt, the name of **stewes**, becoming thereby to bee vnderstood for a **brothel-hous**, & the **Baud-holder** or **Bath-holder** to bee accompted as the factor for incontinent people, and by vulgar corruption and abreniation of speech (holder beeing omitted) the keeper of such a hows came to bee called the **Baud**.

And whereas before I said that a woorshipfull family in *England* was surnamed **Baud**, which as I haue shewed is all one with **Bathe**. It may bee that it took this name of some office belonging to the **Bathe**, at the tyme of the coronation of some king, when as the knights of the **Bath** are wont to bee made, &c.

Crone.

This properly is the appellation of an old yeow, and applyed in anger vpon an old or elderly woman.

Drabbe.

In the old Teutonic language, the lees filth or dregges remayning in the bottome of vessels, which in Latin beareth the name of *fax*, is called drabbe: and in regard of the lothsomnes or filthynes thereof, it became metaphorically to bee applyde vnto some foule or filthy woman.

Firen.

This is the name of a shee-fox, otherwise & more anciently foxin. It is in reproche applyed to a wo-

man

man whose nature and condition is thereby compared to the shee-fox.

I fynd this anciently written *hyre*; and I fynd *hyre* / to bee also vsed and written for the woord *hyre*; and because that such incontinent women do comonly let their bodyes to hyre, this name was therefore aptly applied vnto them.

It is in the Netherlands written *hoer*; but pronounced *hoor* / as wee yet pronounce it, though in our later English ortography (I know not with what reason) some wryte it *whoze*.

Knave cometh of our ancient woord *knape*; otherwise in the lower moderne Teutonic written *knave*; and in the higher *knabe*; it signifieth a boy, also an inferior seruant, and somtymes a *beadle*, and beeing the vsuall appellation of boyes lackeys or such lyke, of smalle accompt; it is growne thereby to become a name of contempt, & also (through a strayned sence) to signify a dishonest man.

Loser. A *Loser* is one that hath lost neglected, or cast of his own good and welfare, and so is become lewd & carelesse of credit and honesty.

Lourdaine. Because the Danes when they somtyme domineered ouer the Englishmen, would bee honored with the name of *Lasord*; which is now *Lord*; the people in scorne did call them *Lour-danes*; in steed of *Lord*; or rather *Lasord=Dane/Lour* beeing as much to say in our ancient language, as *Ignauus* in Latin, to

336 OF OUR NAMES OF CONTEMPT.
wit, *Lither*, cowardly, or *slugghish*.

Quean.

Wee often heare this reproachefull name of *Quean* / giuen to a woman, and what it is I suppose few do know, but not beeing any way the appellation properly of a woman, it must then bee some other contemptible thing, and so do I fynd it to bee, to wit, *A barren old cow*, and no other thing, and yet is it now growne to bee in our language vnderstood and ment for a dishonest woman of her body, or one that is spytefull of her tounge.

Rascall.

As before I haue shewed how the il names of beasts in their moſte contemptible ſtate, are in contempt applyed vnto women, ſo is *Rascall* / beeing the name for an ilfaoured leane and woorthleſſe deer, comonly applyed vnto ſuch men as are held of no credit or woorth.

Rabod.

This was at the firſt *Rabod* / as yet in the *Netherlands* it is vſed, wherehence both wee and the French hauing taken the name, haue ſomwhat varied it both in ortography and ſence. It was the proper name of *Rabod* / a heathen king of *Frieſland*, who beeing inſtructed in the faith of Chriſt by the Godly Biſhop *Wilfran* / faithfully promiſed to bee baptiſed, and appointed the tyme and place: where beeing come, and ſtanding in the water, hee asked of the Biſhop, where all his forefathers were that in former ages were de- ceaſed? the Biſhop answered, that dying without the knowlege of the true God, &c. they were in hell, then quoth *Rabod* / I hold it better and more praiſe- woorthy

woorthy to go with the greater multitude to hel,
 then with your few Christians to heauen; and there-
 withall hee went out of the water vnchristened; and
 returned both to his wonted idolatry and to his euil
 lyf, notwithstanding the good admonitions, of the
 Bishop, and an euident miracle, which (through the
 power of God) the said Bishop wrought, euen in his
 owne presence. Hee was afterward surprised with
 a suddaine and improuyded death, about the year of
 our Lord 720. and his very name became so odious
 through his wickednes, that it grew to bee a tytle of
 reproche & shame, and hath so continued ener since.

Scold.

The woord **Scold**, cometh of our ancient verb
scoldan, and properly signifieth to blame or accuse,
 in vncomely speech or spyteful termes, &c.

Shrew.

This cometh of **Schrewing**, which signifieth, to
 make clamours, exclamatiōs, or lowd vnquiet noyses.

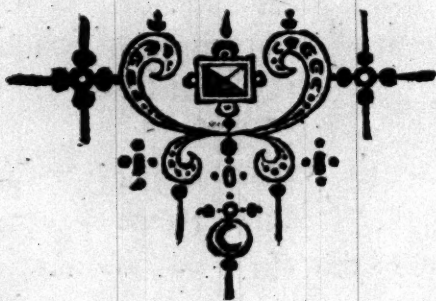
Thief.

It was anciently written **Thieof**, and so appeereth
 to haue bin of two fillables, **thie** was wont to bee ta-
 ken for **thrift**, so as **thie-of**, is hee that taketh of or from
 a man his **thie**, that is his thrift or meanes whereby
 hee thriueth, his goods, or comodities.

There are of later ages grown into our language
 diuers names of honor, authoritie, and office, the
 which, for that they are deryued from other lāguages,
 such as vnto ours are altogether strange and extraua-
 gant, and therefore no way properly belonging to
 our ancient speech, I shal not need to medle with
 their etymologies.

In lyke sorte are their sundrie names of contempt and reproche that of later tymes haue either bin by our selues deuised and brought in vse among vs, or els borrowed from such before-insinuated languages as haue no dependance on ours, and these also beeing from my purpose, that only intended to wryte the significations of such as anciently appertaine vnto our own English tounge, I wil in lyke manner heer omit them.

And now desyring the beneuolent reader courteously to accept of these my paynes and endeuours, and at his discretion to pardon such few faults as in the printing may happen to haue escaped, I heer take my leaue. VALE.





T
O

A^C

Albion

fula

Albuna

Ethi

Alma

feth

All pe

nin

Ange

coy

An A

17

Ancie

12

Ancie

in

Ance

scry

Ance

lig

tin

Ancie

ho

kn

Ancie

Sax

Ancie

THE TABLE

OR INDEX OF SVNDRIE

ESPECIAL POINTES

touched in this book.

A

- A** Ges coupted by winters. fol. 58.
Albion somtyme a Peninfula. fol. 98.
Albuna Marc chief Bishop of *Ethiopia*. 324.
 Almanac, what it signifieth. 58.
 All people had their beginning in *Asia*. 26.
 Angels, why anciently our coyne. 148.
 An Astronomer drowned. 176.
 Ancient armes of *Saxonie*. 120.
 Ancient English & French, in effect all one. 143.
 Anceters of Englishmē descrybed. 55.
 Anceters of Englishmē delighted in warre & hunting. 56.
 Ancient English families, how generally to bee known. 301.
 Ancient gouernment of *Saxonie*. 62.
 Ancient surname of the hows of *Austria*. 294.
 Antiquitie of the English toung. 189.
 Assistants vnto distressed people make themselues the sharers of their countrie. 137.
 Armes of king *Erkenwyne*. 22.
 Artificiall hilles to saue people from drowning. 101.
 Ayders of the Conqueror. 147.

B

- B** Abel towre and the height thereof. 4.
Becanus his paradox. 190.
 Begining of the breach between the Britans & the Saxons. 128.
 Bones of fishes found in the earth. 104.
 Bones of a sea Elephant found in the earth. 106.
S. Boniface an Englishman, an Apostle of *Germanie*. 147.
 Bery bury and burrow whence

THE TABLE.

whence deryued.	212.	Countries first inhabited	
Bishopdome or Bishopryc.		moste towards the sea.	
	215.		39.
Britans massacred by the		Conuerſion of king Ethel-	
Saxons.	130.	bert.	145.
Whence king Brute came.		Conquerors three cauſes of	
	94.	his enterpryſe of England.	
Brunſwyrc, how it had that			171.
name.	31.	Conquerors bones throwen	
Burgundiones.	14.	out of his tombe.	184.
		Conquerors iſſue male, ended	
		in his own ſonnes.	185.

C

C <i>Aligula</i> caried ſhelles of		Cuſtome of Gauel-kynd.	
the ſea coſte of Holland			57.
to Rome. fol.	106.		

Campfight Ordeal.	64.		
<i>Canutus</i> the Dane, the grea-			
teſt king that euer Eng-			
land had,	162.		
Celtræ a name giuen for			
much ryding.	28.		
Change of ſurnames in			
Scotland,	181.		
<i>Chaucer</i> mingled our tounge			
with French.	203.		
Children transported away			
and neuer after heard of.	86.		
Chriſtiā faith brought yn-			
to Ethelbert King of Kent.	144.		
Clif what it ſigniſieth,	99.		
Coldwater Ordeal.	66.		
Confuſion of tounge.	5.		
Contentiō about the name			
of Briain.	89.		

D

D Anes.	fol. 15.
Danes deſtroyed.	163.
Danes and Gothes fortyſy	
Zealand.	101.
Danes inuaſion of England.	
	158.
Denmark why ſo named.	16.
Denmark ſome ſay was firſt	
called <i>Oſgard</i> .	156.
Denmark originally a parte	
of Germanie.	156.
Deryuation of good and	
euil.	193.
Description of our ances-	
ters.	56.
Description of the Idol of	
the <i>ſin</i> .	69.
Description of the Idol of	
the Moon.	70.
Description	

Deſcri
iſco.
Deſcri
den.
Deſcri
dol
Deſcri
Frig
Deſcri
Seas
Deſcri
Flin
Deſcri
menſ
Dido C
uer
Diogen
31.
Diuer
tha
nen
Dukes
ſiuc
169
Duke
from
Donar
in r
Dron
wel
mar
Druc
of

E A
E A

THE TABLE.

Description of the Idol <i>Tu-isco.</i>	17.	<i>Edgar Etheling</i> declared heire to the crown of <i>England.</i>	
Description of the Idol <i>VVeden.</i>	72.	164.	
Description of the great Idol <i>Thor.</i>	74.	<i>K. Egbert</i> first caused our countrie to bee called <i>England.</i>	148.
Description of the Idol <i>Friga.</i>	76.	Englishmē came from <i>Germanie.</i>	25.
Description of the Idol <i>Seater.</i>	78.	Englishmen issued from the Germans.	43.
Description of the Idol <i>Flint.</i>	81.	Englishmen called Saxons by the Welsh and Irish, to this day.	1.
Description of the Idol <i>Ermenseul.</i>	79.	Englishmen contemptibly vsed by the Normannes	182.
<i>Dido</i> Queen of <i>Carthage</i> neuer knew <i>Eneas.</i>	94.	Some Englishmen of mean lyuings kept their lands at the conquest.	179.
<i>Diogenes</i> his place of safetie.	31.	Englishmennes credit beginning to reuyue.	182.
Diuers authors of opinion that our Ile was continent with <i>France.</i>	96.	Englishmē restored to credit and honor.	185.
Dukes of <i>Normandie</i> successiue after <i>Rollo.</i> 168. and 169.		Englishmē not such a mixed nation as some suppose.	187.
Duke of <i>Sauoy</i> descended from <i>Saxon</i> e.	120.	English pagan children brought to bee sold at <i>Rome.</i>	140.
Donations of land written in ryme.	146.	<i>K. Ethelbert</i> his gracious answers were.	145.
Dronkenesse beginning to be well left among the Germans.	53.	<i>Ethelbert</i> the first christned English king.	139.
Druides had no knowlege of letters.	93.	English-Saxon kings become christians.	146.
Eagle of wood made to fly. fol.	52.	<i>England</i> how it came to bee so named.	147.
		<i>England</i>	

THE TABLE.

England what the name signifieth. 125.

English Nobilitie & gentrie planted in Scotland. 181.

English first begun to be spoken in Scotland. 189.

The grownd of our English is the Teutonic tounge. 188.

Epitaph of the Conqueror. 184.

Equipping of horses. 205.

F

Fabulous narrations of king Brute. 90.

Fabulous reportes of *Occa Scarlensis*. 29.

The fable of *Friso, Saxo*, and *Bruno* confuted. 30.

Firre trees found in the earth. 105.

Fortunate Ilands. 37.
no Foxes in the Ile of *vright* 111.

Fowre sortes of Ordeal. 63.

How France & Spaine came to speak broken Latin. 200.

Frenchmē first issued from the Germans. 44.

Frieslanders. 15.

Fruites of the conuersion of our ancient kings. 147.

Fryday why so named. 77.

Fyre Ordeal. 65.

G

G Alliglasses. 23.

Gentlemen in England of Norman race are for the moſte parte extinguished. 187.

Gentlemen in France are called Noble. 173.

Gentrie how attayned vnto by ſome of our ancestors. 330.

Germanie deſcrybed as it was of old tyme. 50.

Germans and Almans all one in ſignification. 12.

Germans the firſt poſſeſſors of their cuntry. 12.

Why the Germans are a moſte noble nation. 42.

Germans neuer ſubdued by any. 43.

Germās the continuall poſſeſſors of *Germanie*. 43.

Germans nor their language mixed. 43.

The Germans woorthyneſſe teſtified by ancient authors. 45.

Germans by the reporte of *Seneca* more cowragious then any nation. 46.

Germans vſed to go ſinging to the warres. 48.

The old Germans of all other pagan people contented

re.
m
49
The
the
fer
Two
wh
Ge
Good
for
ma
S. Greg
ney
con
S. Gre
into
Gothe

H
H
Hebe
Renalt
VVel
Henricu
Hermi
Hilvite
led S
Prince
ther
gers
Brita
Ringiſt
120.
Ringiſt

THE TABLE.

tented themselves one man with one woman.	Kent.	127.
49.	King <i>Hingistus</i> returneth in- to <i>Saxnie</i> for more for- ces.	129.
The old Germans obliged themselves by oth to de- fend their Prince.	King <i>Hingistus</i> raigned yeares.	131.
48.	Horrible Idolatrie of <i>Ha- rald</i> king of <i>Norvvay</i> .	81.
Two plowed furrowes a whole dayes woork in <i>Germanie</i> .	<i>Horsus</i> the brother of <i>Hin- gistus</i> slain.	129.
51.	Hospitallitie nowhere lyke to that of the Germans.	
Good manners, of what force among the Ger- mans.	Hot-water Ordeal.	66.
50.		
<i>S. Gregorie</i> was 3. dayes ior- ney on his way to haue come into <i>England</i> .		141.
141.		
<i>S. Gregorie</i> sent <i>S. Augustine</i> into <i>England</i> .		142.
142.		
<i>Gothes</i> .		15.

H

H Eauen of filuer.	52.	Ingeuones.	14.
H ebrew comerh of <i>Heber</i> .	7.	Inuasion of the Danes and the causes thereof.	158. &c 159.
<i>Henalt</i> and <i>Artois</i> , called <i>VVelsbland</i> .	153.	<i>Ioannes de temporibus</i> , vulgarly <i>Iohn</i> of tymes.	323.
<i>Henricus Auceps</i> .	63.	Sir <i>Iohn Haukywood</i> igno- rantly called <i>Iohn Sharp</i> .	302.
<i>Hermiones</i> .	14.	<i>Islebius</i> refuted.	243.
<i>Hilvites</i> are otherwise cal- led <i>Switsers</i> .	125.	<i>Isteuones</i> .	14.
Prince <i>Hingistus</i> & his bro- ther <i>Horsus</i> the first brin- gers of Englishmen into <i>Britain</i> .	118.	<i>Italie</i> is called of the Ger- mans <i>VVelsbland</i> .	153.
<i>Hingistus</i> , of whence he was.			

K

K ent became king of	K ent priuiledged more X x then	64.
-----------------------------	---	-----

THE TABLE.

then any prouince of
England. 179.
 Kingtvc or kingdome. 215.
 Two kings and their No-
 billitie meet at a bloodie
 banquet. 130.
Kunigund the Empresse her
 triall. 66.

L

L Anguāge of *Englād*, *Sax-*
onie, & the *Netherlands*,
 900. yeare past, was all
 one. 147.
 Our language at the first
 was most of monosilla-
 bles. 189.
 Our languages moſte great
 antiquitie. 189.
 Our language discredited
 by our ſomuch bor-
 rowing woords from
 other touns. 204.
 Our language is moſte co-
 pious yf wee pleaſe to
 make our moſte vſe
 thereof. 206.
 The Lent why ſo named.
 60.
Leyland miſtaken. 14.
Loegria was afterward cal-
 led *England*. 115.
London. 155.
Longobardes. 16.
Ludgate not ſo named after
 king *Lud*. 136.

M

M Arthes of *VVales* not
 rightly ſo named. 157.
 Martyrdome of king *Ed-*
mund. 161.
Mathild the daughter of
 Queen *Margaret* of *Scot-*
land marieth with the
 ſonne of the Conque-
 ror. 181.
 The memorie of ſorrow.
 178.
 Men. named according to
 their weapons. 23.
 Monday why ſo named. 68.
 The 12. moneths. of the
 yeare, how they were of
 our anceters called. 58.
 Moores inuaſion of *Spain*
 for what cauſe. 161.
 Mothers the moſte naturall
 nurſes of their own chil-
 dren. 57.

N

N Ame of *England* what
 it ſignifieth. 124.
 Name of *Sonday* whence it
 cometh. 68.
 Name of *Monday* whence it
 cometh. 68.
 Name of *Tuiſday* whence it
 cometh. 71.
 Name of *VVedenſday* whence
 it

it c
 Name
 it c
 Name
 cor
 Name
 con
 Name
 Name
 rain
 on
 Name
 giu
 No na
 nor
 ſelf
 But r
 wo
 Non
 Nemro
 tov
 Nemro
 min
 4.
 Nemro
 latr
 Neern
 Fran
 Neern
 the
 The N
 tofo
 How
 uin
 109
 Nethe
 Eng

THE TABLE.

it cometh.	73.	Netherland & Eastland speech	
Name of <i>Thursday</i> whence		draweth neerer to the	
it cometh.	75.	old Teutonic then the	
Name of <i>Fryday</i> whence it		high Duytsh.	196.
cometh.	77.	Nobillitie of <i>Spain</i> issued	
Name of <i>Saterday</i> whence it		from the <i>Gothes</i> .	44.
cometh.	79.	Normannes.	16.
Name of Saxons.	17.	Normannes from whence	
Names of all places in <i>Bri-</i>		issued.	165.
tain changed by the Sax-		Normannes issued frō the	
ons.	133.	Germans.	45.
Names of shyres why so		Normannes vsed to robbe	
giuen.	150.	by sea.	165.
No nation doth call one a-		Normannes inuade the Ne-	
nother as each calleth it		therlands and <i>France</i> .	165.
self.	41.	Normannes burnt <i>Paris</i> .	
But two nations in the		166.	
world.	6.	Normannes great crueltie	
<i>Noua Saxonia</i> .	149.	in <i>France</i> .	167.
<i>Nemroth</i> inuentor of the		Normanes somtyme spake	
towre of <i>Babel</i> .	4.	lyke language to the En-	
<i>Nemroth</i> began the first do-		glish.	183.
mination ouer other mē.		Normannes in <i>England</i> very	
4.		few in respect of the En-	
<i>Nemroth</i> first author of <i>Ido-</i>		glish people.	186.
latric.	8.		
Neernes of <i>England</i> to			
<i>France</i> .	97.		
Neernes of our language to			
the Duytsh.	199.		
The <i>Netherlands</i> haue heer-			
tofore bin sea.	100.		
How the <i>Netherlands</i> ha-			
uing bin sea became land			
109.			
<i>Netherlanders</i> planted in			
<i>England</i> .	101.		

O

Old *England*. 21. & 123.
Old *French*. 202.
 One man was not bound
 to one woman in the
 law of nature. 2.
Ordeal by camp-fight. 64.
Ordeal by fyre. 65.
Ordeal by whot-water. 66.
Ordeal by cold-water. 66.
 X x 2 *Ordeals*

THE TABLE.

Ordeals abolished by Pope
Stephen the second. 67.
Original of Nations. 6.

P

P Agans why they esteemed men for Gods. 11.
Peeter Stump put to death for beeing a were-wolf. 237.
People after the flood inhabited first vpon mountaines. 3.
People at *Babel* not mixed by the confusiō of tougs. 8.
People of *Germanie* diuersly named. 13.
People of *Lombardie* issued from the *Germaus*. 44.
People are not ingenious according to their countrie aire. 51.
Pictes not so called of painting their bodies. 114.
Pillars of *Hercules*. 37.
Place & tyme of the Conquerors landing. 175.
Posteritie of *Sem*. 7.
Posteritie of *Cham*. 7.
Posteritie of *Iaphet*. 8.
Princes anciently garded by Germans. 47.
Prince *Edgar* with his sisters retyre into *Scotland*. 178.
The pyed pyper. 85.

Q

Q Varrel between a Frenchman & a Hollander. 32.
Queen *Dido* neuer knew *Eneas*. 94.
Queen *Emma* her trial. 65.
Queen *Rorvena* or *Ronixa* the wyf of king *Vortiger*. 127.
Question and diuets opinions about the name of *Britain*. 89.

R

R Easons of the Romans mistaking the Idolles of the Germans. 80.
Reasons of the euēesse of meddowes. 102.
Reasons that King *Edyvard* the confessor neuer promised the crown of *England*; to the Duke of *Normandie*. 171.
Rebelles against their willes. 228.
Rollo came first into *England*. 167.
Rollo otherwise *Robert* first Duke of *Normandie* of his race. 168.
Romances, or Romants, whence the name cometh.

THE TABLE.

meth. 200. Seauen kingdomes of the
Romannes neuèr passed the Saxons in *Britain*. 132.
riuer *Albis*. 20. Septentrional people much

S

Saxons supposed com-
ing by land into *Germanie* refuted. 33.
Why our anceters were
called Saxons. 21.
Saxons supposed coming
by sea into *Germanie* refuted. 34.
Saxons to the number of
nyne thousand brought
at the first into *Britain*.
116.

Saxons came into *Britain*
and Franckes into *Gallia*,
much about a tyme. 119.
A second supply of Saxon
forces. 127.
Saxonia Transmarina. 149.
Saxon proper names how
to be decerned. 142.
Saterday why so named.
79.
Scythians so called of their
shooting. 23.
Sea compass vwhen first in-
uented. 36.
Sea compass by some of
Bridges brought to 32.
wyndes. 36.
Seat of the Emperør in
Germanie. 53.

T

Temple of *Hercules*. 37
Togata and Bracata.
24.

Town how it came in so
great vse among vs. 295.
Three hundreth children
lacking fyue issued from
one woman. 3.
Thursday why so named.
75.
Triall of the Empreffe *Kunigund*. 66.
Triall of Queen *Emma*. 65.
Triall yfed for vvitches. 66.
Troyan descents many i-
maged. 92.
The Troyan historie held
to bee fabulous. 93.
Tuisco the God of the old
Germans. 11.
Tuisco the Idol descrybed.
71.

V v 3 Tuifday

THE TABLE

Tuisday.	10. and 71.	Weapons of the old Saxons.	56.
V		Wedensday vvhy so named.	73.
V Andalles.	16.	Welsh doth not signify a stranger.	151.
V Varietie more in this age then in any other.	197.	Why the name of Welshmen vvvas by our ancestors giuen to the Britans.	151.
Vites vvhy so named.	126.	V Vest-France & East-France.	24.
Vites and Iuites all one.	126.	Were-vvolumes vvhat they bee.	237.
King Vortiger sendeth into Germanie for the Saxons.	116.	V Villebrord vvvas the first Bishop of Vtrecht.	147.
King Vortiger deposed and his sonne Vortimer made king.	129.	V William Duke of Normandie resolueth vpon the enterpryse of England.	170.
King Vortiger the second tyme made king became alienated from the Saxons.	129.	King Wittekindus made a Duke.	63.
King Vortiger his miserable end.	132.	A woman of the age of 160 yeares.	323.
Voyage of the ships of king Hiram.	36.	What the name of woman signifieth.	194.
Vulgar people of Germanie knowv not the name of Germanie.	13.	Wonderful expedition in king Harald.	177.
W		Wonderful transporting away of 130. children.	86.
W Assaile vvhat it rightly signifieth.	127.		

The principall things of note in the etymologies in the eight and nynth chapter, are easely found, without the noting them down in this Index; because these etymologies do follow Alphabetically.

Those in the last chapter are also easely to be found, and therefore it is needlesse heer to giue direction to fynd them.

FINIS.

